SchweserNotes™

FOR THE CFA® EXAM

CFA® 2013

Level II | Book 1

Ethical and Professional Standards, Quantitative Methods, and Economics

KAPLAN SCHWESER

SHOUT
SHARE
IT

Book 1 – Ethical and Professional Standards, Quantitative Methods, and Economics

Readings and Learning Outcome Statements 6

Study Session 1 – Ethical and Professional Standards 13

Study Session 2 – Ethical and Professional Standards: Application 110

Self-Test – Ethical and Professional Standards 128

Study Session 3 – Quantitative Methods for Valuation 138

Self-Test – Quantitative Methods for Valuation 256

Study Session 4 – Economics for Valuation 262

Self-Test – Economics for Valuation 339

Formulas 344

Appendices 349

Index 358

SCHWESERNOTES™ 2013 CFA LEVEL II BOOK 1: ETHICAL AND PROFESSIONAL STANDARDS, QUANTITATIVE METHODS, AND ECONOMICS

©2012 Kaplan, Inc. All rights reserved.

Published in 2012 by Kaplan Schweser.

Printed in the United States of America.

ISBN: 978-1-4277-4264-3 / 1-4277-4264-2

PPN: 3200-2849

If this book does not have the hologram with the Kaplan Schweser logo on the back cover, it was distributed without permission of Kaplan Schweser, a Division of Kaplan, Inc., and is in direct violation of global copyright laws. Your assistance in pursuing potential violators of this law is greatly appreciated.

Required CFA Institute disclaimer: "CFA® and Chartered Financial Analyst® are trademarks owned by CFA Institute. CFA Institute (formerly the Association for Investment Management and Research) does not endorse, promote, review, or warrant the accuracy of the products or services offered by Kaplan Schweser."

Certain materials contained within this text are the copyrighted property of CFA Institute. The following is the copyright disclosure for these materials: "Copyright, 2012, CFA Institute. Reproduced and republished from 2013 Learning Outcome Statements, Level I, II, and III questions from CFA® Program Materials, CFA Institute Standards of Professional Conduct, and CFA Institute's Global Investment Performance Standards with permission from CFA Institute. All Rights Reserved."

These materials may not be copied without written permission from the author. The unauthorized duplication of these notes is a violation of global copyright laws and the CFA Institute Code of Ethics. Your assistance in pursuing potential violators of this law is greatly appreciated.

Disclaimer: The SchweserNotes should be used in conjunction with the original readings as set forth by CFA Institute in their 2013 CFA Level II Study Guide. The information contained in these Notes covers topics contained in the readings referenced by CFA Institute and is believed to be accurate. However, their accuracy cannot be guaranteed nor is any warranty conveyed as to your ultimate exam success. The authors of the referenced readings have not endorsed or sponsored these Notes.

Welcome to the 2013 Level II SchweserNotes™

Thank you for trusting Kaplan Schweser to help you reach your goals. We are all very pleased to be able to help you prepare for the Level II CFA Exam. In this introduction, I want to explain the resources included with the SchweserNotes, suggest how you can best use Schweser materials to prepare for the exam, and direct you toward other educational resources you will find helpful as you study for the exam.

Besides the SchweserNotes themselves, there are many educational resources available at Schweser.com. Just log in using the individual username and password that you received when you purchased the SchweserNotes.

SchweserNotes™

These consist of five volumes that include complete coverage of all 18 Study Sessions and all Learning Outcome Statements (LOS) with examples, Concept Checkers (multiple-choice questions for every topic review), and Challenge Problems for many topic reviews to help you master the material and check your progress. At the end of each major topic area, we include a Self-test. Self-test questions are created to be exam-like in format and difficulty in order for you to evaluate how well your study of each topic has prepared you for the actual exam. The Level II SchweserNotes Package also includes a sixth volume, the Level I Refresher, a review of important Level I material.

Practice Questions

Studies have shown that to retain what you learn, it is important that you quiz yourself often. We offer CD, download, and online versions of the SchweserPro™ QBank, which contains thousands of Level II practice questions, item sets, and explanations. Questions are available for each LOS, topic, or Study Session. Build your own quizzes by specifying the topics and the number of questions you choose. SchweserPro QBank is an essential learning aid for achieving the depth of proficiency needed at Level II. It should not, however, be considered a replacement for practicing "exam-type" questions as found in our Practice Exams, Volumes 1 & 2 and our mock exam.

Practice Exams

Schweser offers six full 6-hour practice exams. Practice Exams Volume 1 and Volume 2 each contain three full 120-question exams. These are important tools for gaining the speed and skills you will need to pass the exam. Each book contains answers with full explanations for self-grading and evaluation. By entering your answers at Schweser.com, you can use our Performance Tracker to find out how you have performed compared to other Schweser Level II candidates.

Schweser Library

We have created reference videos, some of which are available to all SchweserNotes purchasers. Schweser Library volumes range from 20 to 60 minutes in length and cover such topics as: "Introduction to Item Sets," "Hypothesis Testing," "Foreign Exchange Basics," "Ratio Analysis," and "Forward Contracts." The full Schweser Library is included with our 16-week live or online classes and with our video instruction (online or flash drive).

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Online Schweser Study Planner
Use your Online Access to tell us when you will start and what days of the week you can study. The online Schweser Study Planner will create a study plan just for you, breaking each study session into daily and weekly tasks to keep you on track and help you monitor your progress through the curriculum.

Additional Resources
Purchasers of the Essential Self-Study or Premium Instruction Packages also receive access to our Instructor-led Office Hours. Office Hours allow you to get your questions about the curriculum answered in real time and to see others' questions (and instructor answers) as well. Office Hours is a text-based live interactive online chat with our team of Level II experts. Archives of previous Office Hours sessions can be sorted by topic or date and are posted shortly after each session.

The Level II CFA exam is a formidable challenge (56 topic reviews and 438 Learning Outcome Statements), and you must devote considerable time and effort to be properly prepared. There is no shortcut! You must learn the material, know the terminology and techniques, understand the concepts, and be able to answer 120 questions quickly and (at least 70%) correctly. Fifteen to 20 hours per week for 25 weeks is a good estimate of the study time required on average, but some candidates will need more or less time, depending on their individual backgrounds and experience.

To help you master this material and be well prepared for the CFA Exam, we offer several other educational resources, including:

Live Weekly Classroom Programs
We offer weekly classroom programs around the world. Please check Schweser.com for locations, dates, and availability.

16-Week Online Classes
Our 16-Week Online Classes are available at New York time (6:30–9:30 pm) or London time (6:00–9:00 pm) beginning in January. The approximate schedule for the 16-Week Online Classes (3-hour sessions) is as follows:

Class #	Class #
1) Exam Intro/Quantitative Methods SS 3	9) Equity SS 12
2) Economics for Valuation SS 4	10) Alternative Investments SS 13
3) Financial Reporting & Analysis SS 5	11) Fixed Income SS 14
4) Financial Reporting & Analysis SS 6	12) Fixed Income SS 15
5) Financial Reporting & Analysis SS 7	13) Derivatives SS 16
6) Corporate Finance SS 8	14) Derivatives & Portfolio Management SS 17
7) Corporate Finance & Equity SS 9, 10	15) Portfolio Management SS 18
8) Equity SS 11, 12	16) Ethical Standards SS 1, 2

Archived classes are available for viewing at any time throughout the season. Candidates enrolled in the 16-Week Online Classes also have full access to supplemental on-demand video instruction in the Schweser Library and an e-mail address to use to send questions to the instructor at any time.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Late Season Review
Whether you use self-study or in-class, online, or video instruction to learn the CFA curriculum, a late-season review and exam practice can make all the difference. Our most complete late-season review course is our residence program in Windsor, Ontario (WindsorWeek), where we cover the entire curriculum at all three levels over seven days (May 4–10). We also offer 3-day Exam Workshops in many cities (and online) that combine curriculum review with an equal component of hands-on practice with hundreds of questions and problem-solving techniques. Our Dallas/Fort Worth (DFW) review program extends curriculum review and hands-on practice to five days (May 13–17). Please visit us at Schweser.com for complete listings and course descriptions for all our late-season review offerings.

Mock Exam and Multimedia Tutorial
On May 18, 2013, the Schweser Mock Exam will be offered live in over 60 cities around the world and as an online exam as well. The optional Multimedia Tutorial provides extended explanation and topic tutorials to get you exam-ready in areas where you miss questions on the Mock Exam. Please visit Schweser.com for a listing of cities and locations.

How to Succeed
There are no shortcuts; depend on the fact that CFA Institute will test you in a way that will reveal how well you know the Level II curriculum. You should begin early and stick to your study plan. You should first read the SchweserNotes and complete the Concept Checkers and Challenge Problems for each topic review. You should prepare for and attend a live class, an online class, or a study group each week. You should take quizzes often using SchweserPro Qbank and go back to review previous topics and Study Sessions as well. At the end of each topic area, you should take the Self-test to check your progress. You should finish the overall curriculum at least four weeks (preferably five weeks) before the Level II exam so that you have sufficient time for Practice Exams and for further review of those topics that you have not yet mastered.

I would like to thank Kent Westlund, CFA Content Specialist, and Jared Heintz, Lead Editor, for their contributions to the 2013 Level II SchweserNotes for the CFA Exam.

Best regards,

Bijesh Tolia

Dr. Bijesh Tolia, CFA, CA
VP of CFA Education and Level II Manager

Kaplan Schweser

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Readings and Learning Outcome Statements

Readings

The following material is a review of the Ethical and Professional Standards, Quantitative Methods, and Economics principles designed to address the learning outcome statements set forth by CFA Institute.

Study Session 1

Reading Assignments

Ethical and Professional Standards, CFA Program Curriculum, Volume 1, Level II (CFA Institute, 2012)

1. Code of Ethics and Standards of Professional Conduct — page 13
2. Guidance for Standards I–VII — page 13
3. CFA Institute Soft Dollar Standards — page 91
4. CFA Institute Research Objectivity Standards — page 100

Study Session 2

Reading Assignments

Ethical and Professional Standards, CFA Program Curriculum, Volume 1, Level II (CFA Institute, 2012)

5. The Glenarm Company — page 110
6. Preston Partners — page 112
7. Super Selection — page 115
8. Trade Allocation: Fair Dealing and Disclosure — page 118
9. Changing Investment Objectives — page 120
10. Prudence in Perspective — page 121

Study Session 3

Reading Assignments

Quantitative Methods for Valuation, CFA Program Curriculum, Volume 1, Level II (CFA Institute, 2012)

11. Correlation and Regression — page 138
12. Multiple Regression and Issues in Regression Analysis — page 172
13. Time-Series Analysis — page 219

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

STUDY SESSION 4

Reading Assignments

Economics for Valuation, CFA Program Curriculum, Volume 1, Level II (CFA Institute, 2012)

14. Currency Exchange Rates: Determination and Forecasting page 262
15. Economic Growth and the Investment Decision page 306
16. Economics of Regulation page 327

LEARNING OUTCOME STATEMENTS (LOS)

The CFA Institute Learning Outcome Statements are listed below. These are repeated in each topic review; however, the order may have been changed in order to get a better fit with the flow of the review.

STUDY SESSION 1

The topical coverage corresponds with the following CFA Institute assigned reading:

1. **Code of Ethics and Standards of Professional Conduct**
   The candidate should be able to:
   a. describe the six components of the Code of Ethics and the seven Standards of Professional Conduct. (page 13)
   b. explain the ethical responsibilities required by the Code and Standards, including the multiple sub-sections of each Standard. (page 14)

The topical coverage corresponds with the following CFA Institute assigned reading:

2. **Guidance for Standards I–VII**
   The candidate should be able to:
   a. demonstrate a thorough knowledge of the Code of Ethics and Standards of Professional Conduct by applying the Code and Standards to specific situations. (page 17)
   b. recommend practices and procedures designed to prevent violations of the Code of Ethics and Standards of Professional Conduct. (page 17)

The topical coverage corresponds with the following CFA Institute assigned reading:

3. **CFA Institute Soft Dollar Standards**
   The candidate should be able to:
   a. define soft-dollar arrangements, and state the general principles of the Soft dollar Standards. (page 91)
   b. evaluate company soft-dollar practices and policies. (page 92)
   c. determine whether a product or service qualifies as "permissible research" that can be purchased with client brokerage. (page 95)

The topical coverage corresponds with the following CFA Institute assigned reading:

4. **CFA Institute Research Objectivity Standards**
   The candidate should be able to:
   a. explain the objectives of the Research Objectivity Standards. (page 100)
   b. evaluate company policies and practices related to research objectivity, and distinguish between changes required and changes recommended for compliance with the Research Objectivity Standards. (page 101)

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

STUDY SESSION 2

The topical coverage corresponds with the following CFA Institute assigned reading:

5. The Glenarm Company
6. Preston Partners
7. Super Selection

For each of these cases, the candidate should be able to:

a. evaluate the practices and policies presented. (pages 110, 112, 115)
b. explain the appropriate action to take in response to conduct that violates the CFA Institute Code of Ethics and Standards of Professional Conduct. (pages 110, 112, 115)

The topical coverage corresponds with the following CFA Institute assigned reading:

8. Trade Allocation: Fair Dealing and Disclosure

The candidate should be able to:

a. evaluate trade allocation practices, and determine whether compliance exists with the CFA Institute Standards of Professional Conduct addressing fair dealing and client loyalty. (page 118)
b. describe appropriate actions to take in response to trade allocation practices that do not adequately respect client interests. (page 119)

The topical coverage corresponds with the following CFA Institute assigned reading:

9. Changing Investment Objectives

The candidate should be able to:

a. evaluate the disclosure of investment objectives and basic policies and determine whether they comply with the CFA Institute Standards of Professional Conduct. (page 120)
b. describe appropriate actions needed to ensure adequate disclosure of the investment process. (page 120)

The topical coverage corresponds with the following CFA Institute assigned reading:

10. Prudence in Perspective

The candidate should be able to:

a. explain the basic principles of the new Prudent Investor Rule. (page 121)
b. explain the general fiduciary standards to which a trustee must adhere. (page 122)
c. distinguish between the old Prudent Man Rule and the new Prudent Investor Rule. (page 123)
d. explain key factors that a trustee should consider when investing and managing trust assets. (page 123)

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

STUDY SESSION 3

The topical coverage corresponds with the following CFA Institute assigned reading:

11. **Correlation and Regression**

The candidate should be able to:

a. calculate and interpret a sample covariance and a sample correlation coefficient, and interpret a scatter plot. (page 138)
b. explain limitations to correlation analysis, including outliers and spurious correlation. (page 142)
c. formulate a test of the hypothesis that the population correlation coefficient equals zero, and determine whether the hypothesis is rejected at a given level of significance. (page 143)
d. distinguish between the dependent and independent variables in a linear regression. (page 144)
e. explain the assumptions underlying linear regression, and interpret the regression coefficients. (page 146)
f. calculate and interpret the standard error of estimate, the coefficient of determination, and a confidence interval for a regression coefficient. (page 150)
g. formulate a null and alternative hypothesis about a population value of a regression coefficient, and determine the appropriate test statistic and whether the null hypothesis is rejected at a given level of significance. (page 152)
h. calculate a predicted value for the dependent variable, given an estimated regression model and a value for the independent variable, and calculate and interpret a confidence interval for the predicted value of a dependent variable. (page 153)
i. describe the use of analysis of variance (ANOVA) in regression analysis, interpret ANOVA results, and calculate and interpret an *F*-statistic. (page 154)
j. explain limitations of regression analysis. (page 159)

The topical coverage corresponds with the following CFA Institute assigned reading:

12. **Multiple Regression and Issues in Regression Analysis**

The candidate should be able to:

a. formulate a multiple regression equation to describe the relation between a dependent variable and several independent variables, determine the statistical significance of each independent variable, and interpret the estimated coefficients and their *p*-values. (page 173)
b. formulate a null and an alternative hypothesis about the population value of a regression coefficient, calculate the value of the test statistic, determine whether to reject the null hypothesis at a given level of significance by using a one-tailed or two-tailed test, and interpret the results of the test. (page 175)
c. calculate and interpret 1) a confidence interval for the population value of a regression coefficient and 2) a predicted value for the dependent variable, given an estimated regression model and assumed values for the independent variables. (page 179)
d. explain the assumptions of a multiple regression model. (page 181)
e. calculate and interpret the *F*-statistic, and describe how it is used in regression analysis. (page 181)
f. distinguish between and interpret the R^2 and adjusted R^2 in multiple regression. (page 183)

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

g. evaluate how well a regression model explains the dependent variable by analyzing the output of the regression equation and an ANOVA table. (page 185)
h. formulate a multiple regression equation by using dummy variables to represent qualitative factors, and interpret the coefficients and regression results. (page 190)
i. explain the types of heteroskedasticity and the effects of heteroskedasticity and serial correlation on statistical inference. (page 194)
j. describe multicollinearity, and explain its causes and effects in regression analysis. (page 200)
k. describe the effects of model misspecification on the results of a regression analysis, and explain how to avoid the common forms of misspecification. (page 203)
l. describe models with qualitative dependent variables. (page 206)
m. interpret the economic meaning of the results of multiple regression analysis, and evaluate a regression model and its results. (page 207)

The topical coverage corresponds with the following CFA Institute assigned reading:

13. **Time-Series Analysis**

The candidate should be able to:

a. calculate and evaluate the predicted trend value for a time series, modeled as either a linear trend or a log-linear trend, given the estimated trend coefficients. (page 219)
b. describe factors that determine whether a linear or a log-linear trend should be used with a particular time series, and evaluate the limitations of trend models. (page 225)
c. explain the requirement for a time series to be covariance stationary, and describe the significance of a series that is not stationary. (page 226)
d. describe the structure of an autoregressive (AR) model of order p, and calculate one- and two-period-ahead forecasts given the estimated coefficients. (page 227)
e. explain how autocorrelations of the residuals can be used to test whether the autoregressive model fits the time series. (page 228)
f. explain mean reversion, and calculate a mean-reverting level. (page 229)
g. contrast in-sample and out-of-sample forecasts, and compare the forecasting accuracy of different time-series models based on the root mean squared error criterion. (page 231)
h. explain the instability of coefficients of time-series models. (page 231)
i. describe characteristics of random walk processes, and contrast them to covariance stationary processes. (page 232)
j. describe implications of unit roots for time-series analysis, explain when unit roots are likely to occur and how to test for them, and demonstrate how a time series with a unit root can be transformed so it can be analyzed with an AR model. (page 233)
k. describe the steps of the unit root test for nonstationarity, and explain the relation of the test to autoregressive time-series models. (page 233)
l. explain how to test and correct for seasonality in a time-series model, and calculate and interpret a forecasted value using an AR model with a seasonal lag. (page 237)
m. explain autoregressive conditional heteroskedasticity (ARCH), and describe how ARCH models can be applied to predict the variance of a time series. (page 241)

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

n. explain how time-series variables should be analyzed for nonstationarity and/or cointegration before use in a linear regression. (page 242)
o. determine the appropriate time-series model to analyze a given investment problem, and justify that choice. (page 244)

STUDY SESSION 4

The topical coverage corresponds with the following CFA Institute assigned reading:

14. **Currency Exchange Rates: Determination and Forecasting**

The candidate should be able to:

a. calculate and interpret the bid–ask spread on a spot or forward foreign currency quotation and describe the factors that affect the bid–offer spread. (page 262)
b. identify a triangular arbitrage opportunity, and calculate its profit, given the bid–offer quotations for three currencies. (page 263)
c. distinguish between spot and forward rates and calculate the forward premium/discount for a given currency. (page 268)
d. calculate the mark-to-market value of a forward contract. (page 269)
e. explain international parity relations—covered and uncovered interest rate parity, purchasing power parity, and the international Fisher effect. (page 272)
f. describe relations among the international parity conditions. (page 279)
g. evaluate the use of the current spot rate, the forward rate, purchasing power parity, and uncovered interest parity to forecast future spot exchange rates. (page 280)
h. explain approaches to assessing the long-run fair value of an exchange rate. (page 284)
i. describe the carry trade and its relation to uncovered interest rate parity and calculate the profit from such a strategy. (page 284)
j. explain how flows in the balance of payment accounts affect currency exchange rates. (page 281)
k. describe the Mundell–Fleming model, the monetary approach, and the asset market (portfolio balance) approach to exchange rate determination. (page 286)
l. forecast the direction of the expected change in an exchange rate based on balance of payment, Mundell–Fleming, monetary, and asset market approaches to exchange rate determination. (page 286)
m. explain the potential impacts of monetary and fiscal policies on exchange rates. (page 286)
n. describe the objectives and effectiveness of central bank intervention and capital controls. (page 289)
o. describe warning signs of a currency crisis. (page 290)
p. describe the use of technical analysis in forecasting exchange rates. (page 290)

The topical coverage corresponds with the following CFA Institute assigned reading:

15. **Economic Growth and the Investment Decision**

The candidate should be able to:

a. describe and compare factors favoring and limiting economic growth in developed and developing economies. (page 306)
b. describe the relation between the long-run rate of stock market appreciation and the sustainable growth rate of the economy. (page 307)
c. explain the importance of potential GDP and its growth rate in the investment decisions of equity and fixed income investors. (page 308)

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

d. distinguish between capital deepening investment and technological process and explain the impact of each on economic growth and labor productivity. (page 308)
e. forecast potential GDP based on growth accounting relations. (page 311)
f. explain the impact of natural resources on economic growth and evaluate the argument that limited availability of natural resources constrains economic growth. (page 312)
g. explain the effects of demographics, immigration, and labor force participation on the rate and sustainability of economic growth. (page 312)
h. explain how investment in physical capital, human capital, and technological development affects economic growth. (page 314)
i. compare classical growth theory, neoclassical growth theory, and endogenous growth theory. (page 315)
j. explain and evaluate convergence hypotheses. (page 317)
k. explain the economic rationale for governments to provide incentives to private investment in technology and knowledge. (page 318)
l. describe the expected impact of removing trade barriers on capital investment and profits, employment and wages, and growth in the economies involved. (page 318)

The topical coverage corresponds with the following CFA Institute assigned reading:

16. Economics of Regulation

The candidate should be able to:

a. describe classifications of regulations and regulators. (page 327)
b. describe uses of self-regulation in financial markets. (page 328)
c. describe the economic rationale for regulatory intervention. (page 328)
d. describe regulatory interdependencies and their effects. (page 329)
e. describe tools of regulatory intervention in markets. (page 330)
f. explain purposes in regulating commerce and financial markets. (page 330)
g. describe anticompetitive behaviors targeted by antitrust laws globally and evaluate the antitrust risk associated with a given business strategy. (page 331)
h. describe benefits and costs of regulation. (page 332)
i. evaluate effects on an industry, company, or security of a specific regulation. (page 333)

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

The following is a review of the Ethical and Professional Standards principles designed to address the learning outcome statements set forth by CFA Institute. This topic is also covered in:

CFA Institute Code of Ethics and Standards of Professional Conduct Guidance for Standards I–VII

Study Session 1

Exam Focus

In addition to reading this review of the ethics material, we strongly recommend that all candidates for the CFA® examination read the *Standards of Practice Handbook 10th Edition* (2010) multiple times. As a Level II CFA candidate, it is your responsibility to comply with the *Code and Standards*. The complete *Code and Standards* are reprinted in Volume 1 of the CFA Program Curriculum.

LOS 1.a: Describe the six components of the Code of Ethics and the seven Standards of Professional Conduct.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 14

Code of Ethics

Members of CFA Institute [including Chartered Financial Analyst® (CFA®) charterholders] and candidates for the CFA designation ("Members and Candidates") must:[1]

- Act with integrity, competence, diligence, respect, and in an ethical manner with the public, clients, prospective clients, employers, employees, colleagues in the investment profession, and other participants in the global capital markets.
- Place the integrity of the investment profession and the interests of clients above their own personal interests.
- Use reasonable care and exercise independent professional judgment when conducting investment analysis, making investment recommendations, taking investment actions, and engaging in other professional activities.
- Practice and encourage others to practice in a professional and ethical manner that will reflect credit on themselves and the profession.
- Promote the integrity of, and uphold the rules governing, capital markets.
- Maintain and improve their professional competence and strive to maintain and improve the competence of other investment professionals.

1. Copyright 2010, CFA Institute. Reproduced and republished from "The Code of Ethics," from *Standards of Practice Handbook, 10th Ed.,* 2010, with permission from CFA Institute. All rights reserved.

The Standards of Professional Conduct

I: Professionalism
II: Integrity of Capital Markets
III: Duties to Clients
IV: Duties to Employers
V: Investment Analysis, Recommendations, and Actions
VI: Conflicts of Interest
VII: Responsibilities as a CFA Institute Member or CFA Candidate

---

LOS 1.b: Explain the ethical responsibilities required by the Code and Standards, including the multiple sub-sections of each Standard.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 14

Standards of Professional Conduct[2]

I. PROFESSIONALISM

A. **Knowledge of the Law.** Members and Candidates must understand and comply with all applicable laws, rules, and regulations (including the CFA Institute *Code of Ethics* and *Standards of Professional Conduct*) of any government, regulatory organization, licensing agency, or professional association governing their professional activities. In the event of conflict, Members and Candidates must comply with the more strict law, rule, or regulation. Members and Candidates must not knowingly participate or assist in any violation of laws, rules, or regulations and must disassociate themselves from any such violation.

B. **Independence and Objectivity.** Members and Candidates must use reasonable care and judgment to achieve and maintain independence and objectivity in their professional activities. Members and Candidates must not offer, solicit, or accept any gift, benefit, compensation, or consideration that reasonably could be expected to compromise their own or another's independence and objectivity.

C. **Misrepresentation.** Members and Candidates must not knowingly make any misrepresentations relating to investment analysis, recommendations, actions, or other professional activities.

D. **Misconduct.** Members and Candidates must not engage in any professional conduct involving dishonesty, fraud, or deceit or commit any act that reflects adversely on their professional reputation, integrity, or competence.

II. INTEGRITY OF CAPITAL MARKETS

A. **Material Nonpublic Information.** Members and Candidates who possess material nonpublic information that could affect the value of an investment must not act or cause others to act on the information.

---

2. Ibid.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

B. **Market Manipulation.** Members and Candidates must not engage in practices that distort prices or artificially inflate trading volume with the intent to mislead market participants.

III. DUTIES TO CLIENTS

A. **Loyalty, Prudence, and Care.** Members and Candidates have a duty of loyalty to their clients and must act with reasonable care and exercise prudent judgment. Members and Candidates must act for the benefit of their clients and place their clients' interests before their employer's or their own interests.

B. **Fair Dealing.** Members and Candidates must deal fairly and objectively with all clients when providing investment analysis, making investment recommendations, taking investment action, or engaging in other professional activities.

C. **Suitability.**

1. When Members and Candidates are in an advisory relationship with a client, they must:

   a. Make a reasonable inquiry into a client's or prospective clients' investment experience, risk and return objectives, and financial constraints prior to making any investment recommendation or taking investment action and must reassess and update this information regularly.

   b. Determine that an investment is suitable to the client's financial situation and consistent with the client's written objectives, mandates, and constraints before making an investment recommendation or taking investment action.

   c. Judge the suitability of investments in the context of the client's total portfolio.

2. When Members and Candidates are responsible for managing a portfolio to a specific mandate, strategy, or style, they must make only investment recommendations or take investment actions that are consistent with the stated objectives and constraints of the portfolio.

D. **Performance Presentation.** When communicating investment performance information, Members or Candidates must make reasonable efforts to ensure that it is fair, accurate, and complete.

E. **Preservation of Confidentiality.** Members and Candidates must keep information about current, former, and prospective clients confidential unless:

1. The information concerns illegal activities on the part of the client or prospective client,

2. Disclosure is required by law, or

3. The client or prospective client permits disclosure of the information.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

IV. DUTIES TO EMPLOYERS

A. **Loyalty.** In matters related to their employment, Members and Candidates must act for the benefit of their employer and not deprive their employer of the advantage of their skills and abilities, divulge confidential information, or otherwise cause harm to their employer.

B. **Additional Compensation Arrangements.** Members and Candidates must not accept gifts, benefits, compensation, or consideration that competes with, or might reasonably be expected to create a conflict of interest with, their employer's interest unless they obtain written consent from all parties involved.

C. **Responsibilities of Supervisors.** Members and Candidates must make reasonable efforts to detect and prevent violations of applicable laws, rules, regulations, and the Code and Standards by anyone subject to their supervision or authority.

V. INVESTMENT ANALYSIS, RECOMMENDATIONS, AND ACTIONS

A. **Diligence and Reasonable Basis.** Members and Candidates must:

1. Exercise diligence, independence, and thoroughness in analyzing investments, making investment recommendations, and taking investment actions.

2. Have a reasonable and adequate basis, supported by appropriate research and investigation, for any investment analysis, recommendation, or action.

B. **Communication with Clients and Prospective Clients.** Members and Candidates must:

1. Disclose to clients and prospective clients the basic format and general principles of the investment processes used to analyze investments, select securities, and construct portfolios and must promptly disclose any changes that might materially affect those processes.

2. Use reasonable judgment in identifying which factors are important to their investment analyses, recommendations, or actions and include those factors in communications with clients and prospective clients.

3. Distinguish between fact and opinion in the presentation of investment analysis and recommendations.

C. **Record Retention.** Members and Candidates must develop and maintain appropriate records to support their investment analysis, recommendations, actions, and other investment-related communications with clients and prospective clients.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

VI. CONFLICTS OF INTEREST

A. **Disclosure of Conflicts.** Members and Candidates must make full and fair disclosure of all matters that could reasonably be expected to impair their independence and objectivity or interfere with respective duties to their clients, prospective clients, and employer. Members and Candidates must ensure that such disclosures are prominent, are delivered in plain language, and communicate the relevant information effectively.

B. **Priority of Transactions.** Investment transactions for clients and employers must have priority over investment transactions in which a Member or Candidate is the beneficial owner.

C. **Referral Fees.** Members and Candidates must disclose to their employer, clients, and prospective clients, as appropriate, any compensation, consideration, or benefit received by, or paid to, others for the recommendation of products or services.

VII. RESPONSIBILITIES AS A CFA INSTITUTE MEMBER OR CFA CANDIDATE

A. **Conduct as Members and Candidates in the CFA Program.** Members and Candidates must not engage in any conduct that compromises the reputation or integrity of CFA Institute or the CFA designation or the integrity, validity, or security of the CFA examinations.

B. **Reference to CFA Institute, the CFA Designation, and the CFA Program.** When referring to CFA Institute, CFA Institute membership, the CFA designation, or candidacy in the CFA Program, Members and Candidates must not misrepresent or exaggerate the meaning or implications of membership in CFA Institute, holding the CFA designation, or candidacy in the CFA Program.

LOS 2.a: Demonstrate a thorough knowledge of the Code of Ethics and Standards of Professional Conduct by applying the Code and Standards to specific situations.

LOS 2.b: Recommend practices and procedures designed to prevent violations of the Code of Ethics and Standards of Professional Conduct.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 19

I Professionalism

I(A) Knowledge of the Law. Members and Candidates must understand and comply with all applicable laws, rules, and regulations (including the CFA Institute Code of Ethics and Standards of Professional Conduct) of any government, regulatory organization, licensing agency, or professional association governing their professional activities. In the event of conflict, Members and Candidates must comply with the more strict law, rule, or regulation. Members and Candidates must not knowingly participate or assist in and must dissociate from any violation of such laws, rules, or regulations.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Professor's Note: While we use the term "members" in the following, note that all of the Standards apply to candidates as well.

Guidance—Code and Standards vs. Local Law

Members must know the laws and regulations relating to their professional activities in all countries in which they conduct business. Members must comply with applicable laws and regulations relating to their professional activity. Do not violate Code or Standards even if the activity is otherwise legal. Always adhere to the most strict rules and requirements (law or CFA Institute Standards) that apply.

Guidance—Participation or Association with Violations by Others

Members should dissociate, or separate themselves, from any ongoing client or employee activity that is illegal or unethical, even if it involves leaving an employer (an extreme case). While a member may confront the involved individual first, he must approach his supervisor or compliance department. Inaction with continued association may be construed as knowing participation.

Recommended Procedures for Compliance—Members

- Members should have procedures to keep up with changes in applicable laws, rules, and regulations.
- Compliance procedures should be reviewed on an ongoing basis to assure that they address current law, CFAI Standards, and regulations.
- Members should maintain current reference materials for employees to access in order to keep up to date on laws, rules, and regulations.
- Members should seek advice of counsel or their compliance department when in doubt.
- Members should document any violations when they disassociate themselves from prohibited activity and encourage their employers to bring an end to such activity.
- There is no requirement under the Standards to report violations to governmental authorities, but this may be advisable in some circumstances and required by law in others.
- Members are strongly encouraged to report other members' violations of the Code and Standards.

Recommended Procedures for Compliance—Firms

Members should encourage their firms to:

- Develop and/or adopt a code of ethics.
- Make available to employees information that highlights applicable laws and regulations.
- Establish written procedures for reporting suspected violation of laws, regulations, or company policies.

Members who supervise the creation and maintenance of investment services and products should be aware of and comply with the regulations and laws regarding such services and products both in their country of origin and the countries where they will be sold.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Application of Standard I(A) Knowledge of the Law[3]

Example 1:

Michael Allen works for a brokerage firm and is responsible for an underwriting of securities. A company official gives Allen information indicating that the financial statements Allen filed with the regulator overstate the issuer's earnings. Allen seeks the advice of the brokerage firm's general counsel, who states that it would be difficult for the regulator to prove that Allen has been involved in any wrongdoing.

Comment:

Although it is recommended that members and candidates seek the advice of legal counsel, the reliance on such advice does not absolve a member or candidate from the requirement to comply with the law or regulation. Allen should report this situation to his supervisor, seek an independent legal opinion, and determine whether the regulator should be notified of the error.

Example 2:

Kamisha Washington's firm advertises its past performance record by showing the 10-year return of a composite of its client accounts. However, Washington discovers that the composite omits the performance of accounts that have left the firm during the 10-year period and that this omission has led to an inflated performance figure. Washington is asked to use promotional material that includes the erroneous performance number when soliciting business for the firm.

Comment:

Misrepresenting performance is a violation of the Code and Standards. Although she did not calculate the performance herself, Washington would be assisting in violating this standard if she were to use the inflated performance number when soliciting clients. She must dissociate herself from the activity. She can bring the misleading number to the attention of the person responsible for calculating performance, her supervisor, or the compliance department at her firm. If her firm is unwilling to recalculate performance, she must refrain from using the misleading promotional material and should notify the firm of her reasons. If the firm insists that she use the material, she should consider whether her obligation to dissociate from the activity would require her to seek other employment.

Example 3:

An employee of an investment bank is working on an underwriting and finds out the issuer has altered their financial statements to hide operating losses in one division. These misstated data are included in a preliminary prospectus that has already been released.

Comment:

The employee should report the problem to his supervisors. If the firm doesn't get the misstatement fixed, the employee should dissociate from the underwriting and, further, seek legal advice about whether he should undertake additional reporting or other actions.

3. Ibid.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Example 4:

Laura Jameson, a U.S. citizen, works for an investment advisor based in the U.S. and works in a country where investment managers are prohibited from participating in IPOs for their own accounts.

Comment:

Jameson must comply with the strictest requirements among U.S. law (where her firm is based), the CFA Institute Code and Standards, and the laws of the country where she is doing business. In this case, that means she must not participate in any IPOs for her personal account.

Example 5:

A junior portfolio manager suspects that a broker responsible for new business from a foreign country is being allocated a portion of the firm's payments for third-party research and suspects that no research is being provided. He believes that the research payments may be inappropriate and unethical.

Comment:

He should follow his firm's procedures for reporting possible unethical behavior and try to get better disclosure of the nature of these payments and any research that is being provided.

I(B) Independence and Objectivity. Members and Candidates must use reasonable care and judgment to achieve and maintain independence and objectivity in their professional activities. Members and Candidates must not offer, solicit, or accept any gift, benefit, compensation, or consideration that reasonably could be expected to compromise their own or another's independence and objectivity.

Guidance

Do not let the investment process be influenced by any external sources. Modest gifts are permitted. Allocation of shares in oversubscribed IPOs to personal accounts is NOT permitted. Distinguish between gifts from clients and gifts from entities seeking influence to the detriment of the client. Gifts must be disclosed to the member's employer in any case, either prior to acceptance if possible, or subsequently.

Guidance—Investment Banking Relationships

Do not be pressured by sell-side firms to issue favorable research on current or prospective investment-banking clients. It is appropriate to have analysts work with investment bankers in "road shows" only when the conflicts are adequately and effectively managed and disclosed. Be sure there are effective "firewalls" between research/investment management and investment banking activities.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Guidance—Public Companies

Analysts should not be pressured to issue favorable research by the companies they follow. Do not confine research to discussions with company management, but rather use a variety of sources, including suppliers, customers, and competitors.

Guidance—Buy-Side Clients

Buy-side clients may try to pressure sell-side analysts. Portfolio managers may have large positions in a particular security, and a rating downgrade may have an effect on the portfolio performance. As a portfolio manager, there is a responsibility to respect and foster intellectual honesty of sell-side research.

Guidance—Fund Manager Relationships

Members responsible for selecting outside managers should not accept gifts, entertainment, or travel that might be perceived as impairing their objectivity.

Guidance—Credit Rating Agencies

Members employed by credit rating firms should make sure that procedures prevent undue influence by the firm issuing the securities. Members who use credit ratings should be aware of this potential conflict of interest and consider whether independent analysis is warranted.

Guidance—Issuer-Paid Research

Remember that this type of research is fraught with potential conflicts. Analysts' compensation for preparing such research should be limited, and the preference is for a flat fee, without regard to conclusions or the report's recommendations.

Guidance—Travel

Best practice is for analysts to pay for their own commercial travel when attending information events or tours sponsored by the firm being analyzed.

Recommended Procedures for Compliance

- Protect the integrity of opinions—make sure they are unbiased.
- Create a restricted list and distribute only factual information about companies on the list.
- Restrict special cost arrangements—pay for one's own commercial transportation and hotel; limit use of corporate aircraft to cases in which commercial transportation is not available.
- Limit gifts—token items only. Customary, business-related entertainment is okay as long as its purpose is not to influence a member's professional independence or objectivity. Firms should impose clear value limits on gifts.
- Restrict employee investments in equity IPOs and private placements. Require pre-approval of IPO purchases.
- Review procedures—have effective supervisory and review procedures.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

- Firms should have formal written policies on independence and objectivity of research.
- Firms should appoint a compliance officer and provide clear procedures for employee reporting of unethical behavior and violations of applicable regulations.

Application of Standard I(B) Independence and Objectivity

Example 1:

Steven Taylor, a mining analyst with Bronson Brokers, is invited by Precision Metals to join a group of his peers in a tour of mining facilities in several western U.S. states. The company arranges for chartered group flights from site to site and for accommodations in Spartan Motels, the only chain with accommodations near the mines, for three nights. Taylor allows Precision Metals to pick up his tab, as do the other analysts, with one exception—John Adams, an employee of a large trust company who insists on following his company's policy and paying for his hotel room himself.

Comment:

The policy of the company where Adams works complies closely with Standard I(B) by avoiding even the appearance of a conflict of interest, but Taylor and the other analysts were not necessarily violating Standard I(B). In general, when allowing companies to pay for travel and/or accommodations under these circumstances, members and candidates must use their judgment, keeping in mind that such arrangements must not impinge on a member or candidate's independence and objectivity. In this example, the trip was strictly for business and Taylor was not accepting irrelevant or lavish hospitality. The itinerary required chartered flights, for which analysts were not expected to pay. The accommodations were modest. These arrangements are not unusual and did not violate Standard I(B) so long as Taylor's independence and objectivity were not compromised. In the final analysis, members and candidates should consider both whether they can remain objective and whether their integrity might be perceived by their clients to have been compromised.

Example 2:

Walter Fritz is an equity analyst with Hilton Brokerage who covers the mining industry. He has concluded that the stock of Metals & Mining is overpriced at its current level, but he is concerned that a negative research report will hurt the good relationship between Metals & Mining and the investment-banking division of his firm. In fact, a senior manager of Hilton Brokerage has just sent him a copy of a proposal his firm has made to Metals & Mining to underwrite a debt offering. Fritz needs to produce a report right away and is concerned about issuing a less-than-favorable rating.

Comment:

Fritz's analysis of Metals & Mining must be objective and based solely on consideration of company fundamentals. Any pressure from other divisions of his firm is inappropriate. This conflict could have been eliminated if, in anticipation of the offering, Hilton Brokerage had placed Metals & Mining on a restricted list for its sales force.

Example 3:

Tom Wayne is the investment manager of the Franklin City Employees Pension Plan. He recently completed a successful search for firms to manage the foreign equity

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

allocation of the plan's diversified portfolio. He followed the plan's standard procedure of seeking presentations from a number of qualified firms and recommended that his board select Penguin Advisors because of its experience, well-defined investment strategy, and performance record, which was compiled and verified in accordance with the CFA Institute Global Investment Performance Standards. Following the plan selection of Penguin, a reporter from the Franklin City Record called to ask if there was any connection between the action and the fact that Penguin was one of the sponsors of an "investment fact-finding trip to Asia" that Wayne made earlier in the year. The trip was one of several conducted by the Pension Investment Academy, which had arranged the itinerary of meetings with economic, government, and corporate officials in major cities in several Asian countries. The Pension Investment Academy obtains support for the cost of these trips from a number of investment managers, including Penguin Advisors; the Academy then pays the travel expenses of the various pension plan managers on the trip and provides all meals and accommodations. The president of Penguin Advisors was one of the travelers on the trip.

Comment:

Although Wayne can probably put to good use the knowledge he gained from the trip in selecting portfolio managers and in other areas of managing the pension plan, his recommendation of Penguin Advisors may be tainted by the possible conflict incurred when he participated in a trip paid for partly by Penguin Advisors and when he was in the daily company of the president of Penguin Advisors. To avoid violating Standard I(B), Wayne's basic expenses for travel and accommodations should have been paid by his employer or the pension plan; contact with the president of Penguin Advisors should have been limited to informational or educational events only; and the trip, the organizer, and the sponsor should have been made a matter of public record. Even if his actions were not in violation of Standard I(B), Wayne should have been sensitive to the public perception of the trip when reported in the newspaper and the extent to which the subjective elements of his decision might have been affected by the familiarity that the daily contact of such a trip would encourage. This advantage would probably not be shared by competing firms.

Example 4:

An analyst in the corporate finance department promises a client that her firm will provide full research coverage of the issuing company after the offering.

Comment:

This is not a violation, but she cannot promise favorable research coverage. Research must be objective and independent.

Example 5:

An employee's boss tells him to assume coverage of a stock and maintain a buy rating.

Comment:

Research opinions and recommendations must be objective and independently arrived at. Following the boss's instructions would be a violation if the analyst determined a buy rating is inappropriate.

Example 6:

A money manager receives a gift of significant value from a client as a reward for good performance over the prior period and informs her employer of the gift.

Comment:

No violation here since the gift is from a client and is not based on performance going forward, but the gift must be disclosed to her employer. If the gift were contingent on future performance, the money manager would have to obtain permission from her employer. The reason for both the disclosure and permission requirements is that the employer must ensure that the money manager does not give advantage to the client giving or offering additional compensation, to the detriment of other clients.

Example 7:

An analyst enters into a contract to write a research report on a company, paid for by that company, for a flat fee plus a bonus based on attracting new investors to the security.

Comment:

This is a violation because the compensation structure makes total compensation depend on the conclusions of the report (a favorable report will attract investors and increase compensation). Accepting the job for a flat fee that does not depend on the report's conclusions or its impact on share price is permitted, with proper disclosure of the fact that the report is funded by the subject company.

Example 8:

A trust manager at a bank selects mutual funds for client accounts based on the profits from "service fees" paid to the bank by the mutual fund sponsor.

Comment:

This is a violation because the trust manager has allowed the fees to affect his objectivity.

Example 9:

An analyst performing sensitivity analysis for a security does not use only scenarios consistent with recent trends and historical norms.

Comment:

This is a good thing and is not a violation.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

I(C) Misrepresentation. Members and Candidates must not knowingly make any misrepresentations relating to investment analysis, recommendations, actions, or other professional activities.

Guidance

Trust is a foundation in the investment profession. Do not make any misrepresentations or give false impressions. This includes oral and electronic communications. Misrepresentations include guaranteeing investment performance and plagiarism. Plagiarism encompasses using someone else's work (e.g., reports, forecasts, models, ideas, charts, graphs, and spreadsheet models) without giving them credit. Knowingly omitting information that could affect an investment decision is considered misrepresentation.

Models and analysis developed by others at a member's firm are the property of the firm and can be used without attribution. A report written by another analyst employed by the firm cannot be released as another analyst's work.

Recommended Procedures for Compliance

A good way to avoid misrepresentation is for firms to provide employees who deal with clients or prospects a written list of the firm's available services and a description of the firm's qualifications. Employee qualifications should be accurately presented as well. To avoid plagiarism, maintain records of all materials used to generate reports or other firm products and properly cite sources (quotes and summaries) in work products. Information from recognized financial and statistical reporting services need not be cited.

Members should encourage their firms to establish procedures for verifying marketing claims of third parties whose information the firm provides to clients.

Application of Standard I(C) Misrepresentation

Example 1:

Allison Rogers is a partner in the firm of Rogers and Black, a small firm offering investment advisory services. She assures a prospective client who has just inherited $1 million that "we can perform all the financial and investment services you need." Rogers and Black is well equipped to provide investment advice but, in fact, cannot provide asset allocation assistance or a full array of financial and investment services.

Comment:

Rogers has violated Standard I(C) by orally misrepresenting the services her firm can perform for the prospective client. She must limit herself to describing the range of investment advisory services Rogers and Black can provide and offer to help the client obtain elsewhere the financial and investment services that her firm cannot provide.

Example 2:

Anthony McGuire is an issuer-paid analyst hired by publicly traded companies to electronically promote their stocks. McGuire creates a Web site that promotes his research efforts as a seemingly independent analyst. McGuire posts a profile and a strong buy recommendation for each company on the Web site, indicating that the stock is

expected to increase in value. He does not disclose the contractual relationships with the companies he covers on his Web site, in the research reports he issues, or in the statements he makes about the companies on Internet chat rooms.

Comment:

McGuire has violated Standard I(C) because the Internet site and e-mails are misleading to potential investors. Even if the recommendations are valid and supported with thorough research, his omissions regarding the true relationship between himself and the companies he covers constitute a misrepresentation. McGuire has also violated Standard VI(C) by not disclosing the existence of an arrangement with the companies through which he receives compensation in exchange for his services.

Example 3:

Claude Browning, a quantitative analyst for Double Alpha, Inc., returns in great excitement from a seminar. In that seminar, Jack Jorrely, a well-publicized quantitative analyst at a national brokerage firm, discussed one of his new models in great detail, and Browning is intrigued by the new concepts. He proceeds to test this model, making some minor mechanical changes but retaining the concept, until he produces some very positive results. Browning quickly announces to his supervisors at Double Alpha that he has discovered a new model and that clients and prospective clients alike should be informed of this positive finding as ongoing proof of Double Alpha's continuing innovation and ability to add value.

Comment:

Although Browning tested Jorrely's model on his own and even slightly modified it, he must still acknowledge the original source of the idea. Browning can certainly take credit for the final, practical results; he can also support his conclusions with his own test. The credit for the innovative thinking, however, must be awarded to Jorrely.

Example 4:

Paul Ostrowski runs a 2-person investment management firm. Ostrowski's firm subscribes to a service from a large investment research firm that provides research reports that can be repackaged by smaller firms for those firms' clients. Ostrowski's firm distributes these reports to clients as its own work.

Comment:

Ostrowski can rely on third-party research that has a reasonable and adequate basis, but he cannot imply that he is the author of the report. Otherwise, Ostrowski would misrepresent the extent of his work in a way that would mislead the firm's clients or prospective clients.

Example 5:

A member makes an error in preparing marketing materials and misstates the amount of assets his firm has under management.

Comment:

The member must attempt to stop distribution of the erroneous material as soon as the error is known. Simply making the error unintentionally is not a violation, but

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

continuing to distribute material known to contain a significant misstatement of fact would be.

Example 6:

The marketing department states in sales literature that an analyst has received an MBA degree, but he has not. The analyst and other members of the firm have distributed this document for years.

Comment:

The analyst has violated the Standards, as he should have known of this misrepresentation after having distributed and used the materials over a period of years.

Example 7:

A member describes an interest-only collateralized mortgage obligation as guaranteed by the U.S government since it is a claim against the cash flows of a pool of guaranteed mortgages, although the payment stream and the market value of the security are not guaranteed.

Comment:

This is a violation because of the misrepresentation.

Example 8:

A member describes a bank CD as "guaranteed."

Comment:

This is not a violation as long as the limits of the guarantee provided by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation are not exceeded and the nature of the guarantee is clearly explained to clients.

Example 9:

A member uses definitions he found online for such terms as variance and coefficient of variation in preparing marketing material.

Comment:

Even though these are standard terms, using the work of others word-for-word is plagiarism.

Example 10:

A candidate reads about a research paper in a financial publication and includes the information in a research report, citing the original research report but not the financial publication.

Comment:

To the extent that the candidate used information and interpretation from the financial publication without citing it, the candidate is in violation of the Standard. The candidate should either obtain the report and reference it directly or, if he relies solely on the financial publication, should cite both sources.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

I(D) Misconduct. Members and Candidates must not engage in any professional conduct involving dishonesty, fraud, or deceit or commit any act that reflects adversely on their professional reputation, integrity, or competence.

Guidance

CFA Institute discourages unethical behavior in all aspects of members' and candidates' lives. Do not abuse CFA Institute's Professional Conduct Program by seeking enforcement of this Standard to settle personal, political, or other disputes that are not related to professional ethics.

Recommended Procedures for Compliance

Firms are encouraged to adopt these policies and procedures:

- Develop and adopt a code of ethics and make clear that unethical behavior will not be tolerated.
- Give employees a list of potential violations and sanctions, including dismissal.
- Check references of potential employees.

Application of Standard I(D) Misconduct

Example 1:

Simon Sasserman is a trust investment officer at a bank in a small affluent town. He enjoys lunching every day with friends at the country club, where his clients have observed him having numerous drinks. Back at work after lunch, he clearly is intoxicated while making investment decisions. His colleagues make a point of handling any business with Sasserman in the morning because they distrust his judgment after lunch.

Comment:

Sasserman's excessive drinking at lunch and subsequent intoxication at work constitute a violation of Standard I(D) because this conduct has raised questions about his professionalism and competence. His behavior thus reflects poorly on him, his employer, and the investment industry.

Example 2:

Carmen Garcia manages a mutual fund dedicated to socially responsible investing. She is also an environmental activist. As the result of her participation at nonviolent protests, Garcia has been arrested on numerous occasions for trespassing on the property of a large petrochemical plant that is accused of damaging the environment.

Comment:

Generally, Standard I(D) is not meant to cover legal transgressions resulting from acts of civil disobedience in support of personal beliefs because such conduct does not reflect poorly on the member or candidate's professional reputation, integrity, or competence.

Example 3:

A member intentionally includes a receipt that is not in his expenses for a company trip.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Comment:

Since this act involves deceit and fraud and reflects on the member's integrity and honesty, it is a violation.

Example 4:

A member tells a client that he can get her a good deal on a car through his father-in-law, but instead gets her a poor deal and accepts part of the commission on the car purchase.

Comment:

The member has been dishonest and misrepresented the facts of the situation and has, therefore, violated the Standard.

II Integrity of Capital Markets

II(A) **Material Nonpublic Information.** Members and Candidates who possess material nonpublic information that could affect the value of an investment must not act or cause others to act on the information.

Guidance

Information is "material" if its disclosure would impact the price of a security or if reasonable investors would want the information before making an investment decision. Ambiguous information, as far as its likely effect on price, may not be considered material. Information is "nonpublic" until it has been made available to the marketplace. An analyst conference call is not public disclosure. Selectively disclosing information by corporations creates the potential for insider-trading violations. The prohibition against acting on material nonpublic information extends to mutual funds containing the subject securities as well as related swaps and options contracts.

Guidance—Mosaic Theory

There is no violation when a perceptive analyst reaches an investment conclusion about a corporate action or event through an analysis of public information together with items of nonmaterial nonpublic information.

Recommended Procedures for Compliance

Make reasonable efforts to achieve public dissemination of the information. Encourage firms to adopt procedures to prevent misuse of material nonpublic information. Use a "firewall" within the firm, with elements including:

- Substantial control of relevant interdepartmental communications, through a clearance area such as the compliance or legal department.
- Review employee trades—maintain "watch," "restricted," and "rumor" lists.
- Monitor and restrict proprietary trading while a firm is in possession of material nonpublic information.

Prohibition of all proprietary trading while a firm is in possession of material nonpublic information may be inappropriate because it may send a signal to the market. In these cases, firms should take the contra side of only unsolicited customer trades.

Application of Standard II(A) Material Nonpublic Information

Example 1:

Josephine Walsh is riding an elevator up to her office when she overhears the chief financial officer (CFO) for the Swan Furniture Company tell the president of Swan that he has just calculated the company's earnings for the past quarter, and they have unexpectedly and significantly dropped. The CFO adds that this drop will not be released to the public until next week. Walsh immediately calls her broker and tells him to sell her Swan stock.

Comment:

Walsh has sufficient information to determine that the information is both material and nonpublic. By trading on the inside information, she has violated Standard II(A).

Example 2:

Samuel Peter, an analyst with Scotland and Pierce, Inc., is assisting his firm with a secondary offering for Bright Ideas Lamp Company. Peter participates, via telephone conference call, in a meeting with Scotland and Pierce investment-banking employees and Bright Ideas' CEO. Peter is advised that the company's earnings projections for the next year have significantly dropped. Throughout the telephone conference call, several Scotland and Pierce salespeople and portfolio managers walk in and out of Peter's office, where the telephone call is taking place. As a result, they are aware of the drop in projected earnings for Bright Ideas. Before the conference call is concluded, the salespeople trade the stock of the company on behalf of the firm's clients, and other firm personnel trade the stock in a firm proprietary account and in employee personal accounts.

Comment:

Peter violated Standard II(A) because he failed to prevent the transfer and misuse of material nonpublic information to others in his firm. Peter's firm should have adopted information barriers to prevent the communication of nonpublic information between departments of the firm. The salespeople and portfolio managers who traded on the information have also violated Standard II(A) by trading on inside information.

Example 3:

Elizabeth Levenson is based in Taipei and covers the Taiwanese market for her firm, which is based in Singapore. She is invited to meet the finance director of a manufacturing company, along with the other ten largest shareholders of the company. During the meeting, the finance director states that the company expects its workforce to strike next Friday, which will cripple productivity and distribution. Can Levenson use this information as a basis to change her rating on the company from "buy" to "sell"?

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Comment:

Levenson must first determine whether the material information is public. If the company has not made this information public (a small-group forum does not qualify as a method of public dissemination), she cannot use the information according to Standard II(A).

Example 4:

Jagdish Teja is a buy-side analyst covering the furniture industry. Looking for an attractive company to recommend as a buy, he analyzed several furniture makers by studying their financial reports and visiting their operations. He also talked to some designers and retailers to find out which furniture styles are trendy and popular. Although none of the companies that he analyzed turned out to be a clear buy, he discovered that one of them, Swan Furniture Company (SFC), might be in trouble. Swan's extravagant new designs were introduced at substantial costs. Even though these designs initially attracted attention, in the long run, the public is buying more conservative furniture from other makers. Based on that and on P&L analysis, Teja believes that Swan's next-quarter earnings will drop substantially. He then issues a sell recommendation for SFC. Immediately after receiving that recommendation, investment managers start reducing the stock in their portfolios.

Comment:

Information on quarterly earnings figures is material and nonpublic. However, Teja arrived at his conclusion about the earnings drop based on public information and on pieces of nonmaterial nonpublic information (such as opinions of designers and retailers). Therefore, trading based on Teja's correct conclusion is not prohibited by Standard II(A).

Example 5:

A member's dentist, who is an active investor, tells the member that based on his research he believes that Acme, Inc., will be bought out in the near future by a larger firm in the industry. The member investigates and purchases shares of Acme.

Comment:

There is no violation here because the dentist had no inside information but has reached the conclusion on his own. The information here is not material because there is no reason to suspect that an investor would wish to know what the member's dentist thought before investing in shares of Acme.

Example 6:

A member received an advance copy of a stock recommendation that will appear in a widely read national newspaper column the next day and purchases the stock.

Comment:

A recommendation in a widely read newspaper column will likely cause the stock price to rise, so this is material nonpublic information. The member has violated the Standard.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Example 7:

A member is having lunch with a portfolio manager from a mutual fund who is known for his stock-picking ability and often influences market prices when his stock purchases and sales are disclosed. The manager tells the member that he is selling all his shares in Able, Inc., the next day. The member shorts the stock.

Comment:

The fact that the fund will sell its shares of Able is material because news of it will likely cause the shares to fall in price. Since this is also not currently public information, the member has violated the Standard by acting on the information.

Example 8:

A broker who is a member receives the sell order for the Able, Inc., shares from the portfolio manager in the previous example. The broker sells his shares of Able prior to entering the sell order for the fund, but since his personal holdings are small compared to the stock's trading volume, his trade does not affect the price.

Comment:

The broker has acted on material nonpublic information (the fund's sale of shares) and has violated the Standard.

Professor's Note: The member also violated Standard VI(B) Priority of Transactions by front-running the client trade with a trade in his own account. Had the member sold his shares after executing the fund trade, he still would be violating Standard II(A) by acting on his knowledge of the fund trade, which would still not be public information at that point.

Example 9:

A member trades based on information he gets by seeing an advance copy of an article that will be published in an influential magazine next week.

Comment:

This is a violation as this is nonpublic information until the article has been published.

II(B) Market Manipulation. Members and Candidates must not engage in practices that distort prices or artificially inflate trading volume with the intent to mislead market participants.

Guidance

This Standard applies to transactions that deceive the market by distorting the price-setting mechanism of financial instruments or by securing a controlling position to manipulate the price of a related derivative and/or the asset itself. Spreading false rumors is also prohibited.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Application of Standard II(B) Market Manipulation

Example 1:

Matthew Murphy is an analyst at Divisadero Securities & Co., which has a significant number of hedge funds among its most important brokerage clients. Two trading days before the publication of the quarter-end report, Murphy alerts his sales force that he is about to issue a research report on Wirewolf Semiconductor, which will include his opinion that:

- Quarterly revenues are likely to fall short of management's guidance.
- Earnings will be as much as 5 cents per share (or more than 10%) below consensus.
- Wirewolf's highly respected chief financial officer may be about to join another company.

Knowing that Wirewolf had already entered its declared quarter-end "quiet period" before reporting earnings (and thus would be reluctant to respond to rumors, etc.), Murphy times the release of his research report specifically to sensationalize the negative aspects of the message to create significant downward pressure on Wirewolf's stock to the distinct advantage of Divisadero's hedge fund clients. The report's conclusions are based on speculation, not on fact. The next day, the research report is broadcast to all of Divisadero's clients and to the usual newswire services.

Before Wirewolf's investor relations department can assess its damage on the final trading day of the quarter and refute Murphy's report, its stock opens trading sharply lower, allowing Divisadero's clients to cover their short positions at substantial gains.

Comment:

Murphy violated Standard II(B) by trying to create artificial price volatility designed to have material impact on the price of an issuer's stock. Moreover, by lacking an adequate basis for the recommendation, Murphy also violated Standard V(A).

Example 2:

Sergei Gonchar is the chairman of the ACME Futures Exchange, which seeks to launch a new bond futures contract. In order to convince investors, traders, arbitragers, hedgers, and so on, to use its contract, the exchange attempts to demonstrate that it has the best liquidity. To do so, it enters into agreements with members so that they commit to a substantial minimum trading volume on the new contract over a specific period in exchange for substantial reductions on their regular commissions.

Comment:

Formal liquidity on a market is determined by the obligations set on market makers, but the actual liquidity of a market is better estimated by the actual trading volume and bid-ask spreads. Attempts to mislead participants on the actual liquidity of the market constitute a violation of Standard II(B). In this example, investors have been intentionally misled to believe they chose the most liquid instrument for some specific purpose and could eventually see the actual liquidity of the contract dry up suddenly after the term of the agreement if the "pump-priming" strategy fails. If ACME fully discloses its agreement with members to boost transactions over some initial launch period, it does not violate Standard II(B). ACME's intent is not to harm investors but to give them a better service. For that purpose, it may engage in a liquidity-pumping strategy, but it must be disclosed.

Example 3:

A member is seeking to sell a large position in a fairly illiquid stock from a fund he manages. He buys and sells shares of the stock between that fund and another he also manages to create an appearance of activity and stock price appreciation, so that the sale of the whole position will have less market impact and he will realize a better return for the fund's shareholders.

Comment:

The trading activity is meant to mislead market participants and is, therefore, a violation of the Standard. The fact that his fund shareholders gain by this action does not change the fact that it is a violation.

Example 4:

A member posts false information about a firm on Internet bulletin boards and stock chat facilities in an attempt to cause the firm's stock to increase in price.

Comment:

This is a violation of the Standard.

III Duties to Clients

III(A) Loyalty, Prudence, and Care. Members and Candidates have a duty of loyalty to their clients and must act with reasonable care and exercise prudent judgment. Members and Candidates must act for the benefit of their clients and place their clients' interests before their employer's or their own interests.

Guidance

Client interests always come first.

- Exercise the prudence, care, skill, and diligence under the circumstances that a person acting in a like capacity and familiar with such matters would use.
- Manage pools of client assets in accordance with the terms of the governing documents, such as trust documents or investment management agreements.
- Make investment decisions in the context of the total portfolio.
- Vote proxies in an informed and responsible manner. Due to cost benefit considerations, it may not be necessary to vote all proxies.
- Client brokerage, or "soft dollars" or "soft commissions" must be used to benefit the client.
- The "client" may be the investing public as a whole rather than a specific entity or person.

Recommended Procedures of Compliance

Submit to clients, at least quarterly, itemized statements showing all securities in custody and all debits, credits, and transactions.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Encourage firms to address these topics when drafting policies and procedures regarding fiduciary duty:

- Follow applicable rules and laws.
- Establish investment objectives of client. Consider suitability of portfolio relative to client's needs and circumstances, the investment's basic characteristics, or the basic characteristics of the total portfolio.
- Diversify.
- Deal fairly with all clients in regards to investment actions.
- Disclose conflicts.
- Disclose compensation arrangements.
- Vote proxies in the best interest of clients and ultimate beneficiaries.
- Maintain confidentiality.
- Seek best execution.
- Place client interests first.

Application of Standard III(A) Loyalty, Prudence, and Care

Example 1:

First Country Bank serves as trustee for the Miller Company's pension plan. Miller is the target of a hostile takeover attempt by Newton, Inc. In attempting to ward off Newton, Miller's managers persuade Julian Wiley, an investment manager at First Country Bank, to purchase Miller common stock in the open market for the employee pension plan. Miller's officials indicate that such action would be favorably received and would probably result in other accounts being placed with the bank. Although Wiley believes the stock to be overvalued and would not ordinarily buy it, he purchases the stock to support Miller's managers, to maintain the company's good favor, and to realize additional new business. The heavy stock purchases cause Miller's market price to rise to such a level that Newton retracts its takeover bid.

Comment:

Standard III(A) requires that a member or candidate, in evaluating a takeover bid, act prudently and solely in the interests of plan participants and beneficiaries. To meet this requirement, a member or candidate must carefully evaluate the long-term prospects of the company against the short-term prospects presented by the takeover offer and by the ability to invest elsewhere. In this instance, Wiley, acting on behalf of his employer, the trustee, clearly violated Standard III(A) by using the pension plan to perpetuate existing management, perhaps to the detriment of plan participants and the company's shareholders, and to benefit himself. Wiley's responsibilities to the plan participants and beneficiaries should take precedence over any ties to corporate managers and self-interest. A duty exists to examine such a takeover offer on its own merits and to make an independent decision. The guiding principle is the appropriateness of the investment decision to the pension plan, not whether the decision benefits Wiley or the company that hired him.

Example 2:

Emilie Rome is a trust officer for Paget Trust Company. Rome's supervisor is responsible for reviewing Rome's trust account transactions and her monthly reports of personal stock transactions. Rome has been using Nathan Gray, a broker, almost exclusively for trust account brokerage transactions. Where Gray makes a market in stocks, he has been

giving Rome a lower price for personal purchases and a higher price for sales than he gives to Rome's trust accounts and other investors.

Comment:

Rome is violating her duty of loyalty to the bank's trust accounts by using Gray for brokerage transactions simply because Gray trades Rome's personal account on favorable terms.

Example 3:

A member uses a broker that charges relatively high prices and provides average research and execution for client-account trades. In return, the broker pays for the rent and other overhead expenses for the member's firm.

Comment:

This is a violation of the Standard since the member used client brokerage for services that do not benefit clients and failed to get the best price and execution for his clients.

Example 4:

In return for receiving account management business from Broker X, a member directs trades to Broker X on the accounts referred to her by Broker X, as well as on other accounts as an incentive to Broker X to send her more account business.

Comment:

This is a violation if Broker X does not offer the best price and execution or if the practice of directing trades to Broker X is not disclosed to clients. The obligation to seek best price and execution is always required unless clients provide a written statement that the member is not to seek best price and execution and that they are aware of the impact of this decision on their accounts.

Example 5:

A member does more trades in client accounts than are necessary to accomplish client goals because she desires to increase her commission income.

Comment:

The member is using client assets (brokerage fees) to benefit herself and has violated the Standard.

III(B) Fair Dealing. Members and Candidates must deal fairly and objectively with all clients when providing investment analysis, making investment recommendations, taking investment action, or engaging in other professional activities.

Guidance

Do not discriminate against any clients when disseminating recommendations or taking investment action. Fairly does not mean equally. In the normal course of business, there will be differences in the time e-mails, faxes, etc., are received by different clients. Different service levels are okay, but they must not negatively affect or disadvantage

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

any clients. Disclose the different service levels to all clients and prospects, and make premium levels of service available to all who wish to pay for them.

Guidance—Investment Recommendations

Give all clients a fair opportunity to act upon every recommendation. Clients who are unaware of a change in a recommendation should be advised before the order is accepted.

Guidance—Investment Actions

Treat clients fairly in light of their investment objectives and circumstances. Treat both individual and institutional clients in a fair and impartial manner. Members and Candidates should not take advantage of their position in the industry to disadvantage clients (e.g., in the context of IPOs).

Recommended Procedures for Compliance

Encourage firms to establish compliance procedures requiring proper dissemination of investment recommendations and fair treatment of all customers and clients. Consider these points when establishing fair dealing compliance procedures:

- Limit the number of people who are aware that a change in recommendation will be made.
- Shorten the time frame between decision and dissemination.
- Publish personnel guidelines for pre-dissemination—have in place guidelines prohibiting personnel who have prior knowledge of a recommendation from discussing it or taking action on the pending recommendation.
- Simultaneous dissemination of new or changed recommendations to all candidates who have expressed an interest or for whom an investment is suitable.
- Maintain list of clients and holdings—use to ensure that all holders are treated fairly.
- Develop written trade allocation procedures—ensure fairness to clients, timely and efficient order execution, and accuracy of client positions.
- Disclose trade allocation procedures.
- Establish systematic account review—ensure that no client is given preferred treatment and that investment actions are consistent with the account's objectives.
- Disclose available levels of service.

Application of Standard III(B) Fair Dealing

Example 1:

Bradley Ames, a well-known and respected analyst, follows the computer industry. In the course of his research, he finds that a small, relatively unknown company whose shares are traded over the counter has just signed significant contracts with some of the companies he follows. After a considerable amount of investigation, Ames decides to write a research report on the company and recommend purchase. While the report is being reviewed by the company for factual accuracy, Ames schedules a luncheon with several of his best clients to discuss the company. At the luncheon, he mentions the purchase recommendation scheduled to be sent early the following week to all the firm's clients.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Comment:

Ames violated Standard III(B) by disseminating the purchase recommendation to the clients with whom he had lunch a week before the recommendation was sent to all clients.

Example 2:

Spencer Rivers, president of XYZ Corporation, moves his company's growth-oriented pension fund to a particular bank primarily because of the excellent investment performance achieved by the bank's commingled fund for the prior 5-year period. A few years later, Rivers compares the results of his pension fund with those of the bank's commingled fund. He is startled to learn that, even though the two accounts have the same investment objectives and similar portfolios, his company's pension fund has significantly underperformed the bank's commingled fund. Questioning this result at his next meeting with the pension fund's manager, Rivers is told that, as a matter of policy, when a new security is placed on the recommended list, Morgan Jackson, the pension fund manager, first purchases the security for the commingled account and then purchases it on a pro rata basis for all other pension fund accounts. Similarly, when a sale is recommended, the security is sold first from the commingled account and then sold on a pro rata basis from all other accounts. Rivers also learns that if the bank cannot get enough shares (especially the hot issues) to be meaningful to all the accounts, its policy is to place the new issues only in the commingled account.

Seeing that Rivers is neither satisfied nor pleased by the explanation, Jackson quickly adds that nondiscretionary pension accounts and personal trust accounts have a lower priority on purchase and sale recommendations than discretionary pension fund accounts. Furthermore, Jackson states, the company's pension fund had the opportunity to invest up to 5% in the commingled fund.

Comment:

The bank's policy did not treat all customers fairly, and Jackson violated her duty to her clients by giving priority to the growth-oriented commingled fund over all other funds and to discretionary accounts over nondiscretionary accounts. Jackson must execute orders on a systematic basis that is fair to all clients. In addition, trade allocation procedures should be disclosed to all clients from the beginning. Of course, in this case, disclosure of the bank's policy would not change the fact that the policy is unfair.

Example 3:

A member gets options for his part in an IPO from the subject firm. The IPO is oversubscribed and the member fills his own and other individuals' orders but has to reduce allocations to his institutional clients.

Comment:

The member has violated the Standard. He must disclose to his employer and to his clients that he has accepted options for putting together the IPO. He should not take any shares of a hot IPO for himself and should have distributed his allocated shares of the IPO to all clients in proportion to their original order amounts.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Example 4:

A member is delayed in allocating some trades to client accounts. When she allocates the trades, she puts some positions that have appreciated in a preferred client's account and puts trades that have not done as well in other client accounts.

Comment:

This is a violation of the Standard. The member should have allocated the trades to specific accounts prior to the trades or should have allocated the trades proportionally to suitable accounts in a timely fashion.

Example 5:

Because of minimum lot size restrictions, a portfolio manager allocates the bonds she receives from an oversubscribed bond offering to her clients in a way that is not strictly proportional to their purchase requests.

Comment:

Since she has a reason (minimum lot size) to deviate from a strict pro rata allocation to her clients, there is no violation of Fair Dealing.

III(C) Suitability

1. When Members and Candidates are in an advisory relationship with a client, they must:
    a. Make a reasonable inquiry into a client's or prospective clients' investment experience, risk and return objectives, and financial constraints prior to making any investment recommendation or taking investment action and must reassess and update this information regularly.
    b. Determine that an investment is suitable to the client's financial situation and consistent with the client's written objectives, mandates, and constraints before making an investment recommendation or taking investment action.
    c. Judge the suitability of investments in the context of the client's total portfolio.
2. When Members and Candidates are responsible for managing a portfolio to a specific mandate, strategy, or style, they must make only investment recommendations or take investment actions that are consistent with the stated objectives and constraints of the portfolio.

Guidance

In advisory relationships, be sure to gather client information at the beginning of the relationship, in the form of an investment policy statement (IPS). Consider clients' needs and circumstances and thus their risk tolerance. Consider whether or not the use of leverage is suitable for the client.

If a member is responsible for managing a fund to an index or other stated mandate, be sure investments are consistent with the stated mandate.

Recommended Procedures for Compliance

Members should:

- Put the needs and circumstances of each client and the client's investment objectives into a written IPS for each client.
- Consider the type of client and whether there are separate beneficiaries, investor objectives (return and risk), investor constraints (liquidity needs, expected cash flows, time, tax, and regulatory and legal circumstances), and performance measurement benchmarks.
- Review investor's objectives and constraints periodically to reflect any changes in client circumstances.

Application of Standard III(C) Suitability

Example 1:

Jessica Walters, an investment advisor, suggests to Brian Crosby, a risk-averse client, that covered call options be used in his equity portfolio. The purpose would be to enhance Crosby's income and partially offset any untimely depreciation in value should the stock market or other circumstances affect his holdings unfavorably. Walters educates Crosby about all possible outcomes, including the risk of incurring an added tax liability if a stock rises in price and is called away and, conversely, the risk of his holdings losing protection on the downside if prices drop sharply.

Comment:

When determining suitability of an investment, the primary focus should be on the characteristics of the client's entire portfolio, not on an issue-by-issue analysis. The basic characteristics of the entire portfolio will largely determine whether the investment recommendations are taking client factors into account. Therefore, the most important aspects of a particular investment will be those that will affect the characteristics of the total portfolio. In this case, Walters properly considered the investment in the context of the entire portfolio and thoroughly explained the investment to the client.

Example 2:

Max Gubler, CIO of a property/casualty insurance subsidiary of a large financial conglomerate, wants to better diversify the company's investment portfolio and increase its returns. The company's investment policy statement (IPS) provides for highly liquid investments, such as large caps, governments, and supra-nationals, as well as corporate bonds with a minimum credit rating of AA- and maturity of no more than five years. In a recent presentation, a venture capital group offered very attractive prospective returns on some of their private equity funds providing seed capital. An exit strategy is already contemplated but investors will first have to observe a minimum 3-year lock-up period, with a subsequent laddered exit option for a maximum of one-third of shares per year. Gubler does not want to miss this opportunity and after an extensive analysis and optimization of this asset class with the company's current portfolio, he invests 4% in this seed fund, leaving the portfolio's total equity exposure still well below its upper limit.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Comment:

Gubler violates Standards III(A) and III(C). His new investment locks up part of the company's assets for at least three and for up to as many as five years and possibly beyond. Since the IPS requires investments in highly liquid investments and describes accepted asset classes, private equity investments with a lock-up period certainly do not qualify. Even without such lock-up periods, an asset class with only an occasional, and thus implicitly illiquid, market may not be suitable. Although an IPS typically describes objectives and constraints in great detail, the manager must make every effort to understand the client's business and circumstances. Doing so should also enable the manager to recognize, understand, and discuss with the client other factors that may be or may become material in the investment management process.

Example 3:

A member gives a client account a significant allocation to non-dividend paying high risk securities even though the client has low risk tolerance and modest return objectives.

Comment:

This is a violation of the Standard.

Example 4:

A member puts a security into a fund she manages that does not fit the mandate of the fund and is not a permitted investment according to the fund's disclosures.

Comment:

This, too, is a violation of the Standard.

Example 5:

A member starts his own money management business but puts all clients in his friend's hedge funds.

Comment:

He has violated the Standards with respect to suitability. He must match client needs and circumstances to the investments he recommends and cannot act like a sales agent for his friend's funds.

III(D) Performance Presentation. When communicating investment performance information, Members or Candidates must make reasonable efforts to ensure that it is fair, accurate, and complete.

Guidance

Members must avoid misstating performance or misleading clients/prospects about investment performance of themselves or their firms, should not misrepresent past performance or reasonably expected performance, and should not state or imply the ability to achieve a rate of return similar to that achieved in the past. For brief presentations, members must make detailed information available on request and indicate that the presentation has offered limited information.

Recommended Procedures for Compliance

Encourage firms to adhere to Global Investment Performance Standards. Obligations under this Standard may also be met by:

- Considering the sophistication of the audience to whom a performance presentation is addressed.
- Presenting performance of weighted composite of similar portfolios rather than a single account.
- Including terminated accounts as part of historical performance and clearly stating when they were terminated.
- Including all appropriate disclosures to fully explain results (e.g., model results included, gross or net of fees, etc.).
- Maintaining data and records used to calculate the performance being presented.

Application of Standard III(D) Performance Presentation

Example 1:

Kyle Taylor of Taylor Trust Company, noting the performance of Taylor's common trust fund for the past two years, states in the brochure sent to his potential clients that "You can expect steady 25% annual compound growth of the value of your investments over the year." Taylor Trust's common trust fund did increase at the rate of 25% per annum for the past year which mirrored the increase of the entire market. The fund, however, never averaged that growth for more than one year, and the average rate of growth of all of its trust accounts for five years was 5% per annum.

Comment:

Taylor's brochure is in violation of Standard III(D). Taylor should have disclosed that the 25% growth occurred in only one year. Additionally, Taylor did not include client accounts other than those in the firm's common trust fund. A general claim of firm performance should take into account the performance of all categories of accounts. Finally, by stating that clients can expect a steady 25% annual compound growth rate, Taylor also violated Standard I(C), which prohibits statements of assurances or guarantees regarding an investment.

Example 2:

Aaron McCoy is vice president and managing partner of the equity investment group of Mastermind Financial Advisors, a new business. Mastermind recruited McCoy because he had a proven 6-year track record with G&P Financial. In developing Mastermind's advertising and marketing campaign, McCoy prepared an advertisement that included the equity investment performance he achieved at G&P Financial. The advertisement for Mastermind did not identify the equity performance as being earned while at G&P. The advertisement was distributed to existing clients and prospective clients of Mastermind.

Comment:

McCoy violated Standard III(D) by distributing an advertisement that contained material misrepresentations regarding the historical performance of Mastermind. Standard III(D) requires that members and candidates make every reasonable effort to ensure that performance information is a fair, accurate, and complete representation of an individual or firm's performance. As a general matter, this standard does not prohibit

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

showing past performance of funds managed at a prior firm as part of a performance track record so long as it is accompanied by appropriate disclosures detailing where the performance comes from and the person's specific role in achieving that performance. If McCoy chooses to use his past performance from G&P in Mastermind's advertising, he should make full disclosure as to the source of the historical performance.

Example 3:

A member puts simulated results of an investment strategy in a sales brochure without disclosing that the results are not actual performance numbers.

Comment:

The member has violated the Standard.

Example 4:

In materials for prospective clients, a member uses performance figures for a large-cap growth composite she has created by choosing accounts that have done relatively well and including some accounts with significant mid-cap exposure.

Comment:

This is a violation of the Standard as the member has attempted to mislead clients and has misrepresented her performance.

III(E) Preservation of Confidentiality. Members and Candidates must keep information about current, former, and prospective clients confidential unless:

1. The information concerns illegal activities on the part of the client or prospective client,
2. Disclosure is required by law, or
3. The client or prospective client permits disclosure of the information.

Guidance

If illegal activities by a client are involved, members may have an obligation to report the activities to authorities. The confidentiality Standard extends to former clients as well.

The requirements of this Standard are not intended to prevent Members and Candidates from cooperating with a CFA Institute Professional Conduct Program (PCP) investigation.

Recommended Procedures for Compliance

Members should avoid disclosing information received from a client except to authorized co-workers who are also working for the client. Members should follow firm procedures for storage of electronic data and recommend adoption of such procedures if they are not in place.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Application of Standard III(E) Preservation of Confidentiality

Example 1:

Sarah Connor, a financial analyst employed by Johnson Investment Counselors, Inc., provides investment advice to the trustees of City Medical Center. The trustees have given her a number of internal reports concerning City Medical's needs for physical plant renovation and expansion. They have asked Connor to recommend investments that would generate capital appreciation in endowment funds to meet projected capital expenditures. Connor is approached by a local business man, Thomas Kasey, who is considering a substantial contribution either to City Medical Center or to another local hospital. Kasey wants to find out the building plans of both institutions before making a decision, but he does not want to speak to the trustees.

Comment:

The trustees gave Connor the internal reports so she could advise them on how to manage their endowment funds. Because the information in the reports is clearly both confidential and within the scope of the confidential relationship, Standard III(E) requires that Connor refuse to divulge information to Kasey.

Example 2:

David Bradford manages money for a family-owned real estate development corporation. He also manages the individual portfolios of several of the family members and officers of the corporation, including the chief financial officer (CFO). Based on the financial records from the corporation, as well as some questionable practices of the CFO that he has observed, Bradford believes that the CFO is embezzling money from the corporation and putting it into his personal investment account.

Comment:

Bradford should check with his firm's compliance department as well as outside counsel to determine whether applicable securities regulations require reporting the CFO's financial records.

Example 3:

A member has learned from his client that one of his goals is to give more of his portfolio income to charity. The member tells this to a friend who is on the board of a worthy charity and suggests that he should contact the client about a donation.

Comment:

The member has violated the Standard by disclosing information he has learned from the client in the course of their business relationship.

Example 4:

A member learns that a pension account client is violating the law with respect to charges to the pension fund.

Comment:

The member must bring this to the attention of her supervisor and try to end the illegal activity. Failing this, the member should seek legal advice about any disclosure she

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

should make to legal or regulatory authorities and dissociate herself from any continuing association with the pension account.

IV Duties to Employers

IV(A) Loyalty. In matters related to their employment, Members and Candidates must act for the benefit of their employer and not deprive their employer of the advantage of their skills and abilities, divulge confidential information, or otherwise cause harm to their employer.

Guidance

Members must not engage in any activities which would injure the firm, deprive it of profit, or deprive it of the advantage of employees' skills and abilities. Members should always place client interests above interests of their employer but consider the effects of their actions on firm integrity and sustainability. There is no requirement that the employee put employer interests ahead of family and other personal obligations; it is expected that employers and employees will discuss such matters and balance these obligations with work obligations.

Guidance—Employer Responsibility

Members are encouraged to give their employer a copy of the Code and Standards. Employers should not have incentive and compensation systems that encourage unethical behavior.

Guidance—Independent Practice

Independent practice for compensation is allowed if a notification is provided to the employer fully describing all aspects of the services, including compensation, duration, and the nature of the activities *and* if the employer consents to all terms of the proposed independent practice before it begins.

Guidance—Leaving an Employer

Members must continue to act in their employer's best interests until resignation is effective. Activities which may constitute a violation include:

- Misappropriation of trade secrets.
- Misuse of confidential information.
- Soliciting employer's clients prior to leaving.
- Self-dealing.
- Misappropriation of client lists.

Employer records on any medium (e.g., home computer, PDA, cell phone) are the property of the firm.

Once an employee has left a firm, simple knowledge of names and existence of former clients is generally not confidential. Also there is no prohibition on the use of experience or knowledge gained while with a former employer.

Guidance—Whistleblowing

There may be isolated cases where a duty to one's employer may be violated in order to protect clients or the integrity of the market, and not for personal gain.

Guidance—Nature of Employment

The applicability of this Standard is based on the nature of the employment—employee versus independent contractor. If Members and Candidates are independent contractors, they still have a duty to abide by the terms of the agreement.

Application of Standard IV(A) Loyalty

Example 1:

James Hightower has been employed by Jason Investment Management Corporation for 15 years. He began as an analyst but assumed increasing responsibilities and is now a senior portfolio manager and a member of the firm's investment policy committee. Hightower has decided to leave Jason Investment and start his own investment management business. He has been careful not to tell any of Jason's clients that he is leaving, because he does not want to be accused of breaching his duty to Jason by soliciting Jason's clients before his departure. Hightower is planning to copy and take with him the following documents and information he developed or worked on while at Jason: (1) the client list, with addresses, telephone numbers, and other pertinent client information; (2) client account statements; (3) sample marketing presentations to prospective clients containing Jason's performance record; (4) Jason's recommended list of securities; (5) computer models to determine asset allocations for accounts with different objectives; (6) computer models for stock selection; and (7) personal computer spreadsheets for Hightower's major corporate recommendations which he developed when he was an analyst.

Comment:

Except with the consent of their employer, departing employees may not take employer property, which includes books, records, reports, and other materials, and may not interfere with their employer's business opportunities. Taking any employer records, even those the member or candidate prepared, violates Standard IV(A).

Example 2:

Dennis Elliot has hired Sam Chisolm who previously worked for a competing firm. Chisolm left his former firm after 18 years of employment. When Chisolm begins working for Elliot, he wants to contact his former clients because he knows them well and is certain that many will follow him to his new employer. Is Chisolm in violation of the Standard IV(A) if he contacts his former clients?

Comment:

Because client records are the property of the firm, contacting former clients for any reason through the use of client lists or other information taken from a former employer without permission would be a violation of Standard IV(A). In addition, the nature and extent of the contact with former clients may be governed by the terms of any non-compete agreement signed by the employee and the former employer that covers contact with former clients after employment.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

But, simple knowledge of the name and existence of former clients is not confidential information, just as skills or experience that an employee obtains while employed is not "confidential" or "privileged" information. The Code and Standards do not impose a prohibition on the use of experience or knowledge gained at one employer from being used at another employer. The Code and Standards also do not prohibit former employees from contacting clients of their previous firm, absent a non-compete agreement. Members and candidates are free to use public information about their former firm after departing to contact former clients without violating Standard IV(A).

In the absence of a non-compete agreement, as long as Chisolm maintains his duty of loyalty to his employer before joining Elliot's firm, does not take steps to solicit clients until he has left his former firm, and does not make use of material from his former employer without its permission after he has left, he would not be in violation of the Code and Standards.

Example 3:

Several employees are planning to depart their current employer within a few weeks and have been careful not to engage in any activities that would conflict with their duty to their current employer. They have just learned that one of their employer's clients has undertaken a request for proposal (RFP) to review and possibly hire a new investment consultant. The RFP has been sent to the employer and all of its competitors. The group believes that the new entity to be formed would be qualified to respond to the RFP and eligible for the business. The RFP submission period is likely to conclude before the employees' resignations are effective. Is it permissible for the group of departing employees to respond to the RFP under their anticipated new firm?

Comment:

A group of employees responding to an RFP that their employer is also responding to would lead to direct competition between the employees and the employer. Such conduct would violate Standard IV(A) unless the group of employees received permission from their employer as well as the entity sending out the RFP.

Example 4:

A member solicits clients and prospects of his current employer to open accounts at the new firm he will be joining shortly.

Comment:

It is a violation of the Standard to solicit the firm's clients and prospects while he is still employed by the firm.

Example 5:

Two employees discuss joining with others in an employee-led buyout of their employer's emerging markets investment management business.

Comment:

There is no violation here. Their employer can decide how to respond to any buyout offer. If such a buyout takes place, clients should be informed of the nature of the changes in a timely manner.

Example 6:

A member is writing a research report on a company as a contract worker for Employer A (using Employer A's premises and materials) with the understanding that Employer A does not claim exclusive rights to the outcome of her research. As she is finishing the report, she is offered a full-time job by Employer B and sends Employer B a copy of a draft of her report for publication.

Comment:

She has violated the Standard by not giving Employer A the first rights to act on her research. She must also be careful not to take any materials used in preparing the report from Employer A's premises.

Example 7:

A member helps develop software for a firm while acting as an unpaid intern and takes the software, without permission, with her when she takes a full-time job at another firm.

Comment:

She is considered an employee of the firm and has violated the Standard by taking her employer's property without permission.

Example 8:

A member prepares to leave his employer and open his own firm by registering with the SEC, renting an office, and buying office equipment.

Comment:

As long as these preparations have not interfered with the performance of his current job, there has been no violation. The solicitation of firm clients and prospects prior to leaving his employer would, however, be a violation of the Standard.

Example 9:

A member is a full-time employee of an investment management firm and wants to accept a paid position as town mayor without asking his employer's permission.

Comment:

Since the member serving as mayor does not conflict with his employer's business interests, as long as the time commitment does not preclude performing his expected job functions well, there is no violation.

Example 10:

A member who has left one employer uses public sources to get the phone numbers of previous clients and solicits their business for her new employer.

Comment:

As long as there is no agreement in force between the member and his previous employer that prohibits such solicitation, there is no violation of the Standards.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

IV(B) Additional Compensation Arrangements. Members and Candidates must not accept gifts, benefits, compensation, or consideration that competes with, or might reasonably be expected to create a conflict of interest with, their employer's interest unless they obtain written consent from all parties involved.

Guidance

Compensation includes direct and indirect compensation from a client and other benefits received from third parties. Written consent from a member's employer includes e-mail communication.

Recommended Procedures for Compliance

Make an immediate written report to employer detailing any proposed compensation and services, if additional to that provided by employer. Details including any performance incentives should be verified by the offering party.

Application of Standard IV(B) Additional Compensation Arrangements

Example 1:

Geoff Whitman, a portfolio analyst for Adams Trust Company, manages the account of Carol Cochran, a client. Whitman is paid a salary by his employer, and Cochran pays the trust company a standard fee based on the market value of assets in her portfolio. Cochran proposes to Whitman that "any year that my portfolio achieves at least a 15% return before taxes, you and your wife can fly to Monaco at my expense and use my condominium during the third week of January." Whitman does not inform his employer of the arrangement and vacations in Monaco the following January as Cochran's guest.

Comment:

Whitman violated Standard IV(B) by failing to inform his employer in writing of this supplemental, contingent compensation arrangement. The nature of the arrangement could have resulted in partiality to Cochran's account, which could have detracted from Whitman's performance with respect to other accounts he handles for Adams Trust. Whitman must obtain the consent of his employer to accept such a supplemental benefit.

Example 2:

A member is on the board of directors of a company whose shares he purchases for client accounts. As a member of the board, he receives the company's product at no charge.

Comment:

Since receiving the company's product constitutes compensation for his service, he is in violation of the Standard if he does not disclose this additional compensation to his employer.

IV(C) Responsibilities of Supervisors. Members and Candidates must make reasonable efforts to detect and prevent violations of applicable laws, rules, regulations, and the Code and Standards by anyone subject to their supervision or authority.

Guidance

Members must take steps to *prevent* employees from violating laws, rules, regulations, or the Code and Standards, as well as make reasonable efforts to *detect* violations. Members with supervisory responsibility should enforce firm policies regarding investment or non-investment behavior (e.g., mandatory vacations) equally.

Guidance—Compliance Procedures

Understand that an adequate compliance system must meet industry standards, regulatory requirements, and the requirements of the Code and Standards. Members with supervisory responsibilities have an obligation to bring an inadequate compliance system to the attention of firm's management and recommend corrective action. While investigating a possible breach of compliance procedures, it is appropriate to limit the suspected employee's activities.

A member or candidate faced with no compliance procedures or with procedures he believes are inadequate must decline supervisory responsibility in writing until adequate procedures are adopted by the firm.

Recommended Procedures for Compliance

A member should recommend that his employer adopt a code of ethics. Employers should not commingle compliance procedures with the firm's code of ethics—this can dilute the goal of reinforcing one's ethical obligations. Members should encourage employers to provide their code of ethics to clients.

Adequate compliance procedures should:

- Be clearly written.
- Be easy to understand.
- Designate a compliance officer with authority clearly defined.
- Have a system of checks and balances.
- Outline the scope of procedures.
- Outline what conduct is permitted.
- Contain procedures for reporting violations and sanctions.

Once the compliance program is instituted, the supervisor should:

- Distribute it to the proper personnel.
- Update it as needed.
- Continually educate staff regarding procedures.
- Issue reminders as necessary.
- Require professional conduct evaluations.
- Review employee actions to monitor compliance and identify violations.
- Enforce procedures once a violation occurs.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

If there is a violation, respond promptly and conduct a thorough investigation while placing limitations on the wrongdoer's activities.

Application of Standard IV(C) Responsibilities of Supervisors

Example 1:

Jane Mattock, senior vice president and head of the research department of H&V, Inc., a regional brokerage firm, has decided to change her recommendation for Timber Products from buy to sell. In line with H&V's procedures, she orally advises certain other H&V executives of her proposed actions before the report is prepared for publication. As a result of his conversation with Mattock, Dieter Frampton, one of the executives of H&V accountable to Mattock, immediately sells Timber's stock from his own account and from certain discretionary client accounts. In addition, other personnel inform certain institutional customers of the changed recommendation before it is printed and disseminated to all H&V customers who have received previous Timber reports.

Comment:

Mattock failed to supervise reasonably and adequately the actions of those accountable to her. She did not prevent or establish reasonable procedures designed to prevent dissemination of or trading on the information by those who knew of her changed recommendation. She must ensure that her firm has procedures for reviewing or recording trading in the stock of any corporation that has been the subject of an unpublished change in recommendation. Adequate procedures would have informed the subordinates of their duties and detected sales by Frampton and selected customers.

Example 2:

Deion Miller is the research director for Jamestown Investment Programs. The portfolio managers have become critical of Miller and his staff because the Jamestown portfolios do not include any stock that has been the subject of a merger or tender offer. Georgia Ginn, a member of Miller's staff, tells Miller that she has been studying a local company, Excelsior, Inc., and recommends its purchase. Ginn adds that the company has been widely rumored to be the subject of a merger study by a well-known conglomerate and discussions between them are under way. At Miller's request, Ginn prepares a memo recommending the stock. Miller passes along Ginn's memo to the portfolio managers prior to leaving for vacation, noting that he has not reviewed the memo. As a result of the memo, the portfolio managers buy Excelsior stock immediately. The day Miller returns to the office, Miller learns that Ginn's only sources for the report were her brother, who is an acquisitions analyst with Acme Industries and the "well-known conglomerate" and that the merger discussions were planned but not held.

Comment:

Miller violated Standard IV(C) by not exercising reasonable supervision when he disseminated the memo without checking to ensure that Ginn had a reasonable and adequate basis for her recommendations and that Ginn was not relying on material nonpublic information.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Example 3:

A member responsible for compliance by the firm's trading desk notices a high level of trading activity in a stock that is not on the firm's recommended list. Most of this trading is being done by a trainee, and the member does not investigate this trading.

Comment:

This is a violation of the member's responsibilities as supervisor. She must take steps to monitor the activities of traders in training, as well as investigate the reason for the heavy trading of the security by her firm's trading desk.

V Investment Analysis, Recommendations, and Actions

V(A) Diligence and Reasonable Basis. Members and Candidates must:

1. Exercise diligence, independence, and thoroughness in analyzing investments, making investment recommendations, and taking investment actions.

2. Have a reasonable and adequate basis, supported by appropriate research and investigation, for any investment analysis, recommendation, or action.

Guidance

The application of this Standard depends on the investment philosophy adhered to, members' and candidates' roles in the investment decision-making process, and the resources and support provided by employers. These factors dictate the degree of diligence, thoroughness of research, and the proper level of investigation required.

Guidance—Reasonable Basis

The level of research required to satisfy the requirement for due diligence will differ depending on the product or service offered. A list of some things that should be considered prior to making a recommendation or taking investment action includes:

- A firm's financial results, operating history, and business cycle stage.
- Fees and historical results for a mutual fund.
- Limitations of any quantitative models used.
- A determination of whether peer group comparisons for valuation are appropriate.

Guidance—Using Secondary or Third-Party Research

Members should encourage their firms to adopt a policy for periodic review of the quality of third-party research, if they have not. Examples of criteria to use in judging quality are:

- Review assumptions used.
- Determine how rigorous the analysis was.
- Identify how timely how the research is.
- Evaluate objectivity and independence of the recommendations.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Guidance—Quantitative Research

Members must be able to explain the basic nature of the quantitative research and how it is used to make investment decisions. Members should consider scenarios outside those typically used to assess downside risk and the time horizon of the data used for model evaluation to ensure that both positive and negative cycle results have been considered.

Guidance—External Advisers

Members should make sure their firms have procedures in place to review any external advisers they use or promote to ensure that, among other things, the advisers:

- Have adequate compliance and internal controls.
- Present returns information that is correct.
- Do not deviate from their stated strategies.

Guidance—Group Research and Decision Making

Even if a member does not agree with the independent and objective view of the group, he does not necessarily have to decline to be identified with the report, as long as there is a reasonable and adequate basis.

Recommended Procedures for Compliance

Members should encourage their firms to consider these policies and procedures supporting this Standard:

- Have a policy requiring that research reports and recommendations have a basis that can be substantiated as reasonable and adequate.
- Have detailed, written guidance for proper research and due diligence.
- Have measurable criteria for judging the quality of research, and base analyst compensation on such criteria.
- Have written procedures that provide a minimum acceptable level of scenario testing for computer-based models and include standards for the range of scenarios, model accuracy over time, and a measure of the sensitivity of cash flows to model assumptions and inputs.
- Have a policy for evaluating outside providers of information that addresses the reasonableness and accuracy of the information provided and establishes how often the evaluations should be repeated.
- Adopt a set of standards that provides criteria for evaluating external advisers and states how often a review of external advisers will be performed.

Application of Standard V(A) Diligence and Reasonable Basis

Example 1:

Helen Hawke manages the corporate finance department of Sarkozi Securities, Ltd. The firm is anticipating that the government will soon close a tax loophole that currently allows oil and gas exploration companies to pass on drilling expenses to holders of a certain class of shares. Because market demand for this tax-advantaged class of stock is currently high, Sarkozi convinces several companies to undertake new equity financings at once before the loophole closes. Time is of the essence, but Sarkozi lacks sufficient resources to conduct adequate research on all the prospective issuing companies. Hawke

decides to estimate the IPO prices based on the relative size of each company and to justify the pricing later when her staff has time.

Comment:

Sarkozi should have taken on only the work that it could adequately handle. By categorizing the issuers as to general size, Hawke has bypassed researching all the other relevant aspects that should be considered when pricing new issues and thus has not performed sufficient due diligence. Such an omission can result in investors purchasing shares at prices that have no actual basis. Hawke has violated Standard V(A).

Example 2:

A member in the corporate finance department of a securities firm prices IPO shares without doing adequate research because she wants to get them to market quickly.

Comment:

This is a violation of Standard V(A).

Example 3:

A member screens a database of investment managers and sends a recommendation of five of them to a client. Subsequently, but before the client receives the report, one of the recommended firms loses its head of research and several key portfolio managers. The member does not update her report.

Comment:

This is a violation as the member should have notified the client of the change in key personnel at the management firm.

Example 4:

A member writes a report in which she estimates mortgage rates. After reviewing it, a majority of the investment committee vote to change the report to reflect a different interest rate forecast. Must the member dissociate herself from the report?

Comment:

The same facts may give rise to different opinions and as long as the committee has a reasonable and adequate basis for their (differing) opinion, the member is under no obligation to ask that her name be removed from the report or to disassociate from issuing the report.

Example 5:

A member makes a presentation for an offering his firm is underwriting, using maximum production levels as his estimate in order to justify the price of the shares he is recommending for purchase.

Comment:

Using the maximum possible production without acknowledging that this is not the expected level of production (or without presenting a range of possible outcomes and their relative probabilities) does not provide a reasonable basis for the purchase recommendation and is a violation of the Standard.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Example 6:

A member posts buy recommendations in an internet chat room based on "conventional wisdom" and what the public is currently buying.

Comment:

A recommendation that is not based on independent and diligent research into the subject company is a violation of the Standard.

Example 7:

A member is a principal in a small investment firm that bases its securities recommendations on third-party research that it purchases.

Comment:

This is not a violation as long as the member's firm periodically checks the purchased research to determine that it has met, and still meets, the criteria of objectivity and reasonableness required by the Standard.

Example 8:

A member selects an outside advisor for international equities based solely on the fact that the selected firm has the lowest fees for managing the international equities accounts.

Comment:

This is a violation of Standard V(A). The member must consider performance and service, not just fees, in selecting an outside advisor for client accounts.

Example 9:

A member investigates the management, fees, track record, and investment strategy of a hedge fund and recommends it to a client who purchases it. The member accurately discloses the risks involved with the investment in the hedge fund. Soon afterward, the fund reports terrible losses and suspends operations.

Comment:

The bad outcome does not mean there has necessarily been a violation of Standard V(A). A member who has performed reasonable due diligence and disclosed investment risks adequately has complied with the requirements of Standard V(A), regardless of the subsequent outcome.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

V(B) Communication with Clients and Prospective Clients. Members and Candidates must:

1. Disclose to clients and prospective clients the basic format and general principles of the investment processes used to analyze investments, select securities, and construct portfolios and must promptly disclose any changes that might materially affect those processes.

2. Use reasonable judgment in identifying which factors are important to their investment analyses, recommendations, or actions and include those factors in communications with clients and prospective clients.

3. Distinguish between fact and opinion in the presentation of investment analysis and recommendations.

Guidance

Proper communication with clients is critical to provide quality financial services. Members must distinguish between opinions and facts and always include the basic characteristics of the security being analyzed in a research report.

Members must illustrate to clients and prospects the investment decision-making process utilized.

All means of communication are included here, not just research reports.

In preparing recommendations for structured securities, allocation strategies, or any other nontraditional investment, members should communicate those risk factors specific to such investments. In all cases, members should communicate the potential gains and losses on the investment clearly in terms of total returns.

When using projections from quantitative models and analysis, members may violate the Standard by not explaining the limitations of the model, which provide a context for judging the uncertainty regarding the estimated investment result.

Recommended Procedures for Compliance

Selection of relevant factors in a report can be a judgment call, so be sure to maintain records indicating the nature of the research, and be able to supply additional information if it is requested by the client or other users of the report.

Application of Standard V(B) Communication with Clients and Prospective Clients

Example 1:

Sarah Williamson, director of marketing for Country Technicians, Inc., is convinced that she has found the perfect formula for increasing Country Technician's income and diversifying its product base. Williamson plans to build on Country Technician's reputation as a leading money manager by marketing an exclusive and expensive investment advice letter to high-net-worth individuals. One hitch in the plan is the complexity of Country Technician's investment system—a combination of technical

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

trading rules (based on historical price and volume fluctuations) and portfolio-construction rules designed to minimize risk. To simplify the newsletter, she decides to include only each week's top five buy and sell recommendations and to leave out details of the valuation models and the portfolio-structuring scheme.

Comment:

Williamson's plans for the newsletter violate Standard V(B) because she does not intend to include all the relevant factors behind the investment advice. Williamson need not describe the investment system in detail in order to implement the advice effectively, clients must be informed of Country Technician's basic process and logic. Without understanding the basis for a recommendation, clients cannot possibly understand its limitations or its inherent risks.

Example 2:

Richard Dox is a mining analyst for East Bank Securities. He has just finished his report on Boisy Bay Minerals. Included in his report is his own assessment of the geological extent of mineral reserves likely to be found on the company's land. Dox completed this calculation based on the core samples from the company's latest drilling. According to Dox's calculations, the company has in excess of 500,000 ounces of gold on the property. Dox concludes his research report as follows: "Based on the fact that the company has 500,000 ounces of gold to be mined, I recommend a strong BUY."

Comment:

If Dox issues the report as written, he will violate Standard V(B). His calculation of the total gold reserves for the property is an opinion, not a fact. Opinion must be distinguished from fact in research reports.

Example 3:

May & Associates is an aggressive growth manager that has represented itself since its inception as a specialist at investing in small-capitalization domestic stocks. One of May's selection criteria is a maximum capitalization of $250 million for any given company. After a string of successful years of superior relative performance, May expanded its client base significantly, to the point at which assets under management now exceed $3 billion. For liquidity purposes, May's chief investment officer (CIO) decides to lift the maximum permissible market-cap ceiling to $500 million and change the firm's sales and marketing literature accordingly to inform prospective clients and third-party consultants.

Comment:

Although May's CIO is correct about informing potentially interested parties as to the change in investment process, he must also notify May's existing clients. Among the latter group might be a number of clients who not only retained May as a small-cap manager but also retained mid-cap and large-cap specialists in a multiple-manager approach. Such clients could regard May's change of criteria as a style change that could distort their overall asset allocations.

Example 4:

Rather than lifting the ceiling for its universe from $250 million to $500 million, May & Associates extends its small-cap universe to include a number of non-U.S. companies.

Comment:

Standard V(B) requires that May's CIO advise May's clients of this change because the firm may have been retained by some clients specifically for its prowess at investing in domestic small-cap stocks. Other variations requiring client notification include introducing derivatives to emulate a certain market sector or relaxing various other constraints, such as portfolio beta. In all such cases, members and candidates must disclose changes to all interested parties.

Example 5:

A member sends a report to his investment management firm's clients describing a strategy his firm offers in terms of the high returns it will generate in the event interest rate volatility decreases. The report does not provide details of the strategy because they are deemed proprietary. The report does not consider the possible returns if interest rate volatility actually increases.

Comment:

This is a violation on two counts. The basic nature of the strategy must be disclosed, including the extent to which leverage is used to generate the high returns when volatility falls. Further, the report must include how the strategy will perform if volatility rises, as well as if it falls.

Example 6:

A member's firm changes from its old equity selection model, which is based on price-sales ratios, to a new model based on several factors, including future earnings growth rates, but does not inform clients of this change.

Comment:

This is a violation because members must inform their clients of any significant change in their investment process. Here, the introduction of forecast data on earnings growth can be viewed as a significant change since the old single-variable model was based on reported rather than forecast data.

Example 7:

A member's firm, in response to poor results relative to its stated benchmark, decides to structure portfolios to passively track the benchmark and does not inform clients.

Comment:

This is a significant change in the investment process and must be communicated to clients.

Example 8:

At a firm where individual portfolio managers have been responsible for security selection, a new policy is implemented whereby only stocks on an approved list constructed by the firm's senior managers may be purchased in client accounts. A member who is a portfolio manager does not inform his clients.

Comment:

This is a violation of the Standard because it represents a significant change in the investment process.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Example 9:

A member changes his firm's outside manager of real estate investments and provides information of this change only in the firm's annual report where outside advisers are listed.

Comment:

This is a violation of the Standard. The member should notify clients immediately of such a change in the firm's investment process.

Professor's Note: Remember, the argument that clients "won't care" about a process change can be turned around to "there's no reason not to disclose the change."

V(C) **Record Retention**. Members and Candidates must develop and maintain appropriate records to support their investment analysis, recommendations, actions, and other investment-related communications with clients and prospective clients.

Guidance

Members must maintain research records that support the reasons for the analyst's conclusions and any investment actions taken. Such records are the property of the firm. If no other regulatory standards are in place, CFA Institute recommends at least a 7-year holding period.

A member who changes firms must recreate the analysis documentation supporting her recommendation using publicly available information or information obtained from the company and must not rely on memory or materials created at her previous firm.

Recommended Procedures for Compliance

This record keeping requirement generally is the firm's responsibility.

Application of Standard V(C) Record Retention

Example 1:

One of Nikolas Lindstrom's clients is upset by the negative investment returns in his equity portfolio. The investment policy statement for the client requires that the portfolio manager follow a benchmark-oriented approach. The benchmark for the client included a 35% investment allocation in the technology sector, which the client acknowledged was appropriate. Over the past three years, the portion put into the segment of technology stocks suffered severe losses. The client complains to the investment manager that so much money was allocated to this sector.

Comment:

For Lindstrom, it is important to have appropriate records to show that over the past three years, the percentage of technology stocks in the benchmark index was 35%.

Therefore, the amount of money invested in the technology sector was appropriate according to the investment policy statement. Lindstrom should also have the investment policy statement for the client stating that the benchmark was appropriate for the client's investment objectives. He should also have records indicating that the investment had been explained appropriately to the client and that the investment policy statement was updated on a regular basis.

Example 2:

A member bases his research reports on interviews, his own analysis, and industry reports from third parties on his industry and related industries.

Comment:

The member must keep records of all the information that went into the research on which his reports and recommendations are based.

Example 3:

When a member leaves a firm at which he has developed a complex trading model, he takes documentation of the model assumptions and how they were derived over time with him, since he will use the model at his new firm.

Comment:

Taking these materials without permission from his previous employer is a violation of his duties to his (previous) employer. While he may use knowledge of the model at the new firm, the member must recreate the supporting documents. The originals are the property of the firm where he worked on developing the model.

VI Conflicts of Interest

VI(A) Disclosure of Conflicts. Members and Candidates must make full and fair disclosure of all matters that could reasonably be expected to impair their independence and objectivity or interfere with respective duties to their clients, prospective clients, and employer. Members and Candidates must ensure that such disclosures are prominent, are delivered in plain language, and communicate the relevant information effectively.

Guidance

Members must fully disclose to clients, prospects, and their employers all actual and potential conflicts of interest in order to protect investors and employers. These disclosures must be clearly stated.

Guidance—Disclosure to Clients

The requirement that all potential areas of conflict be disclosed allows clients and prospects to judge motives and potential biases for themselves. Disclosure of broker/dealer market-making activities would be included here. Board service is another area of potential conflict.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

The most common conflict which requires disclosure is actual ownership of stock in companies that the member recommends or that clients hold.

Another common source of conflicts of interest is a member's compensation/bonus structure, which can potentially create incentives to take actions that produce immediate gains for the member with little or no concern for longer-term returns for the client. Such conflicts must be disclosed when the member is acting in an advisory capacity and must be updated in the case of significant change in compensation structure.

Guidance—Disclosure of Conflicts to Employers

Members must give the employer enough information to judge the impact of the conflict. Take reasonable steps to avoid conflicts, and report them promptly if they occur.

Recommended Procedures of Compliance

Any special compensation arrangements, bonus programs, commissions, and incentives should be disclosed.

Application of Standard VI(A) Disclosure of Conflicts

Example 1:

Hunter Weiss is a research analyst with Farmington Company, a broker and investment banking firm. Farmington's merger and acquisition department has represented Vimco, a conglomerate, in all of its acquisitions for 20 years. From time to time, Farmington officers sit on the boards of directors of various Vimco subsidiaries. Weiss is writing a research report on Vimco.

Comment:

Weiss must disclose in his research report Farmington's special relationship with Vimco. Broker/dealer management of and participation in public offerings must be disclosed in research reports. Because the position of underwriter to a company presents a special past and potential future relationship with a company that is the subject of investment advice, it threatens the independence and objectivity of the report and must be disclosed.

Example 2:

Samantha Snead, a portfolio manager for Thomas Investment Counsel, Inc., specializes in managing defined-benefit pension plan accounts, all of which are in the accumulative phase and have long-term investment objectives. A year ago, Snead's employer, in an attempt to motivate and retain key investment professionals, introduced a bonus compensation system that rewards portfolio managers on the basis of quarterly performance relative to their peers and certain benchmark indexes. Snead changes her investment strategy and purchases several high-beta stocks for client portfolios in an attempt to improve short-term performance. These purchases are seemingly contrary to the client investment policy statement. Now, an officer of Griffin Corporation, one of Snead's pension fund clients, asks why Griffin Corporation's portfolio seems to be dominated by high-beta stocks of companies that often appear among the most actively

traded issues. No change in objective or strategy has been recommended by Snead during the year.

Comment:

Snead violated Standard VI(A) by failing to inform her clients of the changes in her compensation arrangement with her employer that created a conflict of interest. Firms may pay employees on the basis of performance, but pressure by Thomas Investment Counsel to achieve short-term performance goals is in basic conflict with the objectives of Snead's accounts.

Example 3:

Bruce Smith covers East European equities for Marlborough investments, an investment management firm with a strong presence in emerging markets. While on a business trip to Russia, Smith learns that investing in Russian equity directly is difficult but that equity-linked notes that replicate the performance of the underlying Russian equity can be purchased from a New York-based investment bank. Believing that his firm would not be interested in such a security, Smith purchases a note linked to a Russian telecommunications company for his own account without informing Marlborough. A month later, Smith decides that the firm should consider investing in Russian equities using equity-linked notes, and he prepares a write-up on the market that concludes with a recommendation to purchase several of the notes. One note recommended is linked to the same Russian telecom company that Smith holds in his personal account.

Comment:

Smith violated Standard VI(A) by failing to disclose his ownership of the note linked to the Russian telecom company. Smith is required by the standard to disclose the investment opportunity to his employer and look to his company's policies on personal trading to determine whether it was proper for him to purchase the note for his own account. By purchasing the note, Smith may or may not have impaired his ability to make an unbiased and objective assessment of the appropriateness of the derivative instrument for his firm, but Smith's failure to disclose the purchase to his employer impaired his employer's ability to render an opinion regarding whether the ownership of a security constituted a conflict of interest that might have affected future recommendations. Once he recommended the notes to his firm, Smith compounded his problems by not disclosing that he owned the notes in his personal account—a clear conflict of interest.

Example 4:

An investment management partnership sells a significant stake to a firm that is publicly traded. The partnership has added the firm's stock to its recommended list and approved its commercial paper for cash management accounts.

Comment:

Members are required to disclose such a change in firm ownership to all clients. Further, any transactions in client accounts involving the securities of the public firm, and any recommendations concerning the public firm's securities, must include a disclosure of the business relation between it and the partnership.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Example 5:

A member provides clients with research about a company's stock, and his wife inherits a significant amount of stock in the company.

Comment:

The member must disclose this potential conflict to his employer and in any subsequent reports or recommendations he authors. His employer may prudently choose to reassign the stock.

Example 6:

A member's investment banking firm receives a significant number of options as partial compensation for bringing a firm public. The member will profit personally from a portion of these options as well.

Comment:

In any research report on the public firm's securities, the member must disclose the fact that these options exist and include their number and the expiration date(s). Since he will profit personally from these, he must also disclose the extent of his participation in these options.

Example 7:

A member accepts an offer from a stock promoter who will provide additional compensation when the member sells Acme stock to his clients. He does not inform his clients or his employer.

Comment:

The member is in violation of the Standard because he must disclose this additional compensation to those clients to whom he recommends the stock and to his employer. Both have a right to determine for themselves the extent to which this additional compensation might affect the member's objectivity.

Example 8:

A member who is a portfolio manager for a small investment management firm serving individuals accepts a job as a trustee of an endowment fund that has over €1.5 billion in assets and does not disclose this to her employer.

Comment:

This is a significant position that may require a substantial portion of the member's time and may involve decisions on security selection and trading. The member is in violation of the Standard by not disclosing this involvement to her employer and by not discussing it with her employer before accepting the position.

Example 9:

A member replaces his firm's external manager, which has had average results, with a friend's firm.

Comment:

Taking such action without disclosing to his firm that the new manager is a personal friend is a violation of the Standards.

VI(B) Priority of Transactions. Investment transactions for clients and employers must have priority over investment transactions in which a Member or Candidate is the beneficial owner.

Guidance

Client transactions take priority over personal transactions and over transactions made on behalf of the member's firm. Personal transactions include situations where the member is a "beneficial owner." Personal transactions may be undertaken only after clients and the member's employer have had an adequate opportunity to act on a recommendation. Note that family member accounts that are client accounts should be treated just like any client account; they should not be disadvantaged.

Information about pending trades should not be acted on for personal gain. The overriding considerations with respect to personal trades are that they do not disadvantage any clients.

Recommended Procedures for Compliance

All firms should have in place basic procedures that address conflicts created by personal investing. The following areas should be included:

- Limited participation in equity IPOs. Members can avoid these conflicts by not participating in IPOs.
- Restrictions on private placements. Strict limits should be placed on employee acquisition of these securities and proper supervisory procedures should be in place. Participation in these investments raises conflict of interest issues, similar to IPOs.
- Establish blackout/restricted periods. Employees involved in investment decision-making should have blackout periods prior to trading for clients—no "front running" (i.e., purchase or sale of securities in advance of anticipated client or employer purchases and sales). The size of the firm and the type of security should help dictate how severe the blackout requirement should be.
- Reporting requirements. Supervisors should establish reporting procedures, including duplicate trade confirmations, disclosure of personal holdings/beneficial ownership positions, and preclearance procedures.
- Disclosure of policies. When requested, members must fully disclose to investors their firm's personal trading policies.

Members should encourage their firms to adopt such procedures if they have not.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Application of Standard VI(B) Priority of Transactions

Example 1:

Erin Toffler, a portfolio manager at Esposito Investments, manages the retirement account established with the firm by her parents. Whenever IPOs become available, she first allocates shares to all her other clients for whom the investment is appropriate; only then does she place any remaining portion in her parents' account, if the issue is appropriate for them. She has adopted this procedure so that no one can accuse her of favoring her parents.

Comment:

Toffler has breached her duty to her parents by treating them differently from her other accounts simply because of the family relationship. As fee-paying clients of Esposito Investments, Toffler's parents are entitled to the same treatment as any other client of the firm. If Toffler has beneficial ownership in the account, however, and Esposito Investments has preclearance and reporting requirements for personal transactions, she may have to preclear the trades and report the transactions to Esposito.

Example 2:

A brokerage's insurance analyst, Denise Wilson, makes a closed-circuit report to her firm's branches around the country. During the broadcast, she includes negative comments about a major company within the industry. The following day, Wilson's report is printed and distributed to the sales force and public customers. The report recommends that both short-term traders and intermediate investors take profits by selling that company's stocks. Several minutes after the broadcast, Ellen Riley, head of the firm's trading department, closes out a long call position in the stock. Shortly thereafter, Riley establishes a sizable "put" position in the stock. Riley claims she took this action to facilitate anticipated sales by institutional clients.

Comment:

Riley expected that both the stock and option markets would respond to the "sell" recommendation, but she did not give customers an opportunity to buy or sell in the options market before the firm itself did. By taking action before the report was disseminated, Riley's firm could have depressed the price of the "calls" and increased the price of the "puts." The firm could have avoided a conflict of interest if it had waited to trade for its own account until its clients had an opportunity to receive and assimilate Wilson's recommendations. As it is, Riley's actions violated Standard VI(B).

Example 3:

A member who is a research analyst does not recommend a stock to his employer because he wants to purchase it quickly for his personal account.

Comment:

He has violated the priority of transactions by withholding this information from his employer and seeking to profit personally at his employer's expense. The member has likely violated his duty to his employer under Standard IV(A) Loyalty as well.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Example 4:

A member who manages a fund gets hot IPO shares for her husband's account from syndicate firms, even when the fund is unable to get shares.

Comment:

The member has violated the Standard by this action. She must act in the interest of the shareholders of the fund and place allocated shares there first. She must also inform her employer of her participation in these offerings through her beneficial interest in her husband's account(s).

Example 5:

A member allows an employee to continue his duties without having signed a required report of his personal trading activity over the last three months. The employee, a CFA candidate, has been purchasing securities for his own account just before firm buy recommendations have been released.

Comment:

The employee has violated the Standard. The member has also violated Standard IV(C) Responsibilities of Supervisors by allowing the employee to continue in his regular duties.

Example 6:

A member reveals a sell rating on some securities in a broadcast to all of her firm's brokers. The changed rating is sent to clients the next day. Shortly after revealing the change to her firm's brokers and prior to dissemination to clients, she buys puts on the stock for her firm's account.

Comment:

The member did not give clients adequate opportunity to act on the change in recommendation before buying the puts for her firm's account.

VI(C) Referral Fees. Members and Candidates must disclose to their employer, clients, and prospective clients, as appropriate, any compensation, consideration, or benefit received by, or paid to, others for the recommendation of products or services.

Guidance

Members must inform employers, clients, and prospects of any benefit received for referrals of customers and clients, allowing them to evaluate the full cost of the service as well as any potential impartiality. All types of consideration must be disclosed.

Recommended Procedures for Compliance

Members should encourage their firms to adopt clear procedures regarding compensation for referrals. Firms that do not prohibit such fees should have clear procedures for approval, and members should provide their employers with updates at least quarterly regarding the nature and value of referral compensation received.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Application of Standard VI(C) Referral Fees

Example 1:

Brady Securities, Inc., a broker/dealer, has established a referral arrangement with Lewis Brothers, Ltd., an investment counseling firm. Under this arrangement, Brady Securities refers all prospective tax-exempt accounts, including pension, profit-sharing, and endowment accounts, to Lewis Brothers. In return, Lewis Brothers makes available to Brady Securities, on a regular basis, the security recommendations and reports of its research staff, which registered representatives of Brady Securities use in serving customers. In addition, Lewis Brothers conducts monthly economic and market reviews for Brady Securities personnel and directs all stock commission business generated by referral account to Brady Securities. Willard White, a partner in Lewis Brothers, calculates that the incremental costs involved in functioning as the research department of Brady Securities amount to $20,000 annually. Referrals from Brady Securities last year resulted in fee income of $200,000, and directing all stock trades through Brady Securities resulted in additional costs to Lewis Brothers' clients of $10,000.

Diane Branch, the chief financial officer of Maxwell, Inc., contacts White and says that she is seeking an investment manager for Maxwell's profit-sharing plan. She adds, "My friend Harold Hill at Brady Securities recommended your firm without qualification, and that's good enough for me. Do we have a deal?" White accepts the new account but does not disclose his firm's referral arrangement with Brady Securities.

Comment:

White violated Standard VI(C) by failing to inform the prospective customer of the referral fee payable in services and commissions for an indefinite period to Brady Securities. Such disclosure could have caused Branch to reassess Hill's recommendation and make a more critical evaluation of Lewis Brothers' services.

Example 2:

James Handley works for the Trust Department of Central Trust Bank. He receives compensation for each referral he makes to Central Trust's brokerage and personal financial management department that results in a sale. He refers several of his clients to the personal financial management department but does not disclose the arrangement within Central trust to his clients.

Comment:

Handley has violated Standard VI(C) by not disclosing the referral arrangement at Central Trust Bank to his clients. The Standard does not distinguish between referral fees paid by a third party for referring clients to the third party and internal compensation arrangements paid within the firm to attract new business to a subsidiary. Members and candidates must disclose all such referral fees. Therefore, Handley would be required to disclose, at the time of referral, any referral fee agreement in place between Central Trust Bank's departments. The disclosure should include the nature and the value of the benefit and should be made in writing.

Example 3:

Yeshao Wen is a portfolio manager for a bank. He receives additional monetary compensation from his employer when he is successful in assisting in the sales process

and generation of assets under management. The assets in question will be invested in proprietary product offerings such as affiliate company mutual funds.

Comment:

Standard VI(C) is meant to address instances where the investment advice provided by a member or candidate appears to be objective and independent but in fact is influenced by an unseen referral arrangement. It is not meant to cover compensation by employers to employees for generating new business when it would be obvious to potential clients that the employees are "referring" potential clients to the services of their employers.

If Wen is selling the bank's investment management services in general, he does not need to disclose to potential clients that he will receive a bonus for finding new clients and acquiring new assets under management for the bank. Potential clients are likely aware that it would be financially beneficial both to the portfolio manager and the manager's firm for the portfolio manager to sell the services of the firm and attract new clients. Therefore, sales efforts attempting to attract new investment management clients need not disclose this fact.

However, in this example, the assets will be managed in "proprietary product offerings" of the manager's company (for example, an in-house mutual fund) and Wen will receive additional compensation for selling firm products. Some sophisticated investors may realize that it would be financially beneficial to the portfolio manager and the manager's firm if the investor buys the product offerings of the firm. Best practice, however, dictates that the portfolio manager must disclose to clients that he is compensated for referring clients to firm products. Such disclosure will meet the purpose of Standard VI(C), which is to allow investors to determine whether there is any partiality on the part of the portfolio manager when giving investment advice.

Example 4:

An investment consultant conducts an independent and objective analysis of investment managers for a pension fund and selects the best one. Subsequently, the selected advisor makes a payment to the consultant.

Comment:

This is a violation of the Standard. The potential for a payment should have been disclosed to the pension fund. There are very likely regulatory or legal considerations with regard to such payment as well.

VII Responsibilities as a CFA Institute Member or CFA Candidate

VII(A) Conduct as Members and Candidates in the CFA Program. Members and Candidates must not engage in any conduct that compromises the reputation or integrity of CFA Institute or the CFA designation or the integrity, validity, or security of the CFA examinations.

Professor's Note: The Standard is intended to cover conduct such as cheating on the CFA exam or otherwise violating rules of CFA Institute or the CFA program. It is not intended to prevent anyone from expressing any opinions or beliefs concerning CFA Institute or the CFA program.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Members must not engage in any activity that undermines the integrity of the CFA charter. This Standard applies to conduct which includes:

- Cheating on the CFA exam or any exam.
- Revealing anything about either broad or specific topics tested, content of exam questions, or formulas required or not required on the exam.
- Not following rules and policies of the CFA program.
- Giving confidential information on the CFA program to Candidates or the public.
- Improperly using the designation to further personal and professional goals.
- Misrepresenting information on the Professional Conduct Statement (PCS) or the CFA Institute Professional Development Program.

Members and candidates are not precluded from expressing their opinions regarding the exam program or CFA Institute but must not reveal confidential information about the CFA program.

Candidates who violate any of the CFA exam policies (e.g., calculator, personal belongings, Candidate Pledge) have violated Standard VII(A).

Members who volunteer in the CFA program may not solicit or reveal information about questions considered for or included on a CFA exam, about the grading process, or about scoring of questions.

Application of Standard VII(A) Conduct as Members and Candidates in the CFA Program

Example 1:

Ashlie Hocking is writing Level II of the CFA examination in London. After completing the exam, she immediately attempts to contact her friend in Sydney, Australia, to tip him off to specific questions on the exam.

Comment:

Hocking has violated Standard VII(A) by attempting to give her friend an unfair advantage, thereby compromising the integrity of the CFA examination process.

Example 2:

Jose Ramirez is an investment-relations consultant for several small companies that are seeking greater exposure to investors. He is also the program chair for the CFA Institute society in the city where he works. To the exclusion of other companies, Ramirez only schedules companies that are his clients to make presentations to the society.

Comment:

Ramirez, by using his volunteer position at CFA Institute to benefit himself and his clients, compromises the reputation and integrity of CFA Institute and, thus, violates Standard VII(A).

Example 3:

A member who is an exam grader discusses with friends the guideline answer for and relative candidate performance on a specific question he graded on the CFA exam.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Comment:

He has violated his Grader's Agreement and also the Standard by compromising the integrity of the CFA exam.

Example 4:

A candidate does not stop writing when asked to by the proctor at the CFA exam.

Comment:

By taking additional time compared to other candidates, this candidate has violated the Standard, compromising the integrity of the exam process.

Example 5:

A member who is a volunteer on a CFA Institute committee tells her clients that what she learns through her committee work will allow her to better serve their interests.

Comment:

She has violated the Standard by using her CFA committee position to benefit herself personally and to any extent her "inside" knowledge has benefited her clients.

Example 6:

A candidate tells another candidate, "I'm sure glad that Bayes' formula was not on the Level I test this year."

Comment:

This is a violation of Standard VII(A). Candidates are not permitted to reveal any formulas required or not required on a CFA exam.

Example 7:

A candidate tells his beloved CFA instructor, "I really appreciate the emphasis that you put on Financial Reporting and Analysis since that was a huge part of the test this year."

Comment:

This is a violation of Standard VII(A). Candidates are not permitted to disclose the relative weighting of topics on the exam.

Example 8:

A candidate tells his mother, "There was an item set on the CFA exam on the Residual Income Model that just kicked my butt."

Comment:

This is a violation of Standard VII(A). Candidates are not permitted to disclose specific topics tested on the exam.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

VII(B) Reference to CFA Institute, the CFA designation, and the CFA Program. When referring to CFA Institute, CFA Institute membership, the CFA designation, or candidacy in the CFA Program, Members and Candidates must not misrepresent or exaggerate the meaning or implications of membership in CFA Institute, holding the CFA designation, or candidacy in the CFA Program.

Guidance

Members must not make promotional promises or guarantees tied to the CFA designation. Do not:

- Over-promise individual competence.
- Over-promise investment results in the future (i.e., higher performance, less risk, etc.).

Guidance—CFA Institute Membership

Members must satisfy these requirements to maintain membership:

- Sign PCS annually.
- Pay CFA Institute membership dues annually.

If they fail to do this, they are no longer active members.

Guidance—Using the CFA Designation

Do not misrepresent or exaggerate the meaning of the designation.

Guidance—Referencing Candidacy in the CFA Program

There is no partial designation. It is acceptable to state that a Candidate successfully completed the program in three years, if in fact they did, but claiming superior ability because of this is not permitted.

Guidance—Proper Usage of the CFA Marks

The Chartered Financial Analyst and CFA marks must always be used either after a charterholder's name or as adjectives, but not as nouns, in written and oral communications.

Recommended Procedures for Compliance

Make sure that members' and candidates' firms are aware of the proper references to a member's CFA designation or candidacy, as this is a common error.

Application of Standard VII(B) Reference to CFA Institute, the CFA Designation, and the CFA Program

Example 1:

An advertisement for AZ Investment Advisors states that all the firm's principals are CFA charterholders and all passed the three examinations on their first attempt. The advertisement prominently links this fact to the notion that AZ's mutual funds have achieved superior performance.

Comment:

AZ may state that all principals passed the three examinations on the first try as long as this statement is true and is not linked to performance or does not imply superior ability. Implying that (1) CFA charterholders achieve better investment results and (2) those who pass the exams on the first try may be more successful than those who do not violates Standard VII(B).

Example 2:

Five years after receiving his CFA charter, Louis Vasseur resigns his position as an investment analyst and spends the next two years traveling abroad. Because he is not actively engaged in the investment profession, he does not file a completed Professional Conduct Statement with CFA Institute and does not pay his CFA Institute membership dues. At the conclusion of his travels, Vasseur becomes a self-employed analyst, accepting assignments as an independent contractor. Without reinstating his CFA Institute membership by filing his Professional Conduct Statement and paying his dues, he prints business cards that display "CFA" after his name.

Comment:

Vasseur has violated Standard VII(B) because Vasseur's right to use the CFA designation was suspended when he failed to file his Professional Conduct Statement and stopped paying dues. Therefore, he no longer is able to state or imply that he is an active CFA charterholder. When Vasseur files his Professional Conduct Statement and resumes paying CFA Institute dues to activate his membership, he will be eligible to use the CFA designation upon satisfactory completion of CFA Institute reinstatement procedures.

Example 3:

A member still uses the initials CFA after his name even though his membership has been suspended for not paying dues and for not submitting a personal conduct statement as required.

Comment:

This is a violation of the Standard.

Example 4:

A member puts the CFA logo on his letterhead, his business cards, and the company letterhead.

Comment:

By putting the logo on the company letterhead (rather than the letterhead or business card of an individual who is a CFA charterholder), the member has violated the Standard.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

KEY CONCEPTS

LOS 1.a, b

Members of CFA Institute [including Chartered Financial Analyst® (CFA®) charterholders] and candidates for the CFA designation ("Members and Candidates") must:[4]

- Act with integrity, competence, diligence, respect, and in an ethical manner with the public, clients, prospective clients, employers, employees, colleagues in the investment profession, and other participants in the global capital markets.
- Place the integrity of the investment profession and the interests of clients above their own personal interests.
- Use reasonable care and exercise independent professional judgment when conducting investment analysis, making investment recommendations, taking investment actions, and engaging in other professional activities.
- Practice and encourage others to practice in a professional and ethical manner that will reflect credit on themselves and the profession.
- Promote the integrity of, and uphold the rules governing, capital markets.
- Maintain and improve their professional competence and strive to maintain and improve the competence of other investment professionals.

The Standards of Professional Conduct are organized into seven standards:

I. Professionalism
II. Integrity of Capital Markets
III. Duties to Clients
IV. Duties to Employers
V. Investment Analysis, Recommendations, and Action
VI. Conflicts of Interest
VII. Responsibilities as a CFA Institute Member or CFA Candidate

4. Copyright 2010, CFA Institute. Reproduced and republished from "The Code of Ethics," from *Standards of Practice Handbook, 10th ed.*, 2010, with permission from CFA Institute. All rights reserved.

Concept Checkers

1. Jamie Hutchins, CFA, is a portfolio manager for CNV Investments Inc. Over the years, Hutchins has made several poor personal investments that have led to financial distress and personal bankruptcy. Hutchins feels that her business partner, John Smith, is mostly to blame for her situation since "he did not invest enough money in her investment opportunities and caused them to fail." Hutchins reports Smith to CFA Institute claiming Smith violated the Code and Standards relating to misconduct. Which of the following statements is *most likely* correct?
   A. By reporting Smith to CFA Institute, Hutchins has misused the Professional Conduct Program, thus violating the Code and Standards, but her poor investing and bankruptcy have not violated the Code and Standards.
   B. Hutchins's bankruptcy reflects poorly on her professional reputation and thus violates the Code and Standards, but her reporting of Smith does not.
   C. Hutchins's poor investing and bankruptcy, as well as her reporting of Smith, are both violations of the Standards.

2. While working on a new underwriting project, Jean Brayman, CFA, has just received information from her client that leads her to believe that the firm's financial statements in the registration statement overstate the firm's financial position. Brayman should:
   A. report her finding to the appropriate governmental regulatory authority.
   B. immediately dissociate herself from the underwriting in writing to the client.
   C. seek advice from her firm's compliance department as to the appropriate action to take.

3. Karen Jones, CFA, is an outside director for Valley Manufacturing. At a director's meeting, Jones finds out that Valley Corp. has made several contributions to foreign politicians that she suspects were illegal. Jones checks with her firm's legal counsel and determines that the contributions were indeed illegal. At the next board meeting, Jones urges the board to disclose the contributions. The board, however, votes not to make a disclosure. Jones' *most appropriate* action would be to:
   A. protest the board's actions in writing to the executive officer of Valley.
   B. resign from the board and seek legal counsel as to her legal disclosure requirements.
   C. inform her supervisor of her discovery and cease attending meetings until the matter is resolved.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

4. Carrie Carlson, CFA, is a citizen of Emerging Market Country (EMC) with no securities laws governing the use of material nonpublic information. Carlson has clients in Emerging Market Country and in Neighboring Country (NC), which has a few poorly defined laws governing the use of material nonpublic information. If Carlson has material nonpublic information on a publicly traded security, she:
   A. can inform her clients in EMC, but not NC.
   B. can use the information for her NC clients to the extent permitted by the laws of NC.
   C. cannot use the information to trade in either EMC or NC.

5. In order to dispel the myth that emerging market stocks are illiquid investments, Green Brothers, a "long only" emerging market fund manager, has two of its subsidiaries simultaneously buy and sell emerging market stocks. In its marketing literature, Green Brothers cites the overall emerging market volume as evidence of the market's liquidity. As a result of its actions, more investors participate in the emerging markets fund. Which of the following is *most likely* correct? Green Brothers:
   A. did not violate the Code and Standards.
   B. violated the Code and Standards by manipulating the volume in the emerging securities markets.
   C. would not have violated the Code and Standards if the subsidiaries only traded stocks not included in the fund.

6. Over the past two days, Lorraine Quigley, CFA, manager of a hedge fund, has been purchasing large quantities of Craeger Industrial Products' common stock while at the same time shorting put options on the same stock. Quigley did not notify her clients of the trades although they are aware of the fund's general strategy to generate returns. Which of the following statements is *most likely* correct? Quigley:
   A. did not violate the Code and Standards.
   B. violated the Code and Standards by manipulating the prices of publicly traded securities.
   C. violated the Code and Standards by failing to disclose the transactions to clients before they occurred.

7. Which of the following statements is *least likely* correct? A member or candidate:
   A. can participate or assist in a violation simply by having knowledge of the violation and not taking action to stop it.
   B. is held responsible for participating in illegal acts in instances where violation of the law is evident to those who know or should know the law.
   C. must report evidence of legal violations to the appropriate governmental or regulatory organization.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

8. Paula Osgood, CFA, is promoting her new money management firm by issuing an advertisement. Which of these items is *least likely* a violation of the professional designation Standard? The advertisement states that:
   A. she passed three exams covering ethics, financial statement analysis, asset valuation, and portfolio management, and that she is a member of the local society. Osgood signs the advertisement followed by the letters CFA in oversized and bold strike letters.
   B. she passed three 6-hour exams on her first attempts over the minimum period of one and a half years. Knowledge tested included ethics, financial statement analysis, asset valuation, and portfolio management. In addition, she is a member of the local society.
   C. because of her extensive CFA training, she will be able to achieve better investment results than non-CFA managers since she is one of very few professionals to have been awarded this designation.

9. Melvin Byrne, CFA, manages a portfolio for James Martin, a very wealthy client. Martin's portfolio is well diversified with a slight tilt toward capital appreciation. Martin requires very little income from the portfolio. Recently, Martin's brother, Cliff, has become a client of Byrne. Byrne proceeds to invest Cliff's portfolio in a similar manner to James's portfolio based on the fact that both brothers have a similar lifestyle and are only two years apart in age. Which of the following statements is *most likely* correct? Byrne:
   A. violated the Code and Standards by knowingly creating a conflict of interest between James's and Cliff's portfolios.
   B. violated the Code and Standards by failing to determine Cliff's objectives and constraints prior to investing his portfolio.
   C. did not violate the Code and Standards.

10. In which of the following has the analyst *least likely* committed plagiarism?
   A. Julie Long takes performance projections and charts from a company she is researching, combines them with her own analysis, and publishes them under her own name.
   B. Bill Cooper finds a statistical table in the Federal Reserve Bulletin that supports the work he has done in his industry analysis and has his secretary include the table as part of his report without citing the source.
   C. Jan Niedfeldt gets a call from one of her fellow analysts stating that the analyst's research shows that XYZ Company is a buy. Niedfeldt calls up her major clients and tells them that her research shows XYZ is a buy.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

11. Jessica Ellis, CFA, manages an international stock fund for a group of wealthy investors with similar investment objectives. According to the investment policy statement, the fund is to pursue an aggressive growth strategy while maintaining sufficient international diversification and is prohibited from using leverage. Ellis has just received a request from the majority of the group of investors to purchase for the fund a large position in German bonds which they believe to be significantly undervalued. Which of the following actions should Ellis take to avoid violating the Code and Standards?
   A. Purchase the bonds since it was requested by the clients to whom Ellis has a fiduciary duty.
   B. Inform the investors that she is unable to make the purchase since it is inconsistent with the international stock portfolio's investment mandate.
   C. Purchase the bonds only after receiving a written consent statement signed by the majority of the investors stating that they are aware that the investment is not suitable for the portfolio.

12. In a marketing brochure, DNR Asset Managers presents the performance of several composite portfolios managed according to similar investment strategies. In constructing composites, the firm excludes individual portfolios with less than $1 million in assets, excludes terminated portfolios, and includes simulated results. DNR includes the following disclosure in the brochure: "Past performance is no guarantee of future results. Composites exclude portfolios under $1 million in assets and include results from simulated model portfolios with similar strategies." DNR's brochure:
   A. does not violate the Code and Standards.
   B. violates the Code and Standards by failing to include terminated portfolios in the performance presentation.
   C. violates the Code and Standards by excluding portfolios under $1 million from the composite performance presentation.

13. Connie Fletcher, CFA, works for a small money management firm that specializes in pension accounts. Recently, a friend asked her to act as an unpaid volunteer manager for the city's street sweep pension fund. As part of the position, the city would grant Fletcher a free parking space in front of her downtown office. Fletcher is considering the offer. Before she accepts, she should *most appropriately*:
   A. do nothing since this is a volunteer position.
   B. inform her current clients in writing and discuss the offer with her employer.
   C. disclose the details of the volunteer position to her employer and obtain written permission from her employer.

14. Which of the following statements about an investment supervisor's responsibilities is *least likely* correct? A supervisor:
   A. should bring an inadequate compliance system to the attention of management and recommend corrective action.
   B. is responsible for instructing those to whom he has delegated authority about methods to detect and prevent violations of the law and standards.
   C. need only report employee violations of the Code and Standards to upper management and provide a written warning to the employee to cease such activities.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

15. Robert Blair, CFA, Director of Research, has had an ongoing battle with management about the adequacy of the firm's compliance system. Recently, it has come to Blair's attention that the firm's compliance procedures are inadequate in that they are not being monitored and not carefully followed. What should Blair *most appropriately* do?
    A. Resign from the firm unless the compliance system is strengthened and followed.
    B. Send his superior a memo outlining the problem.
    C. Decline in writing to continue to accept supervisory responsibility until reasonable compliance procedures are adopted.

16. Ahmed Jamal, CFA, head of research for Valley Brokers, decided it was time to change his recommendation on D&R Company from buy to sell. He orally announced his decision during the Monday staff meeting and said his written report would be finished and disseminated to Valley's customers by the middle of next week. As a result of this announcement, Doris Smith, one of Jamal's subordinates, immediately sold her personal shares in D&R, and Martin Temple told his largest institutional customers of the change the following day. Which Standards have *most likely* been violated?
    A. Jamal violated Standard IV(C) Responsibilities of Supervisors; Smith violated Standard II(A) Material Nonpublic Information; and Temple violated Standard VI(B) Priority of Transactions.
    B. Jamal violated Standard IV(C) Responsibilities of Supervisors; Smith violated Standard VI(B) Priority of Transactions; and Temple violated Standard III(B) Fair Dealing.
    C. Smith violated Standard VI(B) Priority of Transactions, and Temple violated Standard III(B) Fair Dealing.

17. Jack Schleifer, CFA, is an analyst for Brown Investment Managers (BIM). Schleifer has recently accepted an invitation to visit the facilities of ChemCo, a producer of chemical compounds used in a variety of industries. ChemCo offers to pay for Schleifer's accommodations in a penthouse suite at a luxury hotel and allow Schleifer to use the firm's private jet to travel to its three facilities located in New York, Hong Kong, and London. In addition, ChemCo offers two tickets to a formal high-society dinner in New York and a small desk clock with the ChemCo logo. Schleifer declines to use ChemCo's corporate jet or to allow the firm to pay for his accommodations but accepts the clock and the tickets to the dinner (which he discloses to his employer) since he will be able to market his firm's mutual funds to other guests at the dinner. Has Schleifer violated any CFA Institute Standards of Professional Conduct?
    A. Yes.
    B. No, since he is using the gifts accepted to benefit his employer's interests.
    C. No, since the gifts he accepted were fully disclosed in writing to his employer.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

18. Based on the Standards of Professional Conduct, a financial analyst is *least likely* required to:
    A. report to his employer the receipt of gifts and additional compensation from clients.
    B. disclose the value of consideration to be received for referrals.
    C. pay for commercial transportation and lodging while visiting a company's headquarters.

19. Beth Anderson, CFA, is a portfolio manager for several wealthy clients including Reuben Carlyle. Anderson manages Carlyle's personal portfolio of stock and bond investments. Carlyle recently told Anderson that he is under investigation by the IRS for tax evasion related to his business, Carlyle Concrete (CC). After learning about the investigation, Anderson proceeds to inform a friend at a local investment bank so that they may withdraw their proposal to take CC public. Which of the following is *most likely* correct? Anderson:
    A. violated the Code and Standards by failing to maintain the confidentiality of her client's information.
    B. violated the Code and Standards by failing to detect and report the tax evasion to the proper authorities.
    C. did not violate the Code and Standards since the information she conveyed pertained to illegal activities on the part of her client.

20. Gail Stefano, CFA, an analyst for a U.S. brokerage firm that serves U.S. investors, researches public utilities in South American emerging markets. Stefano makes the following statement in a recent report: "Based on the fact that the South American utilities sector has seen rapid growth in new service orders, we expect that most companies in the sector will be able to convert the revenue increases into significant profits. We also believe the trend will continue for the next three to five years." The report goes on to describe the major risks of investing in this market, in particular the political and exchange rate instability associated with South American countries. Stefano's report:
    A. has not violated the Code and Standards.
    B. violated the Code and Standards by failing to properly distinguish factual information from opinions.
    C. violated the Code and Standards by failing to properly identify details related to the operations of South American utilities.

21. Which of the following is *most likely* a violation of Standard III(B) Fair Dealing?
    A. A firm makes investment recommendations and also manages a mutual fund. The firm routinely begins trading for the fund's account ten minutes before announcing recommendation changes to client accounts.
    B. After releasing a general recommendation to all clients, an analyst calls the firm's largest institutional clients to discuss the recommendation in more detail.
    C. A portfolio manager allocates IPO shares to all client accounts, including her brother's fee-based retirement account.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

22. Which of the following is *least likely* a violation of Standard VI(B) Priority of Transactions? An analyst:
   A. trades for her own account before her firm announces a change in a recommendation.
   B. trades for her son's trust account, which is not a firm account, on the day after her firm changes its buy/sell recommendation.
   C. takes a position for her own outside account in a stock one week after she published a buy recommendation for the stock.

23. Jamie Olson, CFA, has just started work as a trainee with Neuvo Management Corp., a small regional money management firm started six months ago. She has been told to make a few cold calls and round up some new clients. In which of the following statements has Olson *least likely* violated the Standards of Practice?
   A. "Sure, we can perform all the financial and investment services you need. We've consistently outperformed the market indexes and will continue to do so under our current management."
   B. "Sure, we can assist you with all the financial and investment services you need. If we don't provide the service in-house, we have arrangements with other full-service firms that I would be happy to tell you about."
   C. "Our firm has a long history of successful performance for our clients. While we can't guarantee future results, we do believe we will continue to benefit our clients."

24. Mary Herbst, CFA, a pension fund manager at GBH Investments, is reviewing some of FreeTime, Inc.'s pension fund activities over the past years. Which of the following actions related to FreeTime, Inc.'s pension fund is *most likely* to be a breach of her fiduciary duties?
   A. Paying higher-than-average brokerage fees to obtain research materials used in the management of the pension fund.
   B. Trading with selected brokers so that the brokers will recommend GBH's managers to potential clients.
   C. Selectively choosing brokers for the quality of research provided for managing FreeTime's pension.

25. Eugene Nieder, CFA, has just accepted a new job as a quantitative analyst for Paschal Investments, LLP. Nieder developed a complex model while working for his previous employer and plans to recreate the model for Paschal. Nieder did not make copies of the model or any supporting documents since his employer refused to grant him permission to do so. Nieder will recreate the model from memory. Which of the following statements is *most likely* correct?
   A. Nieder can recreate the model without violating the Code and Standards as long as he also generates supporting documentation.
   B. Nieder can recreate the model without violating the Code and Standards without documentation if the model is modified from its original form.
   C. Nieder cannot recreate the model without violating the Code and Standards because it is the property of his former employer.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

26. As part of an agreement with Baker Brokerage, Hern Investment Company, a money manager for individual clients, provides monthly emerging market overviews in exchange for prospective client referrals and European equity research from Baker. Clients and prospects of Hern are not made aware of the agreement, but clients unanimously rave about the high quality of the research provided by Baker. As a result of the research, many clients with non-discretionary accounts have earned substantial returns on their portfolios. Managers at Hern have also used the research to earn outstanding returns for the firm's discretionary accounts. Which of the following statements is *most likely* correct? Hern:
A. has not violated the Code and Standards.
B. has violated the Code and Standards by using third-party research in discretionary accounts.
C. has violated the Code and Standards by failing to disclose the referral agreement with Baker.

27. Frist Investments, Inc. has just hired Michael Pulin to manage institutional portfolios, most of which are pension related. Pulin has just taken the Level III CFA exam and is awaiting his results. Pulin has more than 15 years of investment management experience with individual clients but has never managed an institutional portfolio. Pulin joined the CFA Institute as an affiliate member two years ago and is in good standing with the organization. Which of the following statements would be *most appropriate* for Frist to use in advertising Pulin as a new member of the firm? Pulin:
A. has many years of investment experience which, along with his participation in the CFA program, will allow him to deliver superior investment performance relative to other managers.
B. is a CFA Level III and passed the first two exams on the first attempt. He is an affiliate member of the CFA Institute. We expect him to become a regular member if he passes the Level III examination.
C. is a Level III CFA candidate and has many years of excellent performance in the investment management industry. Pulin is an affiliate member of the CFA Institute and will be eligible to become a CFA charterholder and regular member if he passes the Level III CFA Exam.

28. Before joining Mitsui Ltd. as an analyst covering the electrical equipment manufacturing industry, Pam Servais, CFA, worked for Internet Security Systems (ISS) where she had access to nonpublic information. While at ISS, Servais learned of a severe environmental problem at two firms handling boron-based components. It is common knowledge that seven firms in the industry worldwide use the same boron handling technique. The two firms for which Servais has knowledge announced the problem last week and had immediate stock price declines of 11% and 17%, respectively. The other five firms have not made an announcement. Servais issues a report recommending Mitsui clients sell shares of the remaining five firms. Servais's issuance of this recommendation:
A. is not a violation of CFA Institute Standards.
B. is a violation of CFA Institute Standards because it fails to distinguish between opinion and fact.
C. constitutes a violation of the Standard pertaining to the use of material nonpublic information.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

29. Zanuatu, an island nation, does not have any regulations precluding the use of nonpublic information. Alfredo Romero has a friend and fellow CFA charterholder there with whom he has shared nonpublic information regarding firms outside of his industry. The information concerns several firms' internal earnings and cash flow projections. The friend may:
A. trade on the information under the laws of Zanuatu, which govern her behavior.
B. not trade on the information under CFA Institute Standards, which govern her behavior.
C. trade on the information under CFA Institute Standards since the firms concerned are outside of Romero's industry.

30. Samantha Donovan, CFA, is an exam proctor for the Level II CFA exam. The day before the exam is to be administered, Donovan faxes a copy of one of the questions to two friends, James Smythe and Lynn Yeats, who are Level II candidates in the CFA program. Donovan, Smythe, and Yeats had planned the distribution of an exam question months in advance. Smythe used the fax to prepare for the exam. Yeats, however, had second thoughts and threw the fax away without looking at its contents. Which of the following statements is *most likely* correct?
A. Smythe violated the Code and Standards, but Yeats did not.
B. Donovan violated the Code and Standards, but Smythe did not.
C. Donovan and Yeats both violated the Code and Standards.

31. Julia Green, CFA, has friends from her previous employer who have suggested that she receive information from them via an Internet chat room. In this way, she receives news about an exciting new product being developed by a firm in Singapore that has the potential to double the firm's revenue. The firm has not revealed any information regarding the product to the public. According to the Code and Standards, this information is:
A. both material and nonpublic and Green may not trade on it in Singapore, but may trade on it elsewhere.
B. both material and nonpublic and Green may not trade on it in any jurisdiction.
C. public by virtue of its release in the chat room and Green may trade on it.

32. Sally Albright, CFA, works full-time for Frank & Company, an investment management firm, as a fixed-income security analyst. Albright has been asked by a business contact at KDG Enterprises to accept some analytical work from KDG on a consulting basis. The work would entail investigating potential distressed debt securities in the small-cap market. Albright should *most appropriately*:
A. accept the work as long as she obtains consent to all the terms of the engagement from Frank & Company.
B. not accept the work as it violates the Code and Standards by creating a conflict of interest.
C. accept the work as long as she obtains written consent from KDG and does it on her own time.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

33. Beth Bixby, CFA, uses a quantitative model to actively manage a portfolio of stocks with an objective of earning a greater return than the market. Over the last three years, the returns to a portfolio constructed using the model have been greater than the returns to the S&P index by between 2% and 4%. In promotional materials, Bixby states: "Through our complex quantitative approach, we select a portfolio that has similar risk to the S&P 500 Index but will receive a return between 2% and 4% greater than the index." This statement is:
A. permissible since prior returns to the firm's model provide a reasonable and adequate basis for the promotional material.
B. permissible since the statement describes the basic characteristics of the fund's risk and return objectives.
C. not permissible since Bixby is misrepresenting the investment performance her firm can reasonably expect to achieve.

34. Josef Karloff, CFA, acts as liaison between Pinnacle Financial (an investment management firm) and Summit Inc. (an investment banking boutique specializing in penny stocks). When Summit underwrites an IPO, Karloff routinely has Pinnacle issue vague statements implying that the firm has cash flows, financial resources, and growth prospects that are better than is the case in reality. This action is a violation of the section of the Standards concerning:
A. fair dealing.
B. nonpublic information.
C. misconduct.

35. Shane Matthews, CFA, is a principal at Carlson Brothers, a leading regional investment bank specializing in initial public offerings of small to mid-sized biotech firms. Just before many of the IPOs are offered to the general public, Matthews arranges for 10% of the shares of the firm going public to be distributed to select Carlson clients. This action is *most likely* a violation of the Standard concerning:
A. additional compensation.
B. disclosure of conflicts of interest.
C. fair dealing.

36. Will Hunter, CFA, is a portfolio manager at NV Asset Managers in Baltimore, which specializes in managing labor union pension fund accounts. A friend of Hunter's who is an investment banker asks Hunter to purchase shares in their new IPOs in order to support the price long enough for insiders to liquidate their holdings. Hunter realizes that the price of the shares will almost certainly fall dramatically after his buying support ceases. NV management "strongly suggests" that Hunter "not rock the boat" and honor the investment banker's request since NV has had a long-standing relationship with the investment bank. Hunter agrees to make the purchases. Hunter has:
A. not violated the Code and Standards.
B. violated the Code and Standards by attempting to distort prices.
C. violated the Code and Standards by failing to place orders in the appropriate transaction priority.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

37. Neiman Investment Co. receives brokerage business from Pick Asset Management in exchange for referring prospective clients to Pick. Pick advises clients—in writing, at the time the relationship is established—of the nature of its arrangement with Neiman. With regard to this practice, Pick has:
A. complied with the Code and Standards.
B. violated the Code and Standards by failing to preserve the confidentiality of the agreement with Neiman.
C. violated the Code and Standards by inappropriately negotiating an agreement that creates a conflict of interest.

38. Fred Johnson, CFA, a financial analyst and avid windsurfer, has begun an investment survey of the water sports leisure industry. His brother sells windsurfing gear in Tampa and tells him that Swordfish9 is the "hottest windsurfing rig on the market and will be highly profitable for Swordfish Enterprises." Johnson had never heard of Swordfish9 previously, but after testing the board himself became very excited about the Swordfish9 and issued an investment recommendation of "buy" on Swordfish Enterprises. As a result of issuing the recommendation, Johnson has:
A. not violated the Code and Standards.
B. violated the Code and Standards by failing to establish a reasonable and adequate basis.
C. violated the Code and Standards by failing to consider the suitability of the investment for his clients.

39. Daniel Lyons, CFA, is an analyst for a French firm that sells investment research to European companies. Lyons's aunt owns 30,000 shares of French National Bank (FNB). She informs Lyons that as a part of her estate planning she has created a trust in his name into which she has placed 2,000 shares of FNB. The trust is structured so that Lyons will not receive control of the assets for two years, at which time his aunt will also gift her current home to Lyons and move into a retirement community. Lyons is due to update his research coverage of FNB next week. Lyons should *most appropriately*:
A. advise his superiors that he is no longer able to issue research recommendations on FNB.
B. update the report without notification since the shares are held in trust and are beyond his direct control.
C. disclose the situation to his employer and, if then asked to prepare a report, also disclose the situation in the report.

40. Which of the following is *least likely* one of the recommendations included in the Standards of Practice Handbook with regard to Performance Presentation?
A. Include terminated accounts in past performance history.
B. Present the performance of a representative account to show how a composite has performed.
C. Consider the level of financial knowledge of the audience to whom the performance is presented.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

41. Which of the following actions is a *required*, rather than *recommended*, action under the Standard regarding diligence and a reasonable basis for a firm's research recommendations?
A. Have a policy requiring that research reports and recommendations have a basis that can be substantiated as reasonable and adequate.
B. Compensate analysts based on measurable criteria to assess the quality of their research.
C. Review the assumptions used and evaluate the objectivity of externally generated research reports.

42. After writing the CFA Level I exam, Cynthia White goes to Internet discussion site *CFA Haven* to express her frustration. White writes, "CFA Institute is not doing a competent job of evaluating candidates, because none of the questions in the June exam touched on Alternative Investments." White *most likely* violated the Standard related to conduct as a candidate in the CFA program by:
A. publicly disputing CFA Institute policies and procedures.
B. disclosing subject matter covered or not covered on a CFA exam.
C. participating in an internet forum that is directed toward CFA Program participants.

43. After passing all three levels of the CFA Exams on her first attempts and being awarded her CFA Charter, Paula Osgood is promoting her new money management firm by issuing an advertisement. Which of these statements would *most likely* violate the Standard related to use of the CFA designation?
A. "To earn the right to use the CFA designation, Paula passed three exams covering ethics, financial statement analysis, asset valuation, and portfolio management."
B. "Paula passed three 6-hour exams on her first attempts and is a member of her local investment analyst society."
C. "Because of her extensive training, Paula will be able to achieve better investment results than managers who have not been awarded the CFA designation."

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

ANSWERS – CONCEPT CHECKERS

1. A Hutchins's personal bankruptcy may reflect poorly on her professional reputation if it resulted from fraudulent or deceitful business activities. There is no indication of this, however, and the bankruptcy is thus not a violation. Smith has not violated the Code and Standards by refusing to invest with Hutchins in what turned out to be bad investment opportunities. By reporting Smith to CFA Institute for a violation, Hutchins has misused the Professional Conduct Program to settle a dispute unrelated to professional ethics and has thus violated Standard I(D), Misconduct.

2. C According to Standard I(A), informing her supervisor or firm's compliance department is appropriate. Dissociating herself would be premature. She should report her suspicions to a supervisory person and attempt to remedy the situation.

3. B According to Standard I(A), since she has taken steps to stop the illegal activities and the board has ignored her, Jones must dissociate from the board and seek legal advice as to what other actions would be appropriate in this instance. She may need to inform legal or regulatory authorities of the illegal activities.

4. C According to Standard II(A), members and candidates are under no circumstances allowed to use material nonpublic information to trade securities. Carlson must abide by the Code and Standards, which is the most strict regulation in the scenario.

5. B The intent of Green Brothers' actions is to manipulate market liquidity in order to attract investment to its own funds. The increased trading activity was not based on market fundamentals or an actual trading strategy to benefit investors. It was merely an attempt to mislead market participants in order to increase assets under Green Brothers' management. The action violates Standard II(B), Market Manipulation.

6. A Quigley's trades are most likely an attempt to take advantage of an arbitrage opportunity that exists between Craeger's common stock and its put options. She is not manipulating the prices of securities in an attempt to mislead market participants, which would violate Standard II(B), Market Manipulation. She is pursuing a legitimate investment strategy. Participants in her hedge fund are aware of the fund's investment strategy, and thus Quigley did not violate the Code and Standards by not disclosing this specific set of trades in advance of trading.

7. C According to Standard I(A), in some instances, reporting a legal violation to governmental or regulatory officials may be appropriate, but this isn't always necessary, and it isn't required under Standard I(A).

8. B According to Standard VII(B), any explanation of the designation in print form should be a concise description of the requirements or of CFA Institute. The other statements contain violations of Standard VII(B), in particular the presentation of the letters CFA. Also, she may not imply superior performance as a result of being a CFA charterholder.

9. B Standard III(C), Suitability, requires that before taking investment action, members and candidates must make a reasonable inquiry into a client's or prospect's investment objectives and constraints as well as their prior investment experience. Byrne cannot assume that because the brothers have similar lifestyles and are close in age that they should have similarly managed portfolios. Byrne should have interviewed Cliff directly before investing his portfolio.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

10. B According to Standard I(C), Misrepresentation, factual data from a recognized statistical reporting service need not be cited.

11. B According to Standard III(C), Ellis must consider the suitability of each new investment (as well as the current holdings) in light of the portfolio mandate. In this given case, the client is the fund. Ellis must only make investments that are in accordance with the fund's investment policy statement. Therefore, Ellis should not purchase the unsuitable bonds as requested by her clients.

12. B By failing to include terminated portfolios in the performance presentation, the performance will have an inherent upward bias, making results appear better than they truly are. By excluding the terminated portfolios, DNR misleads its potential investors and thus violates Standard III(D), Performance Presentation, which prohibits any "practice that would lead to misrepresentation of a member or candidate's performance record."

13. C According to Standard IV(A), Loyalty, members and candidates are expected to act for the benefit of the employer and not deprive the employer of their skills. Fletcher is performing work similar to the services that her employer provides for a fee. Although the position is a volunteer position, Fletcher will receive compensation in the form of a free parking space. In light of the circumstances, Fletcher must disclose the details of the position and get written permission before accepting the volunteer position.

14. C According to Standard IV(C), Responsibilities of Supervisors, reporting the violation and warning the employee to cease activities that violate the law or the Code and Standards are not enough. The supervisor must take steps (such as limiting employee activity or increasing the level of employee monitoring) to prevent further violations while he conducts an investigation.

15. C According to Standard IV(C), because he is aware that the firm's compliance procedures are not being monitored and followed and because he has repeatedly tried to get company management to correct the situation, Blair should decline supervisory responsibility until adequate procedures to detect and prevent violations of laws, regulations, and the Code and Standards are adopted and followed. If he does not do so, he will be in violation of the Code and Standards.

16. B Jamal failed to properly supervise employees and provide adequate procedures and policies to prevent employee violations. Smith should not have traded her own account ahead of client accounts. Temple should not have disclosed the recommendation change selectively but should have informed his clients fairly and objectively. No inside information was used in the question.

17. A Standard I(B), Independence and Objectivity, requires that members and candidates reject offers of gifts or compensation that could compromise their independence or objectivity. Schleifer has appropriately rejected the offer of the hotel accommodations and the use of ChemCo's jet. He may accept the desk clock since this gift is of nominal value and is unlikely to compromise his independence and objectivity. Schleifer cannot accept the tickets to the dinner, however. Since it is a formal high-society dinner, the tickets are most likely expensive or difficult to come by. Even though he has disclosed the gift to his employer and he plans to use the dinner as a marketing opportunity for his firm, the gift itself may influence Schliefer's future research in favor of ChemCo. Allowing such potential influence is a violation of Standard I(B).

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

18. C Standard I(B) recommends, but does not require, that an analyst have his firm pay for ordinary travel expenses to visit companies that are the subject of research. The other choices are required by the Standards.

19. A Anderson must maintain the confidentiality of client information according to Standard III(E). Confidentiality may be broken in instances involving illegal activities on the part of the client, but the client's information may only be relayed to proper authorities. Anderson did not have the right to inform the investment bank of her client's investigation.

20. A Historical growth can be cited as a fact since it actually happened. Stefano states that her firm expects further growth and profitability, which is an opinion. She does not claim that these are facts. In addition, Stefano identifies relevant factors and highlights in particular the most significant risks of investing in South American utilities. She has fully complied with Standard V(B), Communication with Clients and Prospective Clients. Under the Standard, it is not necessary to include every detail about a potential investment in a report. Members and candidates are expected to use their judgment and identify the most important factors to include.

21. A Choice B is not necessarily a violation. Firms can offer different levels of service to clients as long as this is disclosed to all clients. The largest institutional clients would likely be paying higher fees for a greater level of service. Also note that the analyst's brother's account in choice C should be treated the same as any other client account.

22. C Members and candidates must give clients adequate opportunity to act on new or changed recommendations before taking investment action in their own non-firm accounts or other non-client accounts in which they have a beneficial interest. One week is likely an acceptable waiting period.

23. B In the other choices, Olson violates Standard I(C) by misrepresentating the services that she or her firm are capable of performing, her qualifications, her academic or professional credentials, or the firm's credentials. The firm is small and most likely cannot perform all investment services the client may require. The firm cannot guarantee future outperformance of the market indexes. The firm doesn't have a long history (only six months).

24. B Standard III(A), Loyalty, Prudence, and Care. Herbst is acting as a fiduciary for the pension plan beneficiaries. Choosing brokers based on quality of services provided is reasonable. She may pay higher-than-average brokerage fees so long as doing so benefits the pension beneficiaries, not other clients. Trading with selected brokers solely to gain referrals is not likely to be in the pension beneficiaries' best interest since it does not take into account other important factors for selecting brokerage firms.

25. A Nieder must not take models or documents from his previous employer without explicit permission to do so, or he would violate Standard IV(A), Loyalty. He is allowed, however, to reproduce the model from memory but must recreate the supporting documentation to maintain compliance with Standard V(C), Record Retention.

26. C According to Standard VI(C), Referral Fees, Hern must disclose the referral arrangement between itself and Baker so that potential clients can judge the true cost of Hern's services and assess whether there is any partiality inherent in the recommendation of services.

27. C Standard VII(B) governs acceptable methods of referencing the CFA Institute, CFA designation, and CFA Program. Candidates may reference their candidacy if they

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

are enrolled for or waiting for the results of, a CFA exam. Pulin may also reference his membership status with the CFA Institute as well as his remaining eligibility requirements to become a CFA charterholder.

28. A There is no indication that Servais has inside information pertaining to the situation at the five firms in question—only the two firms that have already gone public with the information. It is common knowledge that the other five firms follow the same boron handing procedures. She is, therefore, in compliance with Standard II(A) concerning the use of material nonpublic information in the issuance of the investment recommendation.

29. B Even though the laws of Zanuatu would not preclude trading on the information, as a CFA Charterholder the friend is bound by the CFA Institute Code and Standards. Standard II(A) prohibits the use of material nonpublic information, and the friend may not trade the stocks about which she has such information under any circumstances.

30. C In this situation, Donovan, Smythe, and Yeats all violated Standard VII(A), Conduct as Members and Candidates in the CFA Program. The Standard prohibits conduct that compromises the integrity, validity, or security of the CFA exams. Donovan clearly breached the exam security. Smythe and Yeats both compromised the integrity of the exams by planning to use the actual exam question to gain an advantage over other candidates. Even though Yeats did not ultimately use the information to study for the exam, she participated in a scheme to cheat on the CFA exam.

31. B The release of such information to a limited circle via an Internet chat room does not cause the information to be public. The information is also clearly material. Therefore, Green is not allowed to trade on the information under Standard II(A).

32. A Albright may accept work for which she receives outside compensation and which may compete with her employer only if she obtains her employer's consent. Under Standard IV(A), Loyalty, such consent must be obtained from her employer prior to beginning the work.

33. C There can be no assurance that a premium of 2% to 4% will consistently be obtained. Bixby is in violation of Standard I(C), Misrepresentation, since she has made an implicit guarantee of the fund's expected performance.

34. C Since the statements are vague, we have no direct evidence that a violation of securities law has occurred. However, under Standard I(D), Misconduct, members and candidates are prohibited from engaging in activities involving deceit. Karloff's action is a clear attempt to mislead the investing public regarding the value of Summit IPOs.

35. C Standard III(B), Fair Dealing, requires that members not selectively disadvantage clients, specifically in the case of IPOs. Disclosure of an inequitable allocation method does not relieve the member of his obligation to fair dealing.

36. B NV management is asking Hunter to violate Standard II(B), Market Manipulation, which prohibits taking actions that are designed to distort prices or artificially increase trading volume. The intent of Hunter's actions is to mislead market participants and allow corporate insiders to take advantage of the artificially high prices.

37. A There is no violation of the CFA Institute Standards regarding this matter. The referral arrangement is fully disclosed to clients before they agree to do business with Pick. Therefore, clients can fully assess the effect of the agreement on the referral and how the agreement may affect their accounts before hiring Pick as their asset manager.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

38. B Johnson has apparently let his recreational passion cloud his judgment. This is not to say that Swordfish Enterprises is not or will not be an excellent investment. However, if he had never heard of the firm previously, issuing an investment recommendation without conducting a thorough financial investigation indicates a failure to exercise diligence and also indicates that he lacks a reasonable and adequate basis for his recommendation. He is in violation of Standard V(A).

39. C Even though the shares are held in trust, this could still be construed as a conflict of interest. Lyons is obligated under Standard VI(A), Disclosure of Conflicts, to inform his employer of the potential conflict. If he is then authorized to issue investment recommendations on the security in question, the existence of a potential conflict must be disclosed in the report.

40. B The recommended procedure in Standard III(D), Performance Presentation, is to present the performance of a composite as a weighted average of the performance of similar portfolios rather than using a single representative account.

41. C It is required under Standard V(A), Diligence and Reasonable Basis, that third-party research assumptions be reviewed and both the independence and objectivity of the research and recommendations be evaluated. The other choices are recommended policies and procedures under the Standard.

42. B Standard VII(A) Conduct as Members and Candidates in the CFA Program prohibits candidates from revealing which portions of the Candidate Body of Knowledge were or were not covered on an exam. Members and candidates are free to disagree with the policies, procedures, or positions taken by the CFA Institute. The Standard does not prohibit participating in CFA Program-related Internet blogs, forums, or social networks.

43. C Standard VII(B) Reference to CFA Institute, the CFA Designation, and the CFA Program prohibits members and candidates from implying superior performance as a result of being a CFA charterholder. Concise factual descriptions of the requirements to obtain the CFA Charter are acceptable. Osgood's statement that she passed the exams on her first attempts is acceptable because it states a fact.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

The following is a review of the Ethical and Professional Standards principles designed to address the learning outcome statements set forth by CFA Institute. This topic is also covered in:

CFA Institute Soft Dollar Standards

Study Session 1

Exam Focus

"Soft dollars" (or "client brokerage") refers to investment research, products and services, and cash credits given to the investment manager by brokers in return for client business. The soft dollar credit is the client's asset because he pays the commission. Fiduciaries owe their clients two basic duties: to act in the clients' best interest and to disclose conflicts of interest. The cardinal rule is that soft dollars are an asset of the client and may not be used for any purpose that does not benefit that client. The Soft Dollar Standards are for firms (not individuals) and are voluntary, but firms that claim compliance must meet all of the requirements.

LOS 3.a: Define soft-dollar arrangements, and state the general principles of the Soft Dollar Standards.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 175

Soft dollar arrangement refers to the research and other benefits provided to the client or the client's investment manager by the broker for directing the trade to the broker.

Some Definitions

- *Soft dollars* refer to commissions generated on both agency and principal trades.
- An *agency trade* is a transaction that involves the payment of a commission.
- A *principal trade* is a transaction that involves a discount or a spread, as the broker owns the security being sold.
- *Soft dollar practices* involve the use of client brokerage by an investment manager to obtain certain products and services to aid the manager in the investment decision-making process.
- *Brokerage* refers to the amount given to a broker as payment for execution services.
- *Research* includes both *proprietary* (generated by the broker) and *third-party* research (purchased by the broker). Research must directly assist the investment manager in the investment decision-making process and not in the general management of the firm itself. Research that can be used for both the investment management process and management is called *mixed use* research.
- *Client-directed brokerage* is an arrangement under which the client tells the manager to execute trades under its account with a specific broker. In exchange, the client receives a benefit in addition to the execution services.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

General Principles of the Soft Dollar Standards

The two key principles of the Soft Dollar Standards are:

1. Brokerage is the property of the client.
2. Investment managers have a duty to obtain best execution, minimize transactions costs, and use client brokerage to benefit clients.

CFA Institute Soft Dollar Standards are intended to ensure:

- Complete disclosure of the investment manager's use of soft dollars and client brokerage.
- Consistent presentation of data so all parties can clearly understand brokerage practices.
- Uniform disclosure and record keeping so the client clearly understands how the investment manager is using client brokerage.
- Consistently high ethical industry standards.

The investment manager should consider that:

- The manager is a fiduciary and as such must disclose all details relating to benefits received through a client's brokerage.
- Third-party and proprietary research are to be treated similarly when examining soft dollar arrangements because the research received is paid for with client brokerage.
- Any research purchased with client brokerage must directly assist the investment manager in the investment process and not in the overall management of the firm.
- If there is ever any question as to whether the research assists in the investment process, it should be paid for with investment manager assets.

LOS 3.b: Evaluate company soft-dollar practices and policies.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 181

I. General

Required:

- Soft dollar practices must benefit the client and must place the clients' interests above the investment manager's interests.
- Allocation of client brokerage must not be based on the amount of client referrals the investment manager receives from a broker.
- Regarding mutual funds, the investment manager's client is the fund. The fund's board should set policies regarding broker selection.

II. Relationships With Clients

Required:

- Disclose to the client that the manager may participate in soft dollar arrangements involving the client's account prior to participating in such arrangements.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Recommended:

- It is permissible to use client brokerage from agency trades to obtain research which may not directly benefit the client. Over time, however, the client should receive a benefit from the research.
- As long as no fiduciary regulations apply, it is permissible to use client brokerage obtained from principal trades to benefit other client accounts, as long as this is disclosed to the client and prior consent is received.

III. Selection of Brokers

Proper broker selection is a key area where the investment manager can add value for the client. Failure to obtain best execution will hurt performance.

Required:

- Consider trade execution capabilities when selecting brokers.

Recommended:

- When evaluating best execution, consider the broker's financial responsibility, responsiveness, brokerage rate or spread involved, and range of services provided.

IV. Evaluation of Research

Required:

To be able to use client brokerage to pay for research, these criteria must be followed:

- Research must meet the definition. Research is defined as services and products provided by a broker whose primary use directly assists the investment manager in the investment decision-making process, and not in the management of the firm.
- Research must benefit the client.
- The basis for the determination must be documented.
- In the case of principal trades not subject to other fiduciary regulations, the research may benefit other client accounts, as long as disclosure is made to the client and prior permission is received.
- If the criteria regarding client brokerage associated with principal trades is not met, the investment manager must pay for the research.
- In the case of mixed use research, make a reasonable allocation of the cost of the research based on its expected usage. Only portions that are used by the investment manager in the investment decision-making process can be paid with client brokerage. Mixed use research allocation must be reevaluated annually.

V. Client-Directed Brokerage

Brokerage is an asset of the client, so the practice of client-directed brokerage does not violate the investment manager's duty.

Required:

- Do not use brokerage from another client to pay for products or services purchased under any client-directed brokerage agreement.

Recommended:

- The investment manager should disclose the duty to seek best execution.
- Disclose to the client that the arrangement may adversely affect the manager's ability to obtain best execution and receive adequate research for the client.
- The investment managers should structure the arrangements so that they do not require the commitment of a certain portion of client brokerage to a single broker. The arrangement should ensure that commissions are negotiated and that there is an emphasis on best execution.

VI. Disclosure

Required:

- Investment managers must disclose in plain language their soft dollar policies. Principal trades must be addressed.
- Investment managers must disclose the types of research received through proprietary or third-party research, the extent of its use, and whether an affiliated broker is involved.
- To claim compliance with Soft Dollar Standards, the client must receive a statement that soft dollar practices conform to these standards, and the statement must be provided at least annually.
- Investment managers must disclose to clients, prominently and in writing, that more information concerning soft dollar arrangements is available on request.
- Additional information provided upon request may include a description of what the firm obtained through its soft dollar arrangements, the brokers who provided services, and total commissions generated for the client's account.

Recommended:

When requested by the client:

- Provide a description of the product or service obtained through client brokerage generated by the client's account.
- Provide the total amount of brokerage paid from all accounts over which the investment manager has discretion.

VII. Record Keeping

Required:

The investment manager must maintain records that:

- Meet legal and regulatory requirements.
- Are needed to supply timely information to clients consistent with the disclosure requirements.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

- Document any arrangements that obligate the investment manager to generate a specific amount of brokerage.
- Document arrangements with clients regarding soft dollar or client-directed brokerage.
- Document any broker arrangements.
- Document the basis for allocations when using client brokerage for mixed use services and products.
- Show how services and products obtained via soft dollars assist the investment manager in the investment decision-making process.
- Show compliance with the CFA Institute Soft Dollar Standards and identify the personnel responsible.
- Include copies of client disclosures and authorizations.

LOS 3.c: Determine whether a product or service qualifies as "permissible research" that can be purchased with client brokerage.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 187

CFA Institute Soft Dollar Standards set forth a 3-level analysis to assist the investment manager in the determination of whether a product or service is permissible research that can be purchased with client brokerage.

Level I—Define the Product/Service: Define it in detail, including multiple components. *Answer the question: What is paid for with soft dollars?*

Level II—Determine Usage: Determine the primary use of the product or service. *For example, does the Bloomberg service received directly assist in the investment decision-making process, or is it there just to provide an "overall benefit to the firm"?*

Level III—Mixed Use Analysis: This step must be completed only if the product or service is classified as "research" based on the Level I and Level II analysis above. This Level III analysis is the investment manager's allocation of the portion of the product or service which directly assists in the investment decision-making process. *For example, if the Bloomberg service is used 50% of the time to "determine market and industry trends as part of the investment manager's investment decision-making process," then half of the expense can be paid from client brokerage.*

KEY CONCEPTS

LOS 3.a

Soft Dollars, including both agency (payment of an explicit commission) and principal trades (discount or a spread), involve the use of client brokerage by an investment manager to obtain certain products and services to aid the manager in the investment decision-making process.

The investment manager should consider that:

- The manager is a fiduciary and as such must disclose all details relating to benefits received through a client's brokerage.
- Third-party and proprietary research are to be treated similarly when examining soft dollar arrangements because the research received is paid for with client brokerage.
- Any research purchased with client brokerage must directly assist the investment manager in the investment process and not in the overall management of the firm.
- If there is ever any question as to whether the research assists in the investment process, it should be paid for with investment manager assets.

LOS 3.b

Client-directed brokerage is permissible provided that the manager does not use brokerage from another client to pay for products or services purchased under any client-directed brokerage agreement.

Disclosure requirements address clarity, discussion of principal trades, types/sources of research, annual updates, and additional information on request.

Record-keeping requirements address the following:

- Legal/regulatory items, timeliness, and broker arrangements.
- Obligations to generate a specific amount of brokerage.
- Mixed use services/products and client-specific disclosures/authorizations/ arrangements (including soft dollar or client-directed brokerage).
- Connection among services/products and the investment process.
- Record of compliance with the CFA Institute Soft Dollar Standards and the personnel responsible.

LOS 3.c

CFA Institute Soft Dollar Standards set forth a 3-level analysis to assist the investment manager in the determination of whether a product or service is "research."

- Level I—Define the Product/Service: Define it in detail, including multiple components. For example, a computer workstation may be classified as a qualifying product, but the electricity to run the equipment would not.
- Level II—Determine (Primary) Usage of the Product or Service: For example, does the Bloomberg service received directly assist in the investment decision-making process, or is it there just to provide an "overall benefit to the firm"?
- Level III—Mixed Use Analysis: This step is only completed if the product or service is classified as "research" based on the Level I and Level II analysis above. This is the investment manager's allocation of the portion of the product or service which directly assists in the investment decision-making process. For example, if the Bloomberg service is used 50% of the time to "determine market and industry trends as part of the investment manager's investment decision-making process," then half of the expense can be paid from client brokerage.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Concept Checkers

1. In regards to CFA Institute Soft Dollar Standards, broker selection is a key area of the investment manager's ability to add value to client portfolios. Which of the following is a requirement in selecting and evaluating brokers? The investment manager must consider:
   A. the broker's financial responsibility.
   B. if the broker is capable of providing best execution.
   C. the range of services provided or offered.

2. CFA Institute Soft Dollar Standards focus heavily on whether a product or service constitutes "research" that can be paid for with soft dollars (client brokerage) and whether that same product or service provides lawful and proper assistance to the investment manager in carrying out his investment decision-making responsibilities. Which of the following statements regarding permissible or allowable "research" is *most accurate*?
   A. The product or service should directly assist the investment manager in his investment decision-making process and in the management of the investment firm.
   B. Determining what is permissible "research" is subject to specific rules.
   C. CFA Institute recommends performing a three level analysis to assist the investment manager in deciding whether a product or service is "research."

3. Which of these disclosures is recommended but not required under CFA Institute Soft Dollar Standards?
   A. More information concerning the firm's soft dollar standards is available upon request.
   B. The total amount of brokerage paid from all accounts over which the investment manager has discretion.
   C. A statement provided annually to the client that soft dollar practices of the firm conform to CFA Institute Soft Dollar Standards.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

4. Western Investment, Inc., manages investment accounts for individual investors and employee benefit plans subject to ERISA. In addition, the firm manages an institutional hedge fund and a money market fund registered with the SEC as an investment company. Western has claimed compliance with the CFA Institute Soft Dollar Standards. The firm executes trades with a number of broker-dealers, who provide various products and services for the firm's use in exchange for client brokerage.

   Among the products and services provided by one of the broker-dealers is:
   - Office equipment, including desks, photocopiers, and fax machines.
   - A subscription to the Bloomberg service, which is used only to provide clients visiting the office with access to security prices and other financial information.

   Is Western in compliance with the Soft Dollar Standards based on its treatment of the office equipment and Bloomberg service?
   A. Both are permitted.
   B. One is permitted, and the other is not permitted.
   C. Neither is permitted.

5. Soft dollar practices most precisely refers to:
   A. commissions generated on agency trades.
   B. firms which are in compliance with the CFA Institute's Soft Dollar Standards.
   C. a manager's use of client brokerage to obtain certain products and services to aid the manager in the investment decision-making process.

6. An investment firm which is currently in compliance with the CFA Institute's Soft Dollar Standards performs an analysis to determine whether recent services provided by a new broker can be purchased with client brokerage. Which of the following is the firm *least likely* to do as part of this analysis?
   A. Create detailed definitions of the multiple components of the service.
   B. Determine the service use by research/non-research.
   C. Disclose the types of research received through proprietary or third-party research.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Answers – Concept Checkers

1. **B** The other choices are all recommendations but not requirements. Best execution is the most critical consideration.

2. **C** Choice A is incorrect because aid in management of the overall firm is not permissible. Choice B is incorrect because determining what is permissible research is not subject to specific and identifiable rules.

3. **B** It is not required under the Soft Dollar Standards to disclose the amount of brokerage paid from all accounts. The other disclosures are required.

4. **C** The office equipment does not satisfy the Soft Dollar Standards definition of research because it does not aid directly in the investment decision-making process. The Bloomberg service also does not satisfy the Soft Dollar Standards because of the way the firm uses the services: it is provided as a service to clients and does not directly assist the investment manager in the investment decision-making process.

5. **C** Soft dollar practices refer to a manager's use of client brokerage to obtain certain products and services to aid the manager in the investment decision-making process. Soft dollars refer to commissions generated on agency trades and principal trades. There is no official term to describe firms which are in compliance with the CFA Institute's Soft Dollar Standards.

6. **C** The CFA Institute's 3-level analysis guides the determination of whether a product or service can be purchased with client brokerage. The three levels are:
   - Define the Product/Service.
   - Determine (Primary) Usage.
   - Mixed Use Analysis.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

The following is a review of the Ethical and Professional Standards principles designed to address the learning outcome statements set forth by CFA Institute. This topic is also covered in:

CFA Institute Research Objectivity Standards

Study Session 1

Exam Focus

The objectives of CFA Institute's Research Objectivity Standards are to provide specific, measurable standards for managing and disclosing conflicts of interest that may interfere with an analyst's ability to conduct independent research and make objective recommendations.

These standards are intended to be a universal guide for all investment firms by providing ethical standards and practices regarding full and fair disclosure of any conflicts or potential conflicts relating to the firm's research. The goal is objectivity and independence. The Research Objectivity Standards are voluntary standards that firms may choose to adopt.

LOS 4.a: Explain the objectives of the Research Objectivity Standards.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 201

When designing policies and procedures for a firm, strive to achieve these objectives while implementing the CFA Institute Research Objectivity Standards:

A. Prepare research; make recommendations; take investment actions; and develop policies, procedures, and disclosures that put client interests before employees' and the firm's interests.

B. Facilitate full, fair, meaningful, and specific disclosures to clients and prospects of possible and actual conflicts of interest of the firm and its employees.

C. Promote the use of effective policies and procedures that minimize possible conflicts that may adversely affect independence and objectivity of research.

D. Support self-regulation by adhering to specific, measurable standards to promote objective and independent research.

E. Provide a work environment conducive to ethical behavior and adherence to the *Code and Standards*.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

LOS 4.b: Evaluate company policies and practices related to research objectivity, and distinguish between changes required and changes recommended for compliance with the Research Objectivity Standards.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 213

Important Definitions

Covered employee. A firm employee who:

- Conducts research, writes research reports, and/or makes investment recommendations.
- Takes investment action on the client's behalf or is involved in the decision-making process.
- May benefit, either personally or professionally, from her ability to influence research reports or investment recommendations.

Immediate family. Anyone who lives with (i.e., has the same principal residence as) the analyst or manager.

Investment manager. Any employee who conducts investment research and/or takes investment action for client accounts or the firm's accounts, *whether or not the person has the title of "investment manager."*

Public appearance. Any forum in which the analyst or manager makes investment recommendations or offers opinions, including seminars, public speaking engagements, interactive electronic forums, and any kind of media interview.

Research analyst. Any employee who is primarily responsible for any part of the process of developing a research report, *whether or not the person has the title of "research analyst."*

Subject company. Company whose securities are covered by a research report or recommendation.

Requirements and Recommended Compliance Procedures

1.0 Research Objectivity Policy

Requirements:

The firm must have:

- A formal written independence and objectivity of research policy that it distributes to clients, prospective clients, and employees.
- Supervisory procedures in place to make sure employees comply with the policy.
- A senior officer who attests annually to clients and prospective clients that the firm has complied with the policy.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Recommended Compliance Procedures:

- Identify and describe covered employees—those conducting and writing research and making recommendations, including anyone who would benefit from his ability to influence the recommendations.
- Specify whether covered employees are subject to a code of ethics and standards of professional conduct. Fully disclose any conflicts of interest.
- Any policy should clearly identify the factors on which research analysts' compensation is based.
- Policy should also include terms regarding how research reports may be purchased by clients.

2.0 Public Appearances

Requirements:

Covered employees who make public appearances to discuss research or investment recommendations must disclose any personal and firm conflicts of interest.

Recommended Compliance Procedures:

- Be sure that the audience can make informed judgments and that they consider the investment in the context of their entire portfolio.
- Covered employees making public appearances should always be prepared to disclose all conflicts.
- Firms should require covered employees to disclose all investment banking relationships or whether the analyst has participated in marketing activities for the subject company.
- All supporting research reports should be provided at a reasonable cost. (Note: The Standards don't define "reasonable.")

3.0 Reasonable and Adequate Basis

Requirements:

Research reports and investment recommendations must have a reasonable and adequate basis. Either a single employee or a committee must be charged with reviewing and approving all research reports and investment recommendations.

Recommended Compliance Procedures:

- Firms must provide guidance on what constitutes reasonable and adequate basis for a specific recommendation.
- Offer to provide supporting data to clients, and disclose the current market price of the security.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

4.0 Investment Banking

Requirements:

Firms with investment banking operations must have in place policies and procedures that:

- Separate research analysts from the investment banking department.
- Make sure analysts don't report to, and are not supervised by, investment banking personnel.
- Prevent the investment banking department from reviewing, revising, or approving research reports and investment recommendations.

Recommended Compliance Procedures:

- Prior to publication, no part of the report that might indicate the analyst's recommendation should be shared with the investment banking department.
- Investment banking/corporate finance personnel may review reports only to verify factual information or to identify possible conflicts of interest.
- Firms should have quiet periods for IPOs and secondary offerings of sufficient length to ensure that research reports and recommendations are not based on inside information obtained by the analyst through investment banking/corporate finance sources.
- It is recommended that analysts not be allowed to participate in marketing "road shows."

5.0 Research Analyst Compensation

Requirements:

Compensation for research analysts should be directly related to the quality of the research and recommendations provided by the analyst and not directly linked to investment banking or corporate finance activities.

Recommended Compliance Procedures:

- Compensation systems should be based on measurable criteria consistently applied to all research analysts.
- Ideally there should be no link between analyst compensation and investment banking and corporate finance activities, but firms should disclose to what extent analyst compensation depends upon investment banking revenues.

6.0 Relationships With Subject Companies

Requirements:

Analysts must not allow the subject company, prior to publication, to see any part of the research report that might signal the analyst's recommendation or rating, or make any promises concerning a specific recommendation or rating.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Recommended Compliance Procedures:

- Firms should have policies and procedures governing analysts' relationships with subject companies, specifically relating to material gifts, company-sponsored trips, and so on.
- There should be efforts made to check facts contained in the research report before publication.
- The compliance and legal departments should receive a report draft before it is shared with the subject company. Any subsequent changes should be carefully documented.

7.0 Personal Investments and Trading

Requirements:

The firm must institute policies and procedures that:

- Address the personal trading of covered employees.
- Ensure covered employees do not share information with anyone who could use that information to trade ahead (i.e., front running) of client trades.
- Ensure covered employees and immediate family members can't trade ahead of client trades.
- Prohibit covered employees and immediate family members from trading contrary to the firm's recommendations, except under cases of extreme financial hardship.
- Prohibit covered employees and immediate family members from buying or receiving shares of subject companies or companies in the industry the employee covers prior to an IPO.

Recommended Compliance Procedures:

- Always place interests of clients ahead of personal and firm interests.
- Obtain approval from the compliance and legal departments in advance of trading on any securities of subject companies in the industries assigned to the analyst.
- Firms should have procedures in place to prevent employees from trading ahead of investing client trades. Restricted periods should be in place at least 30 calendar days before and 5 calendar days after recommendations are made via research reports.
- It is permissible to allow analysts to sell contrary to their recommendation in the case of extreme financial hardship.
- Firms should require covered employees to provide the compliance and legal departments with a complete list of personal holdings, including securities in which they have a beneficial interest.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

8.0 Timeliness of Research Reports and Recommendations

Requirements:

Regularly issue research reports on subject companies on a timely basis.

Recommended Compliance Procedures:

- Firms should require regular updates to research and recommendations. Quarterly updates are preferred.
- If coverage of a company is discontinued, the analyst should issue a "final" research report.

9.0 Compliance and Enforcement

Requirements:

Firms must enforce their policies and compliance procedures, assess disciplinary sanctions on employees who violate the policies, monitor the effectiveness of the compliance procedures, and maintain records of any internal audits of the policies.

Recommended Compliance Procedures:

- Firms should distribute to clients a list of activities which are violations and include disciplinary sanctions for such violations.

10.0 Disclosure

Requirements:

The firm must disclose conflicts of interests related to covered employees or the firm as a whole.

Recommended Compliance Procedures:

- Disclosures should be complete, prominent, and easy to understand.
- Investment banking/corporate finance relationships should be disclosed.
- All conflicts of interest must be disclosed, including whether the firm makes a market in the subject company's security, whether it has managed a recent IPO or secondary offering, and whether any ownership position or covered employee's family is affiliated in any way with the subject company. Any material gifts from the subject company should also be disclosed.
- Disclose any statistical or quantitative basis for recommendations and ratings.
- Disclose valuation methods used to determine specific price targets and include any risk factors.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

11.0 Rating System

Requirements:

The firm must have a rating system that investors find useful for investment decisions and provides investors with information they can use to determine the suitability of specific investments for their own portfolios.

Recommended Compliance Procedures:

- Firms should avoid 1-dimensional rating systems because they do not give investors enough information to make informed decisions.
- Rating systems should include the recommendation and rating categories, time horizon categories, and risk categories.
- Absolute (buy, hold, sell, etc.) or relative (market outperform, underperform, etc.) recommendation categories are permitted.
- A complete description of the firm's rating system should be provided to clients upon request.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Key Concepts

LOS 4.a

When designing policies and procedures for a firm, strive to achieve these objectives while implementing the CFA Institute Research Objectivity Standards:

- Prepare research; make recommendations; take investment actions; and develop policies, procedures, and disclosures that put client interests before employees' and the firm's interests.
- Facilitate full, fair, meaningful, and specific disclosures to clients and prospects of possible and actual conflicts of interest of the firm and its employees.
- Promote the use of effective policies and procedures that minimize possible conflicts that may adversely affect independence and objectivity of research.
- Support self-regulation by adhering to specific, measurable standards to promote objective and independent research.
- Provide a work environment conducive to ethical behavior and adherence to the Code and Standards.

LOS 4.b

The Research Objectivity Standards contain requirements and recommended compliance procedures concerning:

1. Research Objectivity Policy
2. Public Appearances
3. Reasonable and Adequate Basis
4. Investment Banking
5. Research Analyst Compensation
6. Relationships With Subject Companies
7. Personal Investments and Trading
8. Timeliness of Research Reports and Recommendations
9. Compliance and Enforcement
10. Disclosure
11. Rating System

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Concept Checkers

1. Which of the following is *least likely* an objective for proper implementation of the Research Objectivity Standards?
   A. Prepare research; make recommendations; take investment actions; and develop policies, procedures, and disclosures that place client interests before employees' and firm's interests.
   B. Support the appropriate regulatory agency regulation by adhering to specific, measurable standards to promote objective and independent research.
   C. Facilitate full and meaningful disclosures to clients and prospects of possible and actual conflicts of interest of the firm and its employees.

2. When presenting research and recommendations in a public forum, which of the following would be *least likely* to comply with the Research Objectivity Standards?
   A. Firms should require employees to disclose any investment banking relationships or whether the analyst has participated in marketing activities for the subject firm.
   B. Be sure that the audience can make informed judgments, and provide any supporting research at no cost.
   C. Be sure that investors consider the investment in the context of their entire portfolio.

Use the following information to answer Questions 3 and 4.

Warren Sun, an analyst with Myers and Bradley Partners (MBP), has updated his research report on ROS, Inc., changing his recommendation from buy to hold. Prior to disseminating the report, Sun sends the report to his firm's compliance department and, subsequently, to ROS and his firm's investment banking department and requests that they verify the facts presented in the report. ROS management provides corrections to some of the factual financial data in the report. Sun documents these changes, gets the approval of his compliance department, and makes the corrections before releasing the report for publication.

3. Has Sun violated the required provisions of the CFA Institute Research Objectivity Standards?
   A. No.
   B. Yes, because Sun should not have sent non-factual parts of the report to ROS.
   C. Yes, because Sun should not have sent any part of the report to the subject company.

4. Has Sun violated the recommended provisions of the CFA Institute Research Objectivity Standards?
   A. No.
   B. Yes, because the changes in the report should be approved by the compliance department.
   C. Yes, because Sun should not have shared the entire research report with his firm's investment banking department.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Answers – Concept Checkers

1. **B** Self-regulation is an objective, as opposed to regulation by regulatory agencies. Remember that CFA Institute is a self-regulatory organization.

2. **B** Any supporting research should be provided at a reasonable cost. The rest of the statements are correct.

3. **B** The Research Objectivity Standards prohibit Sun from sending the entire research report to ROS. He is permitted to send the factual part of the report to ROS for verification.

4. **C** Sun has not complied with the recommendation not to share with MBP's investment banking department any part of his report which may indicate his proposed rating for the security. Sun has complied with the recommendation to provide his firm's compliance department with a copy of the report prior to dissemination. Sun has also complied with the recommendation to carefully document his changes.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

The following is a review of the Ethical and Professional Standards principles designed to address the learning outcome statements set forth by CFA Institute. This topic is also covered in:

The Glenarm Company

Study Session 2

Exam Focus

The Glenarm case introduces you to the obligations CFA Institute members and CFA® charterholders and candidates have to their employers. This ethics case will give you a sense of the types of scenarios you are likely to encounter on the Level II exam. The particulars of this case are not important in terms of test questions. However, understanding how to analyze a case and having the ability to recommend procedures to bring an illustrative firm into compliance are crucial to your success on the ethics portion of the exam.

LOS 5.a: Evaluate the practices and policies presented.

LOS 5.b: Explain the appropriate action to take in response to conduct that violates the CFA Institute Code of Ethics and Standards of Professional Conduct.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 219

Case Outline

The main facts of the Glenarm case are as follows:

- Peter Sherman, CFA, was employed for five years with Pearl Investment Management as an emerging markets analyst. While he was at Pearl, he developed outside consulting positions with several Latin American companies. This outside consulting activity was disclosed to Pearl. Sherman recently switched firms and is now employed by the Glenarm Company.
- Glenarm is a small investment management firm that has been investigated, censured, and fined by the SEC for securities violations. Glenarm's partners are eager to repair the firm's reputation and hoped that hiring a CFA charterholder would help retain current clients and bring in new business.
- Prior to joining the firm, Glenarm asked Sherman to solicit current and prospective Pearl clients. Glenarm offered Sherman a large stake in the first-year investment management fees of any Pearl clients that Sherman could bring to Glenarm.
- While still employed at Pearl, Sherman visited socially with several Pearl clients in an attempt to woo them away from Pearl. He also contacted potential Pearl clients that Pearl has been actively soliciting. He even contacted some clients that Pearl had rejected.
- As he left Pearl, Sherman took the following items with him to his new job:
  - Pearl marketing presentations.
  - Computer stock selection models that he developed.
  - Research materials.
  - News articles on firms that he had been following.
  - A list of research ideas that were rejected by Pearl.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Case Results

Standard IV(A) Duties to Employers: Loyalty

It is acceptable for Sherman to contact prospects that Pearl decided not to pursue, because of a particular size or investment objective, while he is still employed at Pearl.

Violations of Standard IV(A) include:

- It is not acceptable for Sherman to contact Pearl's clients and potential clients (even if it is done "after hours"). Solicitation of these clients would be detrimental to Pearl's business. Sherman has an obligation to act in Pearl's best interest while still an employee of Pearl.
- Unless the employer consents, departing employees may not misappropriate property. All of the items Sherman took are the property of Pearl, and there is a violation.

Professor's Note: Members and Candidates must always act for the benefit of the employer. By taking confidential information, and soliciting clients and prospects to benefit Glenarm, Sherman has harmed his old employer, Pearl, and is in violation of his duty of loyalty. Sherman must act in the "old" employer's best interest while still employed there.

Actions required to prevent these violations include:

- Sherman should not solicit Pearl's clients or prospects until he leaves Pearl's employment.
- Sherman should not have taken Pearl property.

Standard IV(B) Duties to Employers: Additional Compensation Arrangements.

Violations of Standard IV(B) include:

- Sherman did not disclose his consulting arrangements to Glenarm.

Actions required to prevent these violations include:

- Sherman should disclose his consulting arrangements to Glenarm.

Standard VI(A) Disclosure of Conflicts, and Standard I(B) Independence and Objectivity

Violations of Standards VI(A) and I(B) include:

- The consulting arrangements had the potential to affect Sherman's independence and objectivity.
- Disclosures must be prominent and delivered in plain language.

Actions required to prevent these violations include:

- Sherman must disclose all details about outside compensation to Glenarm and obtain written permission from Glenarm in advance of entering into any such arrangements.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

The following is a review of the Ethical and Professional Standards principles designed to address the learning outcome statements set forth by CFA Institute. This topic is also covered in:

Preston Partners

Study Session 2

Exam Focus

The Preston Partners case emphasizes the violations that can occur when allocating block trades to clients. This ethics case will give you a sense of the types of scenarios you are likely to encounter on the Level II exam. The particulars of this case are not important in terms of test questions. However, understanding how to analyze a case and having the ability to recommend procedures to bring an illustrative firm into compliance are crucial to your success on the ethics portion of the exam.

LOS 6.a: Evaluate the practices and policies presented.

LOS 6.b: Explain the appropriate action to take in response to conduct that violates the CFA Institute Code of Ethics and Standards of Professional Conduct.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 225

Case Outline

The following statements summarize the main facts of the Preston Partners case:

- Sheldon Preston, CFA, is president of Preston Partners. Preston Partners is a mid-size investment management firm that specializes in managing large-cap portfolios for individuals and pension funds. CFA Institute's Code and Standards have been adopted as part of Preston's compliance manual.
- Preston wrote the firm's compliance manual but did a cursory job because he was in a hurry. A copy of the manual was provided to all employees upon joining the firm.
- During his daily review of Preston Partner trades, Preston found that Gerald Smithson, CFA, had added the stocks of Utah BioChemical Co. and Norgood PLC to all his clients' portfolios.
- Preston Partners manages Utah BioChemical's pension fund. In addition, the president and CEO of Utah BioChemical, Arne Okapuu, has Smithson manage his personal portfolio. Smithson and Okapuu have had a long-term business relationship.
- Smithson was vacationing in London and had seen Okapuu and the chairman of Norgood talking at a restaurant. Smithson contacted an analyst that he knew in London, Andrew Jones, and requested information on Norgood. Jones's latest research report had placed a "hold" recommendation on Norgood stock.
- Norgood is an aggressive investment and Utah BioChemical is a conservative investment.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

- Smithson performed a complete analysis of the biotech industry, Norgood, and Utah BioChemical. Based on his analysis and the fact that he saw Okapuu and Norgood's chairman talking, he deduced that a merger between the two firms was possible.
- Smithson ordered block trades of 50,000 shares for each firm. The firm's compliance manual was vague on the proper allocation of shares from a block trade. Smithson decided to allocate shares based on the size of the client's account, with the largest clients receiving their shares first at the most favorable prices. Also, the needs and constraints of Smithson's clients vary widely.
- Utah BioChemical and Norgood announced that they were merging. The share price of both firms increased by 40%.

Case Results

In researching and making client investment decisions, Smithson complied with Standard V(A) Diligence and Reasonable Basis. Furthermore, Smithson did not possess or act on insider information. What he learned was assembled through the "mosaic" theory.

However, Smithson did not comply with portions of the Standards relating to suitability of investments for clients and trade allocations. Preston failed to properly exercise his supervisory responsibility.

Standard III(C) Duties to Clients: Suitability

Violations of Standard III(C) include:

- Smithson should have considered clients' individual risk tolerances, needs, circumstances, and goals; he should have also better matched clients with investments. Norgood is too volatile for many clients' accounts.

Actions required to prevent this violation include:

- Be sure that Smithson's clients have written investment objectives and policy statements.
- For accounts which contain unsuitable investments, the shares should be sold, and Preston Partners should reimburse any loss.

Standard III(B) Duties to Clients: Fair Dealing

Violations of Standard III(B) include:

- The firm had no clear procedures for allocating block trades to client accounts. Large accounts were favored, disadvantaging smaller accounts.

Actions required to prevent this violation include:

- Detailed guidelines covering block trades must be prepared, emphasizing fairness to clients, timely executions, and accuracy.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Standard IV(C) Duties to Employers: Responsibilities of Supervisors

Violations of Standard IV(C) include:

- The senior management at Preston Partners should have made reasonable efforts to identify and prevent violations of applicable laws, rules, and regulations. A compliance program should have been in place.
- Supervisors and managers have the responsibility of training, distributing a policies and procedures manual, and providing refresher courses.

Actions required to prevent these violations include:

- Preston must have proper procedures established that would have prevented violations such as those that occurred.
- A compliance officer should be designated.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

The following is a review of the Ethical and Professional Standards principles designed to address the learning outcome statements set forth by CFA Institute. This topic is also covered in:

Super Selection

Study Session 2

Exam Focus

The Super Selection case emphasizes the fiduciary duty that members have to their clients. This ethics case will give you a sense of the types of scenarios you are likely to encounter on the Level II exam. The particulars of this case are not important in terms of test questions. However, understanding how to analyze a case and having the ability to recommend procedures to bring an illustrative firm into compliance are crucial to your success on the ethics portion of the exam.

LOS 7.a: Evaluate the practices and policies presented.

LOS 7.b: Explain the appropriate action to take in response to conduct that violates the CFA Institute Code of Ethics and Standards of Professional Conduct.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 231

Case Outline

The main facts of the Super Selection case are as follows:

- Patricia Cuff is the CFO and compliance officer for Super Selection Investment Advisors. Cuff is also a member of CFA Institute. CFA Institute's Standards of Practice have been incorporated into Super Selection's compliance manual.
- Karen Trader is a portfolio manager with Super Selection. She has recently purchased shares of Atlantis Medical Devices (AMD) for all of her clients' portfolios. AMD is a rapidly growing biotech firm.
- Trader's friend, Josey James, is president of AMD. James has been providing advice to Trader regarding the viability of certain biotech firms over the past few years. Trader has taken advantage of this advice for both her personal account and her client's portfolios. In many cases, she has placed personal trades before trading for her clients. Trader's personal brokerage statements had not been submitted to Cuff until recently.
- Several years ago, James asked Trader to serve as an outside director for AMD. She was paid with AMD stock options that at the time had no value. AMD earnings and sales are up and AMD directors recently voted to take the firm public via an initial public offering. AMD also began paying directors $5,000 per year. Trader stands to gain considerably by exercising her stock options.

- By the time the offering was to go public, the initial public offering (IPO) market had soured considerably. James called Trader to ask if she could commit to the purchase of a block of AMD shares for her client accounts. Trader had previously determined that AMD shares were not a good investment for her clients—but she changed her mind on the recommendation of James and purchased a considerable amount of AMD stock for her clients.

Case Results

Several Code and Standard violations are evident relating to Karen Trader's involvement with an outside firm. Although she is not a CFA charterholder or member, she is bound by the CFA Institute Code and Standards to the extent that they are a part of her own company's compliance procedures.

Standard IV(C) Duties to Employers: Responsibilities of Supervisors

The presumption is that Cuff is the "supervisor" and thus must comply with this standard. Cuff has the responsibility to take steps to prevent violations, and as compliance officer she should see that the firm's compliance procedures are adhered to by employees. Any violations must be addressed.

Actions required to prevent these violations include:

- Cuff must take prompt action to correct violations by reporting the violations to the appropriate members of senior management.
- Cuff is a compliance officer and must monitor Trader's personal trades and impose sanctions when necessary.
- If the senior management does not back up Cuff, other options include disclosing the incident to the Board, to the regulators, and even resigning from the firm.

Standard VI(A) Disclosure of Conflicts

Violations of Standard VI(A) include:

- Trader failed to disclose ownership of AMD stock options and also the compensation she received as a director of AMD.

Actions required to prevent this violation include:

- As a supervisor, Cuff must take action to ensure disclosure and, if necessary, by limiting behavior and imposing sanctions.

Standard V(A) Diligence and Reasonable Basis

Violations of Standard V(A) include:

- Trader determined AMD was not a suitable security for her clients. Trader was pressured by James and reversed positions; thus the AMD stock was purchased.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Actions required to prevent this violation include:

- Trader should have conducted due diligence and thorough research before making an investment decision for clients' accounts. Any change in opinion must have a reasonable basis. Trader must also inform clients of any AMD conflicts such as directorship and stock options.
- The compliance officer, Cuff, should review investment actions taken for clients at least annually.

Standard III(A) Duties to Clients: Loyalty, Prudence, and Care

Violations of Standard III(A) include:

- The fiduciary duty to clients was violated. Remember that client interests always come first.

Actions required to prevent this violation include:

- Trader should have taken any investment action for the sole benefit of her clients. Cuff must completely investigate Trader's activities to determine other fiduciary breaches. Following any fiduciary breaches, wrongdoers must have their activities limited.

Standard III(C) Duties to Clients: Suitability

Violations of Standard III(C) include:

- AMD stock was purchased for clients without considering client needs and circumstances.

Actions required to prevent this violation include:

- Trader should have considered clients' needs and circumstances instead of taking actions that benefited her personally.
- The compliance officer should establish at least an annual review to compare suitability of investment actions with investment policy statements.

Standard VI(B) Priority of Transactions

Violations of Standard VI(B) include:

- Trader violated this Standard by trading personally prior to client trades.

Actions required to prevent this violation include:

- By not reporting trades and brokerage accounts, Trader failed to follow her firm's procedures. The compliance officer needs to fully investigate Trader's transactions and recommend proper sanctions.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

The following is a review of the Ethical and Professional Standards principles designed to address the learning outcome statements set forth by CFA Institute. This topic is also covered in:

Trade Allocation: Fair Dealing and Disclosure

Study Session 2

Exam Focus

This topic review provides a brief summary of trade allocation procedures as recently updated by CFA Institute. The CFA Institute Code and Standards speak directly to the issue of trade allocation procedures because allocating trades among clients is an example of taking investment action. Under CFA Institute Standard III(B) Duties to Clients: Fair Dealing, "Members and Candidates must deal fairly and objectively with all clients when providing investment analysis, making investment recommendations, taking investment action, or engaging in other professional activities."

LOS 8.a: Evaluate trade allocation practices, and determine whether compliance exists with the CFA Institute Standards of Professional Conduct addressing fair dealing and client loyalty.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 237

The allocation of client trades on an *ad hoc* basis lends itself to two fundamental fairness problems:

- The allocation of trades may be based on *compensation arrangements.*
- The allocation of trades may be based on *client relationships* with the firm.

As far as compensation arrangements are concerned, an *ad hoc* allocation procedure gives rise to the temptation to allocate a disproportionate share of profitable trades to performance-based fee accounts. In addition to violating Standard III(B) Duties to Clients: Fair Dealing, this is a clear violation of Standard III(A) Duties to Clients: Loyalty, Prudence, and Care because this has the effect of increasing fees paid to the investment adviser at the expense of asset-based fee accounts.

As far as the client relationship with the firm is concerned, an *ad hoc* allocation procedure gives rise to the temptation to allocate a disproportionate share of profitable trades to favored clients. In addition to violating the fair dealing standard, this is again a clear violation of Standard III(A) Duties to Clients: Loyalty, Prudence, and Care, which states that members owe a duty of loyalty to clients and requires them to put clients' interests above their own. Conflicts of interest should be avoided. Giving certain clients special access to attractive IPOs with the intent to receive future investment banking business or more fees creates a conflict and breaches the duty to clients.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

LOS 8.b: Describe appropriate actions to take in response to trade allocation practices that do not adequately respect client interests.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 238

Appropriate responses to inadequate trade allocation practices include the following:

- Get advanced indication of client interest regarding any new issues.
- Distribute new issues by client, not by portfolio manager.
- Have in place a fair and objective method for trade allocation, such as pro rata or a similar system.
- Be fair to clients regarding both execution of trades and price.
- Execute orders in a timely and efficient manner.
- Keep records and periodically review them to ensure that all clients are being treated equitably.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

The following is a review of the Ethical and Professional Standards principles designed to address the learning outcome statements set forth by CFA Institute. This topic is also covered in:

Changing Investment Objectives

Study Session 2

Exam Focus

This topic review provides a brief summary of CFA Institute Standard III(C) Duties to Clients: Suitability. When entering into an advisory relationship with a client, the investment manager must inquire about the client's investing experience and investment objectives and constraints before taking any investment actions or making any recommendations. The actions and recommendations must be suitable to the client's situation and must be judged in the context of the entire portfolio. If the investment manager is managing a portfolio according to a specific style or mandate, the recommendations and investment actions must be consistent with the stated objectives and constraints of the specific portfolio.

LOS 9.a: Evaluate the disclosure of investment objectives and basic policies and determine whether they comply with the CFA Institute Standards of Professional Conduct.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 239

In the case of pooled client funds such as mutual funds, it is particularly important that the portfolio manager's recommendations and investment actions be consistent with the stated objectives and constraints of the fund. The security selection and portfolio construction processes are typically described in the fund's prospectus. *These processes are the key elements upon which the determination of appropriateness and suitability may be determined.* A material deviation from these processes, in the absence of approval from clients, constitutes a violation of CFA Institute Standard III(C) Duties to Clients: Suitability. *The investment must fit within the mandate or within the realm of investments that are allowed according to the fund's disclosures.*

LOS 9.b: Describe appropriate actions needed to ensure adequate disclosure of the investment process.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 240

In order to remain in compliance with CFA Institute Standards, a portfolio manager must:

- Determine the client's financial situation, investment objectives, and level of investing expertise.
- Adequately disclose the basic security selection and portfolio construction processes.
- Conduct regular internal checks for compliance with these processes.
- Stick to the stated investment strategy if managing to a specific mandate or strategy.
- Notify investors and potential investors of any potential change in the security selection and portfolio construction processes and secure documentation of authorization for proposed changes.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

The following is a review of the Ethical and Professional Standards principles designed to address the learning outcome statements set forth by CFA Institute. This topic is also covered in:

Prudence in Perspective

Study Session 2

Exam Focus

The new Prudent Investor Rule incorporates the principles of portfolio theory (think "diversification"), total return analysis (versus the *old* school of thought that capital preservation was the only concern), and management's ability to delegate investment duties. As you read this topic review, note the many similarities between the new rule and the CFA Institute Standards of Professional Conduct—you'll find the two sets of principles to be quite consistent. You may see this material tested in conjunction with the portfolio management process material in Study Session 18.

Warm-Up: The Old Prudent Man Rule

Until recently, the old *Prudent Man Rule* was the accepted legal statute that applied to fiduciary trust law in the United States. The Prudent Man Rule originated from Justice Putnam's ruling in the *Harvard College v. Amory* case in 1830. Despite its appealing flexibility, the Prudent Man Rule failed to attain wide acceptance outside of Massachusetts until the 1940s. Prior to that time, most states had adopted "legal list" statutes that described appropriate investments for trustees. After the collapse of the bond markets during the Depression, there was general disaffection with legal lists and a trend toward the Prudent Man Rule.

The Prudent Man Rule states that:

In acquiring, investing, reinvesting, exchanging, retaining, selling, and managing property for the benefit of another, a fiduciary shall exercise the judgment and care, under the circumstances then prevailing, which men of prudence, discretion, and intelligence exercise in the management of their own affairs, not in regard to speculation but in regard to the permanent disposition of their funds, considering the probable income as well as the probable safety of their capital.

LOS 10.a: Explain the basic principles of the new Prudent Investor Rule.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 245

Basic Investment Principles

Because the old rule severely limited trustees' abilities to manage portfolios to the best of their abilities, the American Law Institute in 1992 offered a definitive commentary called the **Prudent Investor Rule**. The substance of the *new* rule is to change the mindset

that certain types of investments are prohibited. There are five basic principles to the new Prudent Investor Rule:

1. Diversification is expected of portfolio managers as a method of reducing risk.
2. Trustees must base an investment's appropriateness on its risk/return profile: how it contributes to the overall risk of the portfolio.
3. Excessive trading (churning) as well as excessive fees and other transactions costs that are not warranted by the portfolio risk/return objectives should be avoided.
4. Current income for the trust must be balanced against the need for growth.
5. Trustees are allowed to delegate investment authority. In fact, this is a duty if the trustee does not have the required level of expertise.

LOS 10.b: Explain the general fiduciary standards to which a trustee must adhere.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 245

A trustee must exercise *care*, *skill*, *caution*, *loyalty*, and *impartiality* when managing trust assets. The loyalty and impartiality standards are carried over from the old rule to the new rule. The definitions of care, skill, and caution have changed significantly.

- *Care* means the trustees must do their homework by gathering pertinent information to use in their investment decisions. This could include seeking advice. A higher level of care is required under the new rule.
- *Skill* means that if the trustee does not have the relevant investment knowledge, he has a duty to seek out such advice. Note the difference in this standard versus the old rule. The old rule forbade such delegation. Also, if you have the necessary skill set, you have a duty to use it. Here again, the requirement for skill is higher. Before, you as a trustee needed to have all the answers.
- *Caution* must be used to balance the need for current income with the need to guard against inflation. In addition, a *total return* approach to money management should be employed. Principal growth (not just maintaining purchasing power) could indeed be a goal in certain circumstances. Caution under the old rule *really* meant caution—don't lose any money, which meant don't even think about growth!
- *Loyalty* requires the trustee to avoid conflicts of interest by always acting exclusively in the best interest of beneficiaries. This standard remains fairly constant under both rules.
- *Impartiality* requires that the trustee act "in a fair and reasonable manner" when handling the conflicting interests of beneficiaries (i.e., remaindermen interests versus current income beneficiaries). Impartiality standards also carry over from the old rule to the new rule.

The adherence to these standards is required of the trustee at the time of the investment decision. For example, the trustees of Enron's pension assets may have believed at the time that they acted according to the aforementioned standards. However, it is clear to see today that the decisions they made were not appropriate. We must not judge decisions ex post facto under the new standards.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

LOS 10.c: Distinguish between the old Prudent Man Rule and the new Prudent Investor Rule.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 242

The new Prudent Investor Rule makes five key changes to the traditional rules governing investment trust management.

- *Use of total return.* The new rule measures reasonable portfolio return as total return (income plus capital growth). It also emphasizes that the trustee's duty is to not only preserve the purchasing power of the trust but in certain cases to realize principal growth in excess of inflation.
- *Risk management.* Under the new rule, the trustee has the obligation to assess the risk and return objectives of the trust beneficiaries and manage the trust in a prudent manner consistent with those objectives, rather than to avoid all risk.
- *Evaluation in a portfolio context.* While the new rule calls for the avoidance of undue speculation and risk, it also encourages trustees to view risk in a portfolio context. For example, stock options are risky when held in isolation but can actually reduce portfolio risk when held as part of a properly structured portfolio. Protective put options are an example of this type of strategy.
- *Security restrictions.* No securities are "off limits" because of their riskiness when held in isolation. For example, under the old rule options were not allowed, but under the new rule they are, as long as the manager takes the portfolio perspective to analyzing risk.
- *Delegation of duty.* The *old* rule did not permit trustees to delegate investment authority. In fact, investing in mutual funds or even index funds was deemed improper. The *new* rule goes so far as to say that it may be the *duty* of a trustee (this is stronger language than just authority) to delegate, just as a prudent investor would.

Professor's Note: These principles are consistent with the guidelines outlined in the topic review of the portfolio management process in Study Session 18, where the LOS ask you to explain the importance of the portfolio perspective and define investment objectives and constraints.

LOS 10.d: Explain key factors that a trustee should consider when investing and managing trust assets.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 244

The new Prudent Investor Rule includes eight key factors that the trustee should consider when investing and managing trust assets:

- Economic conditions.
- Effects of inflation and deflation.
- Impact of investment decisions on the beneficiary's tax liability.
- How each individual investment contributes to the risk and return of the overall portfolio.
- Expected total return from capital appreciation and income.
- Other resources of the beneficiary.
- The beneficiary's liquidity, income, and capital preservation requirements.
- Whether any assets have a special relationship to the requirements of the beneficiary or the trust.

KEY CONCEPTS

LOS 10.a

The five basic principles of the new Prudent Investor Rule are:

- Diversification is expected of portfolio managers as a method of reducing risk.
- Trustees must base an investment's appropriateness on its risk/return profile in a portfolio context.
- Excessive trading (churning), as well as excessive fees and other transactions costs that are not warranted by the portfolio risk/return objectives, should be avoided.
- Current income for the trust must be balanced against the need for growth.
- Trustees are allowed (and may be required under certain circumstances) to delegate investment authority.

LOS 10.b

The general fiduciary standards that a trustee must adhere to are care, skill, caution, loyalty, and impartiality. The adherence to these standards is required of the trustee at the time of the investment decision.

LOS 10.c

The new Prudent Investor Rule differs from the old Prudent Man Rule in a number of areas:

- Total return is emphasized rather than preservation of purchasing power.
- Risk must be consistent with expected return objectives; under the old rule, risk was avoided.
- The investments are evaluated from a risk-return perspective in a portfolio context, not individually.
- No securities are "off limits" because they are risky on a stand-alone basis.
- Delegation of duties is encouraged rather than prohibited.

LOS 10.d

Key factors the trustee should consider include general economic conditions (including inflation and deflation); total expected return and the risk-return trade-off of the portfolio; and the unique needs of the beneficiary, including the tax situation, other resources available to the beneficiary, liquidity, income and capital preservation requirements, and unique assets with a special relationship to the beneficiary.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Concept Checkers

1. Which of the following statements regarding the old Prudent Man Rule is *most accurate*?
   A. The delegation of investment authority to a third party was acceptable.
   B. Trustees were to consider the safety of invested assets as well as income potential.
   C. Each investment was considered in the context of its contribution to the entire portfolio.

2. Which of the following statements is *least likely* to be a basic principle of the new Prudent Investor Rule?
   A. Current income for the trust must be balanced against the need for growth.
   B. Trustees must base appropriateness of risk on an investment's risk/return profile.
   C. Trustees may not delegate investment authority, except in unusual circumstances.

3. In which way are the old Prudent Man Rule and the new Prudent Investor Rule *similar*? Both rules:
   A. forbid entire classes of securities.
   B. instruct trustees to act in a fair and reasonable manner.
   C. stipulate that a total return approach to money management should be employed.

Use the following information to answer Question 4.

Stanley Bostwick, CFA, is a portfolio manager at Cornerstone Trust Company. He has asked Susan Sarahson, a newly hired analyst and Level II CFA candidate, to research the differences between the old Prudent Man Rule and the new Prudent Investor Rule. Sarahson conducts her research, meets with Bostwick, and makes the following statements:

Statement 1: "The old rule allows the delegation of authority and the new rule doesn't."

Statement 2: "The old rule considers each investment on its own merits, and the new rule takes a total portfolio approach."

Statement 3: "The old rule allows for plain vanilla derivative instruments, and the new rule allows for more exotic derivative instruments."

4. Bostwick has some familiarity with both rules and, after some further consideration, agrees with Sarahson concerning statements 1 and 2, but disagrees with her concerning Statement 3. Which of the following statements is *most accurate*?
   A. He was correct to agree with her concerning Statement 1.
   B. He was correct to agree with her concerning Statement 2.
   C. He was incorrect to disagree with her concerning Statement 3.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

5. The new Prudent Investor Rule includes eight key factors that the trustee should consider when investing and managing trust assets. Which of the following is *least likely* to be one of these eight key factors?
   A. Economic conditions.
   B. Effect of deflation.
   C. Impact of investment decisions on the beneficiary's personal beliefs and ethical principles.

6. The new Prudent Investor Rule includes eight key factors that the trustee should consider when investing and managing trust assets. Which of the following is *least likely* to be one of these eight key factors?
   A. Expected total return from capital appreciation and income.
   B. The non-systematic risk present in individual investments.
   C. Whether any assets have a special relationship to the requirements of the beneficiary or the trust.

7. The new Prudent Investor Rule specifies five fiduciary standards that the trustee must adhere to. Which of the following is *least likely* to be one of these standards?
   A. Skill.
   B. Caution.
   C. Feasibility.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

ANSWERS – CONCEPT CHECKERS

1. B Delegation of authority was not permitted under the old rule. The trustee was required to consider each investment individually and not in a portfolio context. The old rule has been replaced by the new Prudent Investor Rule.

2. C Trustees are allowed to delegate authority and may, under certain circumstances, be required to delegate authority to perform their fiduciary duty to their clients.

3. B Trustees are instructed to act "in a fair and reasonable manner" under the impartiality standards of both rules.

4. B Only Statement 2 is true, so Bostwick was correct to agree with her concerning that statement. The other statements are false, so Bostwick was not correct to agree with her concerning Statement 1, but he was correct to disagree with her concerning Statement 3.

   Statement 1 is false because the old rule did not allow for the delegation of duty; the new rule requires it if the manager does not have the relevant investment knowledge. Statement 3 is false because the old rule did not allow the investment in securities deemed "imprudent," like derivative instruments, while the new rule allows them as part of the total portfolio approach.

5. C The impact of investment decisions on the beneficiary's *tax liability* is a factor the new rule requires. It may be reasonable to consider the beneficiary's personal beliefs and ethical principles, but this is *not* part of the Prudent Investor Rule.

6. B The key point of the Prudent Investor Rule is to consider risk in a portfolio context, rather than the non-systematic risk present in individual investments.

7. C Feasibility is not part of the Prudent Investor Rule. The fiduciary standards are care, skill, caution, loyalty, and impartiality.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Self-Test: Ethical and Professional Standards

Professor's Note: Remember that the Level II exam consists of all item set format questions; that is, a vignette presenting the relevant information followed by six multiple-choice questions on that topic. For an accurate gauge of your preparedness, allow 18 minutes per item set (54 minutes total) for this self-test.

Item Set #1

Lewis Smithers, CFA, is the lead portfolio manager for Fundamental Investments Corp., a money manager serving several hundred wealthy individual investors. He spent his morning reading several articles on Phoenix-based Pineda Canyon Development in real estate industry publications. He concluded that while Pineda is a majority owner of several developers with huge portfolios of mountainside real estate perfect for the development of ski resorts, the company lacks the cash to build the resorts.

While lunching at his club, Smithers ran into Judith Carson, an old college friend he hadn't seen in months. Carson is managing partner of a land-speculation endeavor that owns thousands of acres of prime real estate. During the course of their conversation, Carson asked Smithers to invest in the partnership, which was about to buy a land developer and its acreage near Sassy River.

When Smithers returned to the office after lunch, he found an e-mail from Liam O'Toole, his largest client, who is knowledgeable about and likes to invest in real estate. O'Toole, who in the past did business with money manager Big Ideas International, had read in Big Ideas' prospect newsletter that a large Arizona developer was close to a deal to sell property in the Sassy River Valley. The article did not identify the parties to the transaction but did reveal the acreage of the land and the proposed sale price. O'Toole wanted to know if Smithers had heard about this deal and if he could get O'Toole a piece of it in exchange for a week at O'Toole's condo in St. Thomas.

Smithers suspected Pineda was the seller and Carson's real estate partnership was the buyer. Seeking to verify this, Smithers called Carson and asked if the partnership's big deal involved Pineda Canyon Development. Carson responded by saying she could neither confirm nor deny that a transaction with Pineda or any other specific company was in the works. A couple of days later, however, Smithers observed Carson and two of her business partners having dinner with Pineda executives. Smithers checked public records and discovered that Pineda was the majority shareholder in the only major development company with significant land ownership in the Sassy River Valley. Smithers concluded that Carson's firm was about to purchase the Sassy River developer from Pineda.

That afternoon, Smithers prepared a purchase recommendation for Pineda stock. He cited the expected sale of Sassy River Valley land for enough cash to fund both the construction of several ski resorts and retire some high interest notes. Smithers worked up some revenue and profit numbers, detailed the location of the property, and submitted a report for approval by the company president.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

1. In preparing his recommendation to purchase Pineda, Smithers violated:
   A. none of the standards.
   B. Standard III(A) Loyalty, Prudence, and Care with regard to Carson's information.
   C. Standard II(A) Material Nonpublic Information with regard to Carson's statements.

2. Immediately after submitting his purchase recommendation to his boss, Smithers takes three actions. Which of the following actions is *least likely* a violation of the Code and Standards?
   A. Immediately downgrading two ski equipment manufacturers based only on "trends in the industry."
   B. Advising a colleague in Fundamental's bond department of this new information regarding Pineda's debt.
   C. Giving Carson the names and summary financial information of O'Toole and two other clients as possible limited partners.

3. Fundamental's president, Dana Aaronson, is so impressed with Smithers's report that she sends it to the fulfillment department for printing and faxing five minutes after receiving it from Smithers's supervisor, who has read and approved the report. In her handling of the report, *how many* of the following standards has Aaronson violated?
   - I(B) Independence and Objectivity.
   - IV(C) Responsibilities of Supervisors.
   - V(A) Diligence and Reasonable Basis.
   - II(A) Material Nonpublic Information.

   A. One.
   B. Two.
   C. None.

4. With regard to his information-gathering activities and the creation of his report, did Smithers or anyone else violate Standard III(A) Loyalty, Prudence, and Care?
   A. No one violated the Standard.
   B. O'Toole's disclosure of the Big Ideas newsletter to Smithers is a violation of the Standard.
   C. Carson's discussion with Smithers about the partnership's plans is a violation of the Standard.

5. Because O'Toole brought the information about the real estate deal to Smithers's attention, Smithers purchased Pineda stock for O'Toole immediately after submitting his report to management. The purchase was *most likely* to violate:
   A. Standard III(B) regarding fair dealing.
   B. Standard III(C) regarding suitability of investments.
   C. Standard IV(B) regarding additional compensation arrangements.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

6. The Pineda report has been dispatched by e-mail, fax, or mail to every client. The purchase will be announced in one day, not enough time to disseminate Smithers's research to clients with no e-mail or fax capability. Fundamental's trading manager, Bill Johnson, is considering various directives regarding the trading of Pineda stock. Which of the following instructions for portfolio managers is *best*?
   A. Make no trades until the written reports are delivered to every client in 48 hours.
   B. Do not execute any pending sell order for Pineda stock until the client has been informed of the rating change.
   C. Purchase Pineda stock for all discretionary portfolios, then call nondiscretionary clients to seek permission to purchase the stock.

Item Set #2

Gerard Cutty, CFA, a technology-stock analyst and money manager at Unique Investments, has been hearing rumors for months that Simpson Semiconductor was near a breakthrough on a next-generation telecommunications microchip. Simpson is best known on the street for its expert design engineers, perennially shaky balance sheet, and extremely volatile stock.

One morning, as he is listening to a recorded *Barron's* interview with Simpson's CEO, who is also a CFA charterholder, he learns that Simpson has struck a licensing agreement with Simak Foundry, a privately held chip fabricator in Malaysia. Then he reads in *The Asian Wall Street Journal* that a Malaysian bank has loaned $500 million to Simak for construction of a new plant.

Cutty owns an apartment in Paris which is leased to Gladys Catcher, CFA. The lease is about to expire and Cutty and Catcher are currently in the process of renegotiating the terms of the lease. Cutty has other potential tenants for the apartment who are willing to pay more than what Catcher is currently paying, so he would like to negotiate a significant increase in the monthly payments.

Catcher works for a Paris public relations firm that handles accounts for a lot of Asian technology companies. Cutty calls Catcher, and after learning that her firm handled the Simak account, he asks what she knows about the Simak loan. Catcher says Simak has inked a deal with a big U.S. firm to make a new kind of microchip. She refuses to identify the firm but does provide some impressive performance numbers for the new chip.

After conducting a detailed patent search using the chip performance figures as a guide, Cutty learns that a Simpson engineer has filed for a series of patents related to the new technology over the past 18 months and confirms Catcher's information on the performance of the new chip.

Cutty works up some revenue and market-share projections, then concludes that if the new technology works, it could triple the company's profits over the next three years. He writes up a research report on Simpson, detailing the licensing deal, specs on the new chip, and his opinion about the company's growth potential. Cutty then raises his rating on Simpson from neutral to high-risk buy.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Mary Wabb, lead portfolio manager for Unique Investments, calls Cutty into her office after reviewing the analyst's report. Wabb asks Cutty about his sources and methodology, and Cutty explains his thinking process. She then thanks Cutty for his good work and tells him he will receive Unique's World Series tickets this year. After Cutty leaves, Wabb makes minor edits to the report and sends it to the fulfillment department for inclusion in the daily e-mail report and weekly printed report for clients and prospects. Then Wabb instructs the trading desk to purchase Simpson stock for all client accounts after the reports have been issued.

The day after Cutty's report is released, rival analyst Sue Ellen Slusher, CFA, publishes her own analysis of Simpson Semiconductor. She cites Cutty's report specifically, quoting him directly and rebutting his conclusions point by point with her own research, criticizing his lack of thoroughness and questioning his abilities as an analyst and his academic and professional credentials. Specifically, she says that she's a better analyst than he is because "he earned his charter way back in 1986, when the CFA® exam was a lot easier to pass than it is today, but I earned my charter last year." Slusher writes that after talking with executives at Werfel Wafers, she believes Simpson infringed on Werfel's patent and will never reap the profits from the new technology.

7. In the production of his research report, Cutty violated:
   A. Standard V(A) Diligence and Reasonable Basis.
   B. Standard II(A) Material Nonpublic Information.
   C. none of the standards.

8. Which of the following statements is *most accurate* regarding potential violations of Standard III(A) Loyalty, Prudence, and Care in this scenario?
   A. Neither Cutty, Catcher, nor Simpson violated the Standard.
   B. Catcher violated the Standard by revealing information about her client, Simak.
   C. Simpson's CEO violated the Standard by discussing his company's licensing agreement.

9. Which of the following statements, if found in Cutty's report without clarification, would *most likely* violate Standard V(B) Communications With Clients and Prospective Clients?
   A. Simpson's sales have faltered in recent years, but I believe the new technology will bring back the days of 25% revenue growth.
   B. The new technology could boost Simpson's cash flows considerably and provide flexibility to clean up the balance sheet.
   C. After a few phone calls and an analysis of the relevant information from our internal database, I concluded that Simpson's new technology was more than just a rumor.

10. Which of Wabb's actions *most likely* violated the Code and Standards? Her:
    A. newsletter instructions violated Standard III(B) Fair Dealing.
    B. trading instructions violated Standard III(C) Suitability.
    C. awarding of World Series tickets to Cutty violated Standard IV(B) Additional Compensation Arrangements.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

11. Which of the following actions could Cutty have taken while researching his report on Simpson *without* violating CFA Institute Standards of Professional Conduct?
    A. Not saving the results of the patent search.
    B. Ignoring a rival analyst's report on a Simpson competitor with a similar technology.
    C. Using statements from the Standard & Poor's report on Simpson without verifying them.

12. According to CFA Institute Standards of Professional Conduct, Slusher violated:
    A. Standard VII(B) Reference to CFA Institute, the CFA Designation, and the CFA Program because of her criticism of Cutty's credentials.
    B. Standard V(A) Diligence and Reasonable Basis because her conclusions differed from Cutty's.
    C. Standard I(B) Independence and Objectivity because of her criticism of Cutty's research report and conclusions.

Item Set #3

MH Securities is a subsidiary of MH Group, a large Korean conglomerate, and has recently established offices in the United States and Canada. MH plans to target Korean-Americans and Canadians for its services which include selling the firm's research services as well as Korean equities, bonds, and won-denominated certificates of deposit (CD). Chan-Heung Lee, CFA, has been hired to develop, implement, and oversee MH's compliance activities. Because there are very few compliance procedures in place, Lee will have to build the entire compliance framework. His objective is to conform to the CFA Institute Code and Standards. As one of his first steps, Lee decides to interview several MH employees to determine what formal and informal policies and procedures currently exist at the firm. Lee calls meetings with Jamie Jin, Nadine Yu, and Mark Larson, each of whom is a CFA charterholder.

Jamie Jin has recently been hired as an investment officer by MH. Jin informs Lee during their meeting that her previous employer, Rearguard Funds, has agreed to pay her a 25 basis point commission plus an annual bonus for all Rearguard Funds she sells to MH clients. Jin is unsure whether she will even use any Rearguard products with her new clients but agrees to the arrangement in case a client specifically requests a Rearguard product. Because the likelihood of actually receiving any compensation from Rearguard seems remote, Jamie has not previously disclosed the arrangement to MH.

In his meeting with Nadine Yu, an equity analyst at MH, Lee discovers that Yu has recently and abruptly changed her investment recommendation on Korean won-denominated bonds from buy to sell. She has prepared a research report to this effect and provides a copy to Lee in accordance with one of the firm's few existing compliance procedures. Her change of opinion is based upon nonpublic information provided to her in confidence by a friend on the monetary board at the Bank of Korea. While Lee is surprised at the abrupt change in the recommendation, he does not question the rationale and allows the report to be issued. Having received approval for her investment recommendation, Yu simultaneously releases the report to her individual and institutional research service subscribers as well as to MH's portfolio managers.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Lee's final meeting is with a new hire, Mark Larson, who has recently agreed to go to work for MH starting at the beginning of the next month. Lee is meeting with Larson to discuss new clients that Larson is expected to bring to MH. Larson, without providing details, assures Lee that he will have no problem increasing MH's client base. Prior to leaving his current employer, Affinity Advisors, Larson contacts 25 prospects by calling them, using public records and not Affinity's records, on Saturday mornings from his home. Of the prospects, ten individuals had previously been rejected as being too small for Affinity, but they still meet MH standards. The other 15 individuals remained viable prospects for Affinity. After learning of their status with Affinity, Larson suggests that all 25 prospects consider directing their business to him and his new firm, MH.

Lee's meetings with Jin, Yu, and Larson help him formulate compliance procedures. Lee decides that he will develop a written compliance manual which will be distributed to all of the firm's employees. The manual will delineate procedures for reporting violations and sanctions, describe the supervision hierarchy and each supervisor's duties, and outline the steps to monitor and evaluate the compliance program. Lee also designates Jin as the employee with ultimate responsibility for the compliance procedures and their enforcement.

13. Because there are currently no compliance procedures in place, Lee should:
    A. develop procedures that are in accordance with the CFA Institute Code and Standards as compliance situations arise.
    B. implement a comprehensive set of compliance procedures immediately and verify their conformance with the CFA Institute Code and Standards as circumstances dictate.
    C. determine what constitutes adequate compliance procedures under the CFA Institute Code and Standards, then implement such procedures immediately.

14. Prior to her meeting with Lee, did Jin's decision regarding the disclosure of the arrangement with Rearguard Funds violate any CFA Institute Standards of Professional Conduct?
    A. Yes.
    B. No, because she disclosed the arrangement with Rearguard to Lee in their meeting.
    C. No, because prior to the meeting with Lee, MH did not have any compliance procedures requiring such a disclosure.

15. With regard to Yu's recommendation that investors sell Korean bonds, did Lee and Yu violate any CFA Institute Standards of Professional Conduct?
    A. Neither Lee nor Yu is in violation.
    B. Both Lee and Yu are in violation.
    C. Only Yu is in violation.

16. With respect to the release of Yu's investment recommendation, did Yu violate any CFA Institute Standards of Professional Conduct?
    A. No.
    B. Yes. Yu should have released the recommendation to the individual clients first.
    C. Yes. Yu should have released the recommendation to the individual and institutional clients first.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

17. In soliciting the list of 10 previously rejected prospects and the list of 15 viable prospects, did Larson violate any CFA Institute Standards of Professional Conduct?
    A. No, Larson did not violate a Standard; he can solicit from either list.
    B. Yes, Larson violated a Standard; he cannot solicit from either list.
    C. Yes, Larson violated a Standard; he can only solicit from the previously rejected prospects list.

18. Does the compliance program developed by Lee after his meetings with MH employees comply with CFA Institute Standards of Professional Conduct?
    A. Yes.
    B. No. Authority to enforce the compliance program should rest with the compliance officer.
    C. No. Assigning supervisory duties takes away the responsibility of all supervisors to detect all violations of the compliance procedures.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Self-Test Answers: Ethical and Professional Standards

Item Set #1

1. A Smithers has assembled both material public and nonmaterial nonpublic information as the basis for his recommendation. By putting all of the information together, Smithers has utilized the mosaic theory to come to a conclusion of material nonpublic nature without actually using material nonpublic information. Therefore, he did not violate Standard II(A). Carson is not Smithers's client, and Smithers owes Carson no fiduciary responsibility under Standard III(A). Smithers had no reason to believe Carson would misrepresent anything about the situation.

2. B Sharing information between the stock and bond divisions within a single company does not violate any fiduciary duties. It is possible that by not sharing the information, Smithers could violate a fiduciary duty to Fundamental's bond-investing clients. Immediately downgrading the ski equipment manufacturers implies the downgrades were issued solely because of a new deal for Pineda, an act that violates Standard V(A) Diligence and Reasonable Basis. Giving client financial information to a competitor would definitely violate Standard III(E) Preservation of Confidentiality.

3. C Nothing in Aaronson's conduct implies any violation of the independence and objectivity Standard, nor the Standard regarding use of material nonpublic information. As president of the firm, Aaronson is NOT responsible for making sure that each analyst has a reasonable basis for every recommendation. Aaronson is entitled to rely on reasonable procedures to detect and prevent such violations. Therefore, she has not violated any of the four listed standards.

4. A Standard III(A) Loyalty, Prudence, and Care requires members and candidates act for the benefit of their clients and comply with applicable fiduciary duties. O'Toole has no fiduciary duty to Big Ideas and can share the information with anyone he wishes. As managing partner, Carson is presumably authorized to speak for the partnership and attempt to bring in new investors. She has a fiduciary duty to the limited partners, but revealing the purchase plans to Smithers did not violate that duty as the deal had already been struck, and the information would not affect the purchase price. No actions in the scenario reflect a breach of fiduciary duty.

5. A O'Toole is an experienced real estate investor, and Pineda is probably a good fit for him. And because O'Toole is Smithers's biggest client, it can be assumed that Smithers has worked with O'Toole extensively and is familiar with his investment needs and preferences. As such, the purchase most likely satisfies Standard III(C) Suitability. Smithers did not violate Standard IV(B) Additional Compensation Arrangements because he did not accept O'Toole's offer, nor did he do what O'Toole asked in return for the condo, which was to get O'Toole a piece of the deal. By favoring O'Toole over other clients, however, Smithers violates the fair dealing Standard and his fiduciary duty to other clients besides O'Toole. Smithers should not have purchased stock in Pineda for O'Toole until the report had been disseminated to all clients with an interest in the investment.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

6. B The fair dealing Standard requires brokers to inform clients of any pending rating changes. If the clients still want to sell Pineda, then Fundamental must sell it for them. Purchasing Pineda stock for all discretionary portfolios violates Standard III(C) Suitability, as the stock may not be suitable for all account holders. Waiting to make buys until everyone has received a mailed report sounds fair, but it violates the firm's fiduciary duty to discretionary clients and those who can be reached by phone, fax, or e-mail before the merger announcement is made. In addition, Standard III(B) Fair Dealing requires fair dissemination of recommendations, not "equal" dissemination, which is not always practical.

Item Set #2

7. C Cutty's use of someone with whom he does personal business as a source could be perceived by some as a conflict of interest. However, there seems to be no ill intent, and Cutty corroborated Catcher's information from an additional source (the patent search). The research reports Standard requires that the analyst use reasonable judgment and distinguish between fact and opinion—Cutty did that. Cutty's broad-based research also satisfies the requirements of the reasonable basis Standard. None of the nonpublic information Cutty picked up was likely to be considered material by itself, and his conclusions about Simpson are an example of the mosaic theory.

8. A Cutty owes no fiduciary duty to Catcher. Simpson's CEO did not reveal material information, but as CEO he likely would not have been violating a fiduciary duty even if he had. Catcher is in public relations, and her job is to discuss her clients' business with third parties. As such, she is authorized to release information—Standard III(A).

9. C While Cutty clearly states that his opinion is based on his own conclusions rather than verifiable facts, he violates Standard V(B) by not providing details about the evaluation process, which was quite complicated. Therefore, choice C is not an adequate description of the process and is a violation of the Standard. Cutty's use of "I believe" and "could" suggest the statements about sales and cash flows are his opinions. Therefore, choices A and B are not violations.

10. B Because Simpson is a risky stock, it is probably not suitable for all clients, and a blanket purchase order violates Standard III(C) Suitability. Wabb's instructions for the fulfillment department meet the requirements of Standard III(B) Fair Dealing, as the Standard does not require that everyone be notified at the same time, only that the dissemination of information is handled fairly. In this case, everyone with e-mail will get the information at the same time, and those without e-mail will get it later, but at the same time as their low-tech peers. The additional compensation Standard applies to compensation that doesn't come from the employer, and the World Series tickets did indeed come from the employer.

11. C Members are in compliance with Standard V(A) Diligence and Reasonable Basis if they depend on the research of others they know to be competent and diligent. S&P qualifies as such a source. Standard V(C) Record Retention requires analysts to maintain records supporting their actions, so Cutty must save the results of the patent search. A rival's report about a competitor with similar technology could have a material effect on Cutty's financial model for Simpson and must be considered.

12. A Slusher's claim that her credentials are superior to Cutty's because she earned her charter more recently is a violation of Standard VII(B) Reference to CFA Institute, the CFA Designation, and the CFA Program. Slusher did not plagiarize Cutty's work because she cited him as the author. Just because Slusher disagrees with, and criticizes, Cutty's well-researched opinion does not mean she lacks basis for her own analysis or has violated the independence and objectivity standard.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Item Set #3

13. C In order to best conform to the CFA Institute Code and Standards, Lee should first define what constitutes adequate standards. According to Standard IV(C) Responsibilities of Supervisors, "'adequate' procedures are those designed to meet industry standards, regulatory requirements, the requirements of the Code and Standards, and the circumstances of the firm." Once this has been done, he should implement the procedures immediately.

14. A In order to be in compliance with Standard IV(B) Jin must disclose all additional compensation arrangements, in writing, to her employer. It does not matter whether Rearguard actually pays her a commission on the funds or whether the firm previously had such a policy. In addition, the relationship with Rearguard creates a potential conflict of interest between Jin and her clients because she may be tempted to increase her income by recommending Rearguard Funds that are inappropriate for her clients' needs. Standard VI(A) Disclosure of Conflicts requires disclosure of such conflicts to clients and prospects. There is no indication that Jin has made such a disclosure.

15. B Yu is in violation of Standard II(A) Material Nonpublic Information, as she has used material nonpublic information in her investment recommendations. She is forbidden to act upon such information. Lee, the firm's compliance officer, has violated Standard IV(C) Responsibilities of Supervisors, in the discharge of his responsibility as a supervisor. Given the abrupt change in the recommendation, Lee should have attempted to determine if there was a reasonable basis for the dramatic shift in opinion.

16. A According to Standard III(B) Fair Dealing, members and candidates must ensure that all clients are treated equitably with regard to investment recommendations and investment actions. Because MH has clients that subscribe to their research service but do not pay for portfolio management services and the firm has clients that pay for discretionary portfolio management, investment recommendations must be communicated to research subscribers and the firm's portfolio managers simultaneously in order to ensure that all clients have equal opportunity to trade on the firm's research without being disadvantaged because of the type of service the client receives.

17. C According to Standard IV(A) Loyalty to Employer, Larson must not solicit current or prospective Affinity clients prior to his leaving. Larson is allowed to solicit prospects that have been rejected by Affinity as long as he does so on his own time, does not use Affinity's client lists, and his actions do not impair his performance at work. His solicitation of prospects who are still viable for Affinity is a clear violation of duty to his employer under Standard IV(A).

18. B According to Standard IV(C) Responsibilities of Supervisors, the responsibility to implement procedures and the authority to enforce the procedures should both reside with the compliance officer (in this case Lee, rather than Jin, who is an investment officer).

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

The following is a review of the Quantitative Methods for Valuation principles designed to address the learning outcome statements set forth by CFA Institute. This topic is also covered in:

Correlation and Regression

Study Session 3

Exam Focus

This introduction to regression analysis begins with the calculation of sample covariance and sample correlation. You should be able to calculate both of these measures and to test the significance of an estimated correlation coefficient. A simple linear regression involves two random variables, an independent and a dependent variable. Candidates should be able to construct a simple regression model (equation), state the assumptions under which such a (linear) model is valid, and discuss the limitations of a simple regression model. Given the estimated model parameters (coefficients), you should be able to use the model to predict the dependent variable using an assumed value of the independent variable. Finally, you may be required to interpret an ANOVA table and test the significance of estimated regression coefficients. Note that an *F*-test, in the context of a simple regression, is equivalent to a *t*-test of the significance of the estimated slope coefficient.

Professor's Note: For more details on hypothesis testing and simple linear regression, please see the online Schweser Library.

LOS 11.a: Calculate and interpret a sample covariance and a sample correlation coefficient, and interpret a scatter plot.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 269

The **covariance** between two random variables is a statistical measure of the degree to which the two variables move together. The covariance captures the linear relationship between two variables. A positive covariance indicates that the variables tend to move together; a negative covariance indicates that the variables tend to move in opposite directions.

The **sample covariance** is calculated as:

$$\text{cov}_{XY} = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^{n}(X_i - \overline{X})(Y_i - \overline{Y})}{n-1}$$

where:

n = sample size

X_i = ith observation on variable X

$\overline{X}$ = mean of the variable X observations

Y_i = ith observation on variable Y

$\overline{Y}$ = mean of the variable Y observations

The actual value of the covariance is not very meaningful because its measurement is extremely sensitive to the scale of the two variables. Also, the covariance may range from

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

negative to positive infinity, and it is presented in terms of squared units (e.g., percent squared when data are in percent). For these reasons, we take the additional step of calculating the correlation coefficient, which converts the covariance into a standardized measure that is easier to interpret.

Sample Correlation Coefficient

The **correlation coefficient**, *r*, is a measure of the strength of the linear relationship (correlation) between two variables. The correlation coefficient has no unit of measurement; it is a "pure" measure of the tendency of two variables to move together.

The **sample correlation coefficient** for two variables, *X* and *Y*, is calculated as:

$$r_{XY} = \frac{\text{covariance of X and Y}}{(\text{sample standard deviation of X})(\text{sample standard deviation of Y})} = \frac{\text{cov}_{XY}}{(s_X)(s_Y)}$$

The correlation coefficient is bounded by positive and negative one ($-1 \leq r \leq +1$), where a correlation coefficient of +1 indicates that changes in the variables are perfectly positively correlated (i.e., they go up and down together, in lock-step). In contrast, if the correlation coefficient is –1, the changes in the variables are perfectly negatively correlated.

Figure 1 provides the data for two variables, *X* and *Y*, and shows the calculation of the correlation between *X* and *Y*.

Figure 1: Procedure for Computing Correlation

Obs.	X	Y	$X - \overline{X}$	$(X - \overline{X})^2$	$Y - \overline{Y}$	$(Y - \overline{Y})^2$	$(X - \overline{X})(Y - \overline{Y})$
1	12	50	–1.50	2.25	8.40	70.56	–12.60
2	13	54	–0.50	0.25	12.40	153.76	–6.20
3	10	48	–3.50	12.25	6.40	40.96	–22.40
4	9	47	–4.50	20.25	5.40	29.16	–24.30
5	20	70	6.50	42.25	28.40	806.56	184.60
6	7	20	–6.50	42.25	–21.60	466.56	140.40
7	4	15	–9.50	90.25	–26.60	707.56	252.70
8	22	40	8.50	72.25	–1.60	2.56	–13.60
9	15	35	1.50	2.25	–6.60	43.56	–9.90
10	23	37	9.50	90.25	–4.60	21.16	–43.70
Sum	135	416	0.00	374.50	0.00	2,342.40	445.00
			$\overline{X} = 135 / 10 = 13.5$			$s_X^2 = 374.5 / 9 = 41.611$	
			$\overline{Y} = 416 / 10 = 41.6$			$s_Y^2 = 2{,}342.4 / 9 = 260.267$	

Using the information in Figure 1, the sample correlation coefficient for variables X and Y may be calculated as:

$$r_{XY} = \frac{\frac{445}{9}}{\sqrt{41.611}\sqrt{260.267}} = \frac{49.444}{(6.451)(16.133)} = 0.475$$

The interpretation of the possible correlation values is summarized in Figure 2.

Figure 2: Interpretation of Correlation Coefficients

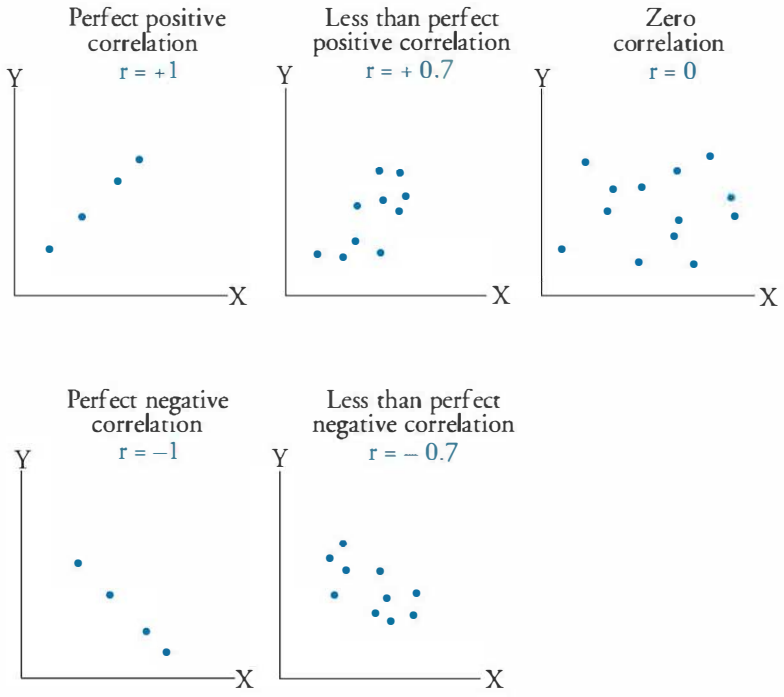
Correlation Coefficient (r)	*Interpretation*
r = +1	perfect positive correlation
0 < r < +1	positive linear relationship
r = 0	no linear relationship
−1 < r < 0	negative linear relationship
r = −1	perfect negative correlation

Interpreting a Scatter Plot

A **scatter plot** is a collection of points on a graph where each point represents the values of two variables (i.e., an X/Y pair). Figure 3 shows several scatter plots for the two random variables X and Y and the corresponding interpretation of correlation. As shown, an upward-sweeping scatter plot indicates a positive correlation between the two variables, while a downward sweeping plot implies a negative correlation. Also illustrated in Figure 3 is that as we move from left to right in the rows of scatter plots, the extent of the linear relationship between the two variables deteriorates, and the correlation gets closer to zero. Note that for r = 1 and r = −1 the data points lie exactly on a line, but the slope of that line is not necessarily +1 or −1.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Figure 3: Interpretations of Correlation

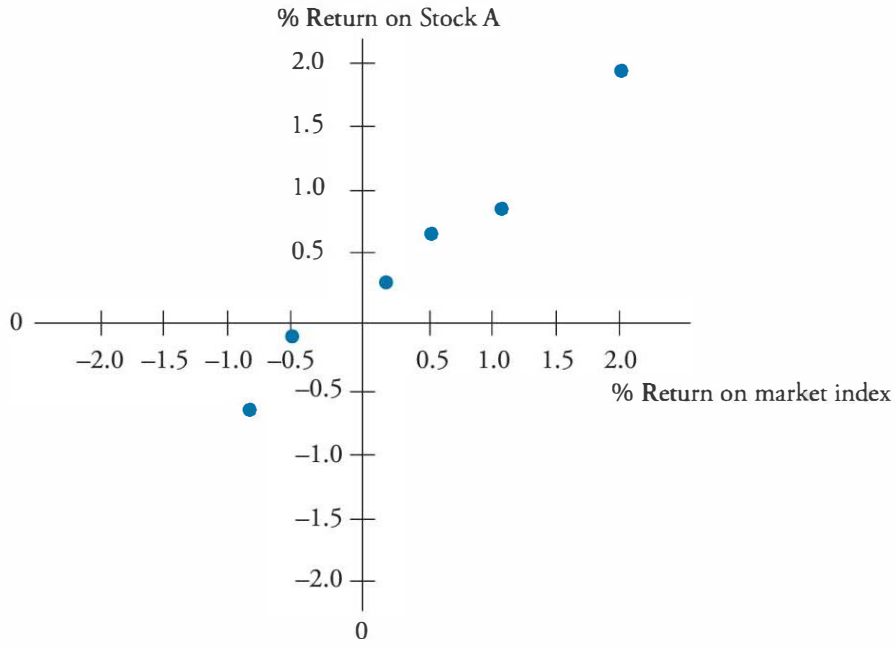


Suppose we wish to graphically represent the data for the returns on Stock A and returns on a market index over the last six months, shown in Figure 4. Figure 5 shows the data graphically with the returns on Stock A on the Y-axis and the returns on the market index on the X-axis. Each point of the scatter plot in Figure 5 represents one month of the six in our sample. The rightmost point in the scatter plot is for the month of March, a 2.0% return on the market index and a 1.8% return on Stock A.

Figure 4: Monthly Returns Data

Month	*Return on Stock A*	*Return on Market Index*
Jan	+0.8%	+1.2%
Feb	+0.6%	+0.5%
Mar	+1.8%	+2.0%
Apr	–0.7%	–0.9%
May	+0.3%	+0.2%
June	–0.1%	–0.5%

Figure 5: A Scatter Plot of Returns



Notice that returns on Stock A appear to be positively correlated with the market index returns.

LOS 11.b: Explain limitations to correlation analysis, including outliers and spurious correlation.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 273

Limitations to correlation analysis include the impact of outliers, the potential for spurious correlation, and nonlinear relationships.

Outliers

Computed correlation coefficients, as well as other sample statistics, may be affected by outliers. Outliers represent a few extreme values for sample observations. Relative to the rest of the sample data, the value of an outlier may be extraordinarily large or small. Outliers can result in apparent statistical evidence that a significant relationship exists when, in fact, there is none, or that there is no relationship when, in fact, there is a relationship.

Spurious Correlation

Spurious correlation refers to the appearance of a causal linear relationship when, in fact, there is no relation. Certain data items may be highly correlated purely by chance. For example, suppose that you compute the correlation coefficient for historical stock prices and snowfall totals in Minnesota and get a statistically significant relationship—

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

especially for the month of January. Obviously there is no economic explanation for this relationship, so this would be considered a spurious correlation.

Nonlinear Relationships

Correlation measures the *linear* relationship between two variables. That's why in the first panel of Figure 3 the data points lie perfectly on a straight line when the two variables are perfectly positively correlated. For example, $Y = 6 - 3X$ is a linear relationship. However, two variables could have a *nonlinear* relationship such as $Y = (3X - 6)^2$ and the correlation coefficient would be close to zero. Therefore, another limitation of correlation analysis is that it does not capture strong nonlinear relationships between variables.

LOS 11.c: Formulate a test of the hypothesis that the population correlation coefficient equals zero, and determine whether the hypothesis is rejected at a given level of significance.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 281

As indicated earlier, the closer the correlation coefficient is to plus or minus one, the stronger the correlation. With the exception of these extremes (i.e., $r = \pm 1.0$), we cannot really speak of the strength of the relationship indicated by the correlation coefficient without a statistical test of significance.

For our purposes, we want *to test whether the correlation between the population of two variables is equal to zero.* Using the lower case Greek letter rho (ρ) to represent the population parameter, the appropriate null and alternative hypotheses can be structured as a two-tailed test as follows:

$$H_0: \rho = 0 \text{ versus } H_a: \rho \neq 0$$

Assuming that the two populations are normally distributed, we can use a *t*-test to determine whether the null hypothesis should be rejected. The test statistic is computed using the sample correlation, *r*, with $n - 2$ degrees of freedom (*df*):

$$t = \frac{r\sqrt{n-2}}{\sqrt{1-r^2}}$$

To make a decision, the calculated test statistic is compared with the critical *t*-value for the appropriate degrees of freedom and level of significance. Bearing in mind that we are conducting a two-tailed test, the decision rule can be stated as:

$$\text{Reject } H_0 \text{ if } +t_{critical} < t, \text{ or } t < -t_{critical}$$

Example: Test of significance for the correlation coefficient

Using the information from the table in Figure 1, determine if the sample correlation is significant at the 5% level of significance.

Answer:

The hypotheses are structured as $H_0: \rho = 0$ versus $H_a: \rho \neq 0$.

For the sample data in Figure 1, n = 10 and r = 0.475. Using this information, the test statistic can be computed as:

$$t = \frac{0.475\sqrt{8}}{\sqrt{1-0.475^2}} = \frac{1.3435}{0.88} = 1.527$$

The two-tailed critical *t*-values at a 5% level of significance with df = 10 – 2 = 8 are found in the *t*-table to be ±2.306. (Look in the df = 8 row and match that with the p = 0.05 two-tailed level of significance column.)

Because $-2.306 \leq 1.5267 \leq 2.306$ (i.e., $-t_{critical} \leq t \leq +t_{critical}$), the null cannot be rejected. We conclude that the correlation between variables *X* and *Y* is not significantly different than zero at a 5% significance level.

LOS 11.d: Distinguish between the dependent and independent variables in a linear regression.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 284

The purpose of **simple linear regression** is to explain the variation in a dependent variable in terms of the variation in a single independent variable. Here, the term "variation" is interpreted as the degree to which a variable differs from its mean value. Don't confuse variation with variance—they are related but are not the same.

- The **dependent variable** is the variable whose variation is explained by the independent variable. We are interested in answering the question, "What explains fluctuations in the dependent variable?" The dependent variable is also referred to as the *explained variable*, the *endogenous variable*, or the *predicted variable*.
- The **independent variable** is the variable used to explain the variation of the dependent variable. The independent variable is also referred to as the *explanatory variable*, the *exogenous variable*, or the *predicting variable*.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Example: Dependent vs. independent variables

Suppose that you want to predict stock returns with GDP growth. Which variable is the independent variable?

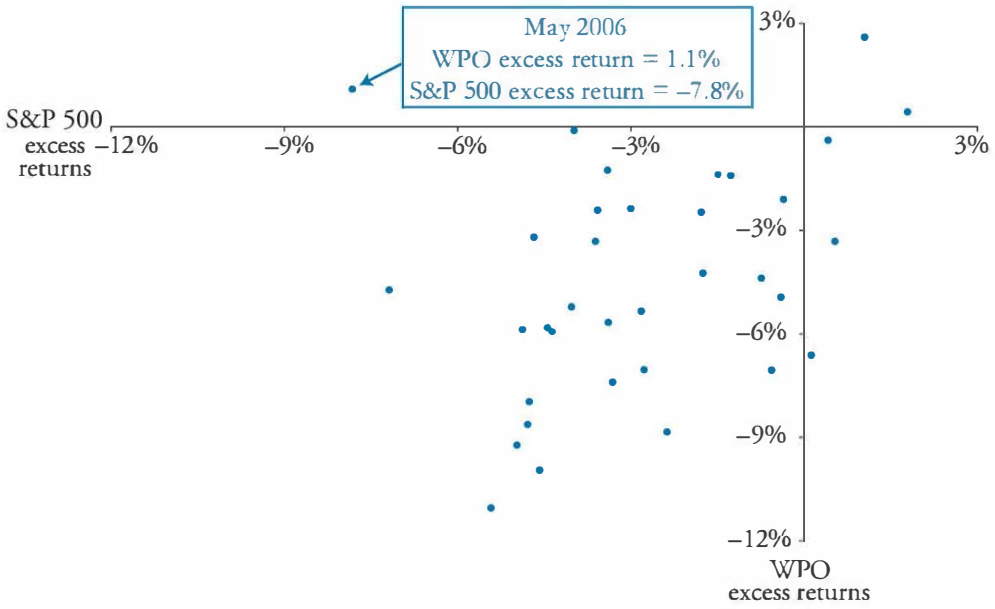
Answer:

Because GDP is going to be used as a predictor of stock returns, stock returns are being *explained* by GDP. Hence, stock returns are the dependent (explained) variable, and GDP is the independent (explanatory) variable.

Suppose we want to use excess returns on the S&P 500 (the independent variable) to explain the variation in excess returns on Washington Post (WPO) common stock (the dependent variable). Excess return is defined as the difference between the actual return and the return on 1-month Treasury bills.

We would start by creating a scatter plot with WPO excess returns on the vertical axis and S&P 500 excess returns on the horizontal axis. Monthly excess returns for both variables from June 2004 to May 2007 are plotted in Figure 6. For example, look at the point labeled May 2006. In that month the excess return on the S&P 500 was –7.8% and the excess return on WPO common stock was 1.1%.

Figure 6: Scatter Plot of WPO Excess Returns vs. S&P 500 Index Excess Returns



Notice that it appears that the two variables are positively correlated: excess WPO returns tended to be positive (negative) in the same month that S&P 500 excess returns were positive (negative). Note that this is not the case for all the observations, however (including, for example, May 2006). In fact, the correlation between the two is approximately 0.40.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

LOS 11.e: Explain the assumptions underlying linear regression, and interpret the regression coefficients.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 288

Linear regression requires a number of assumptions. As indicated in the following list, most of the major assumptions pertain to the regression model's residual term (ε).

- A linear relationship exists between the dependent and the independent variable.
- The independent variable is uncorrelated with the residuals.
- The expected value of the residual term is zero [$E(\varepsilon) = 0$].
- The variance of the residual term is constant for all observations $\left[E\left(\varepsilon_i^2\right) = \sigma_\varepsilon^2\right]$.
- The residual term is independently distributed; that is, the residual for one observation is not correlated with that of another observation $\left[E\left(\varepsilon_i \varepsilon_j\right) = 0, j \neq i\right]$.
- The residual term is normally distributed.

Simple Linear Regression Model

Professor's Note: We'll first calculate the regression coefficients and then interpret them. Note that the LOS does not ask you to calculate regression coefficients; we included that step so you can better understand the interpretation of the coefficients.

The following linear regression model is used to describe the relationship between two variables, *X* and *Y*:

$$Y_i = b_0 + b_1 X_i + \varepsilon_i,\ i=1, \ldots, n$$

where:
Y_i = *i*th observation of the dependent variable, Y
X_i = *i*th observation of the independent variable, X
b_0 = regression intercept term
b_1 = regression slope coefficient
ε_i = residual for the *i*th observation (also referred to as the disturbance term or error term)

Based on the regression model stated previously, the regression process estimates an equation for a line through a scatter plot of the data that "best" explains the observed values for *Y* in terms of the observed values for *X*.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

The linear equation, often called the line of best fit, or regression line, takes the following form:

$$\hat{Y}_i = \hat{b}_0 + \hat{b}_1 X_i,\ i=1, ..., n$$

where:
$\hat{Y}_i$ = estimated value of Y_i given X_i
$\hat{b}_0$ = estimated intercept term
$\hat{b}_1$ = estimated slope coefficient

Professor's Note: The hat "^" above a variable or parameter indicates a predicted value.

The regression line is just one of the many possible lines that can be drawn through the scatter plot of *X* and *Y*. In fact, the criteria used to estimate this line forms the very essence of linear regression. The regression line is the line for which the estimates of $\hat{b}_0$ and $\hat{b}_1$ are such that the sum of the squared differences (vertical distances) between the *Y*-values predicted by the regression equation ($\hat{Y}_i = \hat{b}_0 + \hat{b}_1 X_i$) and actual *Y*-values, Y_i, is minimized. The sum of the squared vertical distances between the estimated and actual *Y*-values is referred to as the **sum of squared errors** (SSE).

Thus, the regression line is the line that minimizes the SSE. This explains why simple linear regression is frequently referred to as *ordinary least squares* (OLS) regression, and the values estimated by the estimated regression equation, $\hat{Y}_i$, are called least squares estimates.

The estimated **slope coefficient** ($\hat{b}_1$) for the regression line describes the change in *Y* for a one unit change in *X*. It can be positive, negative, or zero, depending on the relationship between the regression variables. The slope term is calculated as:

$$\hat{b}_1 = \frac{cov_{XY}}{\sigma_X^2}$$

Professor's Note: For the exam, know that the slope equals covariance divided by variance.

The **intercept** term ($\hat{b}_0$) is the line's intersection with the *Y*-axis at X = 0. It can be positive, negative, or zero. A property of the least squares method is that the intercept term may be expressed as:

$$\hat{b}_0 = \overline{Y} - \hat{b}_1 \overline{X}$$

where:
$\overline{Y}$ = mean of Y
$\overline{X}$ = mean of X

The intercept equation highlights the fact that the regression line passes through a point with coordinates equal to the mean of the independent and dependent variables (i.e., the point $\overline{X}$, $\overline{Y}$).

Example: Computing the slope coefficient and intercept term

Compute the slope coefficient and intercept term for the WPO regression example using the following information:

$\text{cov}(\text{S\&P 500}, \text{WPO}) = 0.000336$ $\quad \overline{\text{S\&P 500}} = -2.70\%$

$\text{var}(\text{S\&P 500}) = 0.000522$ $\quad \overline{\text{WPO}} = -4.05\%$

Answer:

The slope coefficient is calculated as $\hat{b}_1 = 0.000336 / 0.000522 = 0.64$.

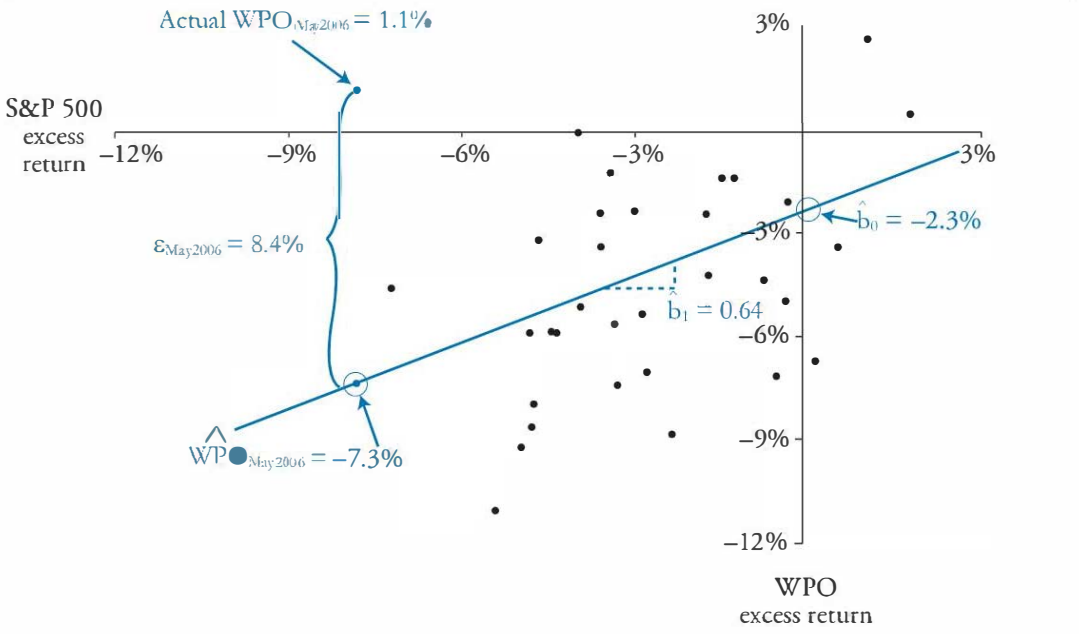
The intercept term is:

$$\hat{b}_0 = \overline{\text{WPO}} - \hat{b}_1 \overline{\text{S\&P 500}} = -4.05\% - 0.64(-2.70\%) = -2.3\%$$

The estimated regression line that minimizes the SSE in our WPO stock return example is shown in Figure 7.

This regression line has an intercept of –2.3% and a slope of 0.64. The model predicts that if the S&P 500 excess return is –7.8% (what it was in May 2006), then the WPO excess return would be –2.3% + (0.64)(–7.8%) = –7.3%. The residual for May 2006 is 8.4%, which is the difference between the actual WPO return (1.1%) and the predicted return (–7.3%).

Figure 7: Estimated Regression Equation for WPO vs. S&P 500



©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Interpreting a Regression Coefficient

The estimated intercept represents the value of the dependent variable at the point of intersection of the regression line and the axis of the dependent variable (usually the vertical axis). In other words, the intercept is an estimate of the dependent variable when the independent variable takes on a value of zero.

We also mentioned earlier that the estimated slope coefficient is interpreted as the change in the dependent variable for a 1-unit change in the independent variable. For example, an estimated slope coefficient of 2 would indicate that the dependent variable will change two units for every 1-unit change in the independent variable.

Example: Interpreting regression coefficients

In the WPO regression example, the estimated slope coefficient was 0.64 and the estimated intercept term was –2.3%. Interpret each coefficient estimate.

Answer:

The slope coefficient of 0.64 can be interpreted to mean that when excess S&P 500 returns increase (decrease) by 1%, WPO excess returns increase (decrease) by 0.64%.

The intercept term of –2.3% can be interpreted to mean that when the excess return on the S&P 500 is zero, the return on WPO stock is –2.3%.

Professor's Note: As we will discuss in Study Session 18, the slope coefficient in a regression like this is called the stock's beta, and it measures the relative amount of systematic risk in WPO's returns. Notice that WPO is less risky than average because its returns tend to increase or decrease by less than the change in the market returns. A stock with a beta of one would have an average level of systematic risk and a stock with a beta greater than one would have more than average systematic risk.

The intercept term in this regression is called the stock's ex-post alpha. It is a measure of excess risk-adjusted returns. A negative ex-post alpha means that WPO underperformed the S&P 500 on a risk-adjusted basis over the time period.

Keep in mind, however, that any conclusions regarding the importance of an independent variable in explaining a dependent variable require determining the statistical significance of the slope coefficient. Simply looking at the magnitude of the slope coefficient does not address the issue of the importance of the variable. A hypothesis test must be conducted, or a confidence interval must be formed, to assess the importance of the variable.

LOS 11.f: Calculate and interpret the standard error of estimate, the coefficient of determination, and a confidence interval for a regression coefficient.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 290

The **standard error of estimate** (SEE) measures the degree of variability of the actual *Y*-values relative to the estimated *Y*-values from a regression equation. The SEE gauges the "fit" of the regression line. *The smaller the standard error, the better the fit.*

The SEE is the standard deviation of the error terms in the regression. As such, SEE is also referred to as the standard error of the residual, or standard error of the regression.

Professor's Note: There are multiple terms for SEE and you can expect to see any of these on the exam. Standard error, when used in the context of the whole regression (as opposed to for an individual coefficient), also refers to SEE.

In some regressions, the relationship between the independent and dependent variables is very strong (e.g., the relationship between 10-year Treasury bond yields and mortgage rates). In other cases, the relationship is much weaker (e.g., the relationship between stock returns and inflation). SEE will be low (relative to total variability) if the relationship is very strong and high if the relationship is weak.

Coefficient of Determination (R^2)

The **coefficient of determination** (R^2) is defined as the percentage of the total variation in the dependent variable explained by the independent variable. For example, an R^2 of 0.63 indicates that the variation of the independent variable explains 63% of the variation in the dependent variable.

Professor's Note: For simple linear regression (i.e., one independent variable), the coefficient of determination, R^2, may be computed by simply squaring the correlation coefficient, r. In other words, $R^2 = r^2$, for a regression with one independent variable. This approach is not appropriate when more than one independent variable is used in the regression, as is the case with the multiple regression techniques presented in the next topic review.

We will show you how to calculate the SEE and the R^2 using an ANOVA table in LOS 11.i.

Regression Coefficient Confidence Interval

Hypothesis testing for a regression coefficient may use the confidence interval for the coefficient being tested. For instance, a frequently asked question is whether an estimated slope coefficient is statistically different from zero. In other words, the null hypothesis is H_0: $b_1 = 0$ and the alternative hypothesis is H_a: $b_1 \neq 0$. If the confidence interval at the desired level of significance does not include zero, the null is rejected, and the coefficient is said to be statistically different from zero.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

The confidence interval for the regression coefficient, b_1, is calculated as:

$$\hat{b}_1 \pm \left(t_c \times s_{\hat{b}_1}\right), \text{or} \left[\hat{b}_1 - \left(t_c \times s_{\hat{b}_1}\right) < b_1 < \hat{b}_1 + \left(t_c \times s_{\hat{b}_1}\right)\right]$$

In this expression, t_c is the critical two-tailed *t*-value for the selected confidence level with the appropriate number of degrees of freedom, which is equal to the number of sample observations minus 2 (i.e., n – 2).

The standard error of the regression coefficient is denoted as $s_{\hat{b}_1}$. It is a function of the SEE: as SEE rises, $s_{\hat{b}_1}$ also increases, and the confidence interval widens. This makes sense because SEE measures the variability of the data about the regression line, and the more variable the data, the less confidence there is in the regression model to estimate a coefficient.

Professor's Note: It is highly unlikely you will have to calculate $s_{\hat{b}_1}$ on the exam. It is included in the output of all statistical software packages and should be given to you if you need it.

Although the confidence interval for regression parameters looks slightly different than what you've seen at Level I, it is precisely the same concept. All confidence intervals take the predicted value, then add and subtract the critical test statistic multiplied by the variability of the parameter estimate.

Example: Calculating the confidence interval for a regression coefficient

The estimated slope coefficient, b_1, from the WPO regression is 0.64 with a standard error equal to 0.26. Assuming that the sample had 36 observations, calculate the 95% confidence interval for b_1.

Answer:

The confidence interval for b_1 is:

$$\hat{b}_1 \pm \left(t_c \times s_{\hat{b}_1}\right), \text{or} \left[\hat{b}_1 - \left(t_c \times s_{\hat{b}_1}\right) < b_1 < \hat{b}_1 + \left(t_c \times s_{\hat{b}_1}\right)\right]$$

The critical two-tail *t*-values are ± 2.03 (from the *t*-table with n – 2 = 34 degrees of freedom). We can compute the 95% confidence interval as:

$$0.64 \pm (2.03)(0.26) = 0.64 \pm 0.53 = 0.11 \text{ to } 1.17$$

Because this confidence interval does not include zero, we can conclude that the slope coefficient is significantly different from zero.

LOS 11.g: Formulate a null and alternative hypothesis about a population value of a regression coefficient, and determine the appropriate test statistic and whether the null hypothesis is rejected at a given level of significance.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 294

A *t*-test may also be used to test the hypothesis that the true slope coefficient, b_1, is equal to some hypothesized value. Letting $\hat{b}_1$ be the point estimate for b_1, the appropriate test statistic with n – 2 degrees of freedom is:

$$t_{b_1} = \frac{\hat{b}_1 - b_1}{s_{\hat{b}_1}}$$

The decision rule for tests of significance for regression coefficients is:

Reject H_0 if $t > +t_{critical}$ or $t < -t_{critical}$

Rejection of the null means that the slope coefficient is *different* from the hypothesized value of b_1.

To test whether an independent variable explains the variation in the dependent variable (i.e., it is statistically significant), the hypothesis that is tested is whether the true slope is zero ($b_1 = 0$). The appropriate test structure for the null and alternative hypotheses is:

$H_0: b_1 = 0$ versus $H_a: b_1 \neq 0$

Example: Hypothesis test for significance of regression coefficients

The estimated slope coefficient from the WPO example is 0.64 with a standard error equal to 0.26. Assuming that the sample has 36 observations, determine if the estimated slope coefficient is significantly different than zero at a 5% level of significance.

Answer:

The calculated test statistic is $t = \frac{\hat{b}_1 - b_1}{s_{\hat{b}_1}} = \frac{0.64 - 0}{0.26} = 2.46$.

The critical two-tailed *t*-values are ± 2.03 (from the *t*-table with df = 36 – 2 = 34). Because $t > t_{critical}$ (i.e., 2.46 > 2.03), we reject the null hypothesis and conclude that the slope is different from zero. Note that the *t*-test and the confidence interval lead to the same conclusion to reject the null hypothesis and conclude that the slope coefficient is statistically significant.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

LOS 11.h: Calculate a predicted value for the dependent variable, given an estimated regression model and a value for the independent variable, and calculate and interpret a confidence interval for the predicted value of a dependent variable.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 294

Predicted values are values of the dependent variable based on the estimated regression coefficients and a prediction about the value of the independent variable. They are the values that are *predicted* by the regression equation, given an estimate of the independent variable.

For a simple regression, the predicted (or forecast) value of Y is:

$$\hat{Y} = \hat{b}_0 + \hat{b}_1 X_p$$

where:
$\hat{Y}$ = predicted value of the dependent variable
X_p = forecasted value of the independent variable

Example: Predicting the dependent variable

Given the WPO regression equation:

$$\widehat{WPO} = -2.3\% + (0.64)\ (\widehat{S\&P\ 500})$$

Calculate the predicted value of WPO excess returns if forecasted S&P 500 excess returns are 10%.

Answer:

The predicted value for WPO excess returns is determined as follows:

$$\widehat{WPO} = -2.3\% + (0.64)(10\%) = 4.1\%$$

Confidence Intervals for Predicted Values

Confidence intervals for the predicted value of a dependent variable are calculated in a manner similar to the confidence interval for the regression coefficients. The equation for the confidence interval for a predicted value of Y is:

$$\hat{Y} \pm (t_c \times s_f) \Rightarrow \left[\hat{Y} - (t_c \times s_f) < Y < \hat{Y} + (t_c \times s_f)\right]$$

where:
t_c = two-tailed critical t-value at the desired level of significance with df = n – 2
s_f = standard error of the forecast

The challenge with computing a confidence interval for a predicted value is calculating s_f. It's highly unlikely that you will have to calculate the standard error of the forecast

(it will probably be provided if you need to compute a confidence interval for the dependent variable). However, if you do need to calculate s_f, it can be done with the following formula for the variance of the forecast:

$$s_f^2 = SEE^2\left[1 + \frac{1}{n} + \frac{(X - \bar{X})^2}{(n-1)s_x^2}\right]$$

where:
SEE^2 = variance of the residuals = the square of the standard error of estimate
s_x^2 = variance of the independent variable
X = value of the independent variable for which the forecast was made

Example: Confidence interval for a predicted value

Calculate a 95% prediction interval on the predicted value of WPO excess returns from the previous example. Assume the standard error of the forecast is 3.67, and the forecasted value of S&P 500 excess returns is 10%.

Answer:

The predicted value for WPO excess returns is:

$$\widehat{WPO} = -2.3\% + (0.64)(10\%) = 4.1\%$$

The 5% two-tailed critical *t*-value with 34 degrees of freedom is 2.03. The prediction interval at the 95% confidence level is:

$$\widehat{WPO} \pm (t_c \times s_f) \Rightarrow \left[4.1\% \pm (2.03 \times 3.67\%)\right] = 4.1\% \pm 7.5\%$$

or

$$-3.4\% \text{ to } 11.6\%$$

This range can be interpreted as, given a forecasted value for S&P 500 excess returns of 10%, we can be 95% confident that the WPO excess returns will be between −3.4% and 11.6%.

LOS 11.i: Describe the use of analysis of variance (ANOVA) in regression analysis, interpret ANOVA results, and calculate and interpret an *F*-statistic.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 302

Analysis of variance (ANOVA) is a statistical procedure for analyzing the total variability of the dependent variable. Let's define some terms before we move on to ANOVA tables.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

- **Total sum of squares** (SST) *measures the total variation* in the dependent variable. SST is equal to the sum of the squared differences between the actual *Y*-values and the mean of *Y*:

$$SST = \sum_{i=1}^{n}(Y_i - \overline{Y})^2$$

Professor's Note: This is not the same as variance. Variance (of the dependent variable) = SST / (n – 1).

- **Regression sum of squares** (RSS) *measures the variation in the dependent variable that is explained by the independent variable.* RSS is the sum of the squared distances between the predicted *Y*-values and the mean of *Y*.

$$RSS = \sum_{i=1}^{n}(\hat{Y}_i - \overline{Y})^2$$

- **Sum of squared errors** (SSE) *measures the unexplained variation* in the dependent variable. It's also known as the sum of squared residuals or the residual sum of squares. SSE is the sum of the squared vertical distances between the actual *Y*-values and the predicted *Y*-values on the regression line.

$$SSE = \sum_{i=1}^{n}(Y_i - \hat{Y}_i)^2$$

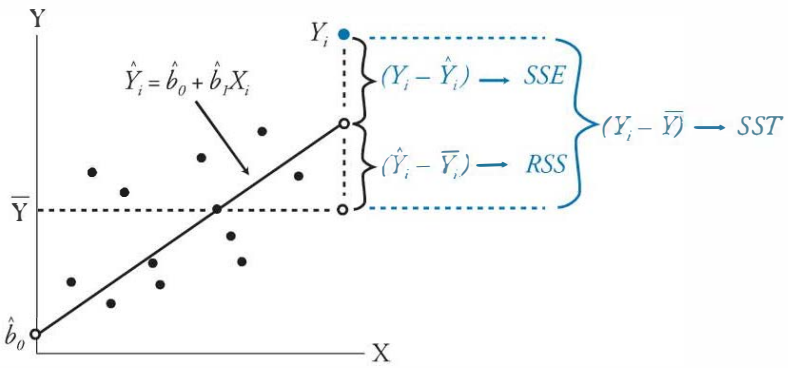
Professor's Note: You don't have to memorize the formulas for the sums of squares. You do need to know what they measure and how you use them to construct an ANOVA table.

Thus, total variation = explained variation + unexplained variation, or:

SST = RSS + SSE

Figure 8 illustrates how the total variation in the dependent variable (SST) is composed of RSS and SSE.

Figure 8: Components of the Total Variation



The output of the ANOVA procedure is an ANOVA table, which is a summary of the variation in the dependent variable. ANOVA tables are included in the regression output of many statistical software packages. You can think of the ANOVA table as the source of the data for the computation of many of the regression concepts discussed in this topic review. A generic ANOVA table for a simple linear regression (one independent variable) is presented in Figure 9.

Figure 9: ANOVA Table

Source of Variation	*Degrees of Freedom*	*Sum of Squares*	*Mean Sum of Squares*
Regression (explained)	1	RSS	$MSR = \frac{RSS}{k} = \frac{RSS}{1} = RSS$
Error (unexplained)	n – 2	SSE	$MSE = \frac{SSE}{n-2}$
Total	n – 1	SST	

Professor's Note: k *is the number of slope parameters estimated and* n *is the number of observations. In general, the regression df = k and the error df = (n – k – 1). Because we are limited to simple linear regressions in this topic review (one independent variable), we use k = 1 for the regression df and n – 1 – 1 = n – 2 for the error df.*

The mean regression sum of squares (MSR) and mean squared error (MSE) are simply calculated as the appropriate sum of squares divided by its degrees of freedom.

Calculating R^2 and SEE

The R^2 and the standard error of estimate (SEE) can also be calculated directly from the ANOVA table as we discussed in LOS 11.f. The R^2 is the percentage of the total variation in the dependent variable explained by the independent variable:

$$R^2 = \frac{\text{total variation (SST)} - \text{unexplained variation (SSE)}}{\text{total variation (SST)}}$$

$$= \frac{\text{explained variation (RSS)}}{\text{total variation (SST)}}$$

The SEE is the standard deviation of the regression error terms and is equal to the square root of the mean squared error (MSE):

$$SEE = \sqrt{MSE} = \sqrt{\frac{SSE}{n-2}}$$

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Professor's Note: Make sure you recognize the distinction between the sum of squared errors (SSE) and the standard error of estimate (SEE). SSE is the sum of the squared residuals, while SEE is the standard deviation of the residuals.

Example: Using the ANOVA table

Complete the ANOVA table for the WPO regression example and calculate the R^2 and the standard error of estimate (SEE).

Partial ANOVA Table for WPO Regression Example

Source of Variation	*Degrees of Freedom*	*Sum of Squares*	*Mean Sum of Squares*
Regression (explained)	?	0.00756	?
Error (unexplained)	?	0.04064	?
Total	?	?	

Answer:

Recall that the data included three years of monthly return observations, so the total number of observations (n) is 36.

Completed ANOVA Table for WPO Regression Example

Source of Variation	*Degrees of Freedom*	*Sum of Squares*	*Mean Sum of Squares*
Regression (explained)	1	0.0076	0.0076
Error (unexplained)	34	0.0406	0.0012
Total	35	0.0482	

$$R^2 = \frac{\text{explained variation (RSS)}}{\text{total variation (SST)}} = \frac{0.0076}{0.0482} = 0.158$$

$$SEE = \sqrt{MSE} = \sqrt{0.0012} = 0.035$$

The *F*-Statistic

An *F*-test assesses how well a set of independent variables, as a group, explains the variation in the dependent variable. In multiple regression, the *F*-statistic is used to test whether *at least one* independent variable in a set of independent variables explains a significant portion of the variation of the dependent variable. We will discuss the use of the *F*-test in multiple regression with more than one independent variable in the next topic review.

The *F*-statistic is calculated as:

$$F = \frac{MSR}{MSE} = \frac{RSS/k}{SSE/(n-k-1)}$$

where:
MSR = mean regression sum of squares
MSE = mean squared error

Important: This is always a one-tailed test!

In multiple regression, the *F*-statistic tests *all* independent variables as a group.

The *F*-Statistic With One Independent Variable

For simple linear regression, there is only one independent variable, so the *F*-test tests the same hypothesis as the *t*-test for statistical significance of the slope coefficient:

$$H_0: b_1 = 0 \text{ versus } H_a: b_1 \neq 0$$

To determine whether b_1 is statistically significant using the *F*-test, the calculated *F*-statistic is compared with the critical *F*-value, F_c, at the appropriate level of significance. The degrees of freedom for the numerator and denominator with one independent variable are:

$$df_{numerator} = k = 1$$

$$df_{denominator} = n - k - 1 = n - 2$$

where:
n = number of observations

The decision rule for the *F*-test is:

Decision rule: reject H_0 if $F > F_c$

Rejection of the null hypothesis at a stated level of significance indicates that the independent variable is significantly different than zero, which is interpreted to mean that it makes a significant contribution to the explanation of the dependent variable. In simple linear regression, it tells us the same thing as the *t*-test of the slope coefficient (t_{b_1}). In fact, in simple linear regression with one independent variable, $F = t_{b_1}^2$.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Example: Calculating and interpreting the *F*-statistic

Use the completed ANOVA table from the previous example to calculate and interpret the *F*-statistic. Test the null hypothesis at the 5% significance level that the slope coefficient is equal to 0.

Answer:

$$F = \frac{MSR}{MSE} = \frac{0.0076}{0.0012} = 6.33$$

$$df_{numerator} = k = 1$$

$$df_{denominator} = n - k - 1 = 36 - 1 - 1 = 34$$

The null and alternative hypotheses are: H_0: $b_1 = 0$ versus H_a: $b_1 \neq 0$. The critical *F*-value for 1 and 34 degrees of freedom at a 5% significance level is approximately 4.1. Remember, it's a one-tail test, so we use the 5% *F*-table! Therefore, we can reject the null hypothesis and conclude that the slope coefficient is significantly different than zero. Recall from the earlier examples that we also rejected the null hypothesis using the *t*-statistic and that the 95% confidence interval did not include 0. Note that here, $t^2 = 2.46^2 \approx F = 6.33$. The difference is due to rounding of the *t*-statistic to two decimal places.

Professor's Note: The bottom line is that the F-test is not as useful when we only have one independent variable because it tells us the same thing as the t-test of the slope coefficient. Make sure you know that fact for the exam, and then concentrate on the application of the F-test in multiple regression.

LOS 11.j: Explain limitations of regression analysis.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 307

Limitations of regression analysis include the following:

- Linear relationships can change over time. This means that the estimation equation based on data from a specific time period may not be relevant for forecasts or predictions in another time period. This is referred to as *parameter instability*.
- Even if the regression model accurately reflects the historical relationship between the two variables, its usefulness in investment analysis will be limited if other market participants are also aware of and act on this evidence.
- If the assumptions underlying regression analysis do not hold, the interpretation and tests of hypotheses may not be valid. For example, if the data is *heteroskedastic* (non-constant variance of the error terms) or exhibits *autocorrelation* (error terms are not independent), regression results may be invalid. We will discuss these issues in more detail in the next topic review.

KEY CONCEPTS

LOS 11.a

A scatter plot is a collection of points on a graph where each point represents the values of two variables (i.e., an X/Y pair).

The sample covariance, cov_{XY}, measures the linear relationship between two random variables and is calculated as $\frac{\sum_{i=1}^{N}(X_i - \bar{X})(Y_i - \bar{Y})}{n-1}$.

Sample correlation is a measure of the relationship between two variables:

$$r_{XY} = \frac{cov_{XY}}{(s_X)(s_Y)}, \text{ which takes on values from } -1.0 \text{ to } +1.0$$

LOS 11.b

There are three limitations of correlation analysis.

- Outliers, or values that are unusually large or small, may influence the results of regression and the estimate of the correlation coefficient.
- Spurious correlation means that there may appear to be a relationship between two variables when, in fact, there is none.
- Correlation only measures linear relationships, but not nonlinear ones.

LOS 11.c

A *t*-test is used to determine if a correlation coefficient, *r*, is statistically significant:

$$t = \frac{r\sqrt{n-2}}{\sqrt{1-r^2}}$$

Significance is supported if the test statistic is less than $-t_{critical}$ or greater than $t_{critical}$ with n – 2 degrees of freedom.

LOS 11.d

Linear regression provides an estimate of the linear relationship between an independent variable (the explanatory variable) and a dependent variable (the predicted variable).

The general form of a simple linear regression model is $Y_i = b_0 + b_1X_i + \varepsilon_i$.

- Y_i and X_i are the *i*th observations of the dependent and independent variable, respectively.
- b_0 = intercept.
- b_1 = slope coefficient.
- ε_i = residual error for the *i*th observation.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

LOS 11.e

Assumptions made with simple linear regression include:

- A linear relationship exists between the dependent and the independent variable.
- The independent variable is uncorrelated with the residuals.
- The expected value of the residual term is zero [$E(\varepsilon) = 0$].
- The variance of the residual term is constant for all observations $\left[E\left(\varepsilon_i^2\right) = \sigma_\varepsilon^2\right]$.
- The residual term is independently distributed; that is, the residual for one observation is not correlated with that of another observation $\left[E\left(\varepsilon_i \varepsilon_j\right) = 0, j \neq i\right]$.

The estimated intercept, $\hat{b}_0$, represents the value of the dependent variable at the point of intersection of the regression line and the axis of the dependent variable (usually the vertical axis). The estimated slope coefficient, $\hat{b}_1$, is interpreted as the change in the dependent variable for a 1-unit change in the independent variable.

LOS 11.f

The confidence interval for the regression coefficient, b_1, is calculated as:

$$\hat{b}_1 \pm \left(t_c \times s_{\hat{b}_1}\right), \text{or } \left[\hat{b}_1 - \left(t_c \times s_{\hat{b}_1}\right) < b_1 < \hat{b}_1 + \left(t_c \times s_{\hat{b}_1}\right)\right]$$

LOS 11.g

A *t*-test with $n - 2$ degrees of freedom is used to conduct hypothesis tests of the estimated regression parameters:

$$t = \frac{\hat{b}_1 - b_1}{s_{\hat{b}_1}}$$

LOS 11.h

A predicted value of the dependent variable, $\hat{Y}$, is determined by inserting the predicted value of the independent variable, X_p, in the regression equation and calculating $\hat{Y}_p = \hat{b}_0 + \hat{b}_1 X_p$.

The confidence interval for a predicted *Y*-value is $\left[\hat{Y} - \left(t_c \times s_f\right) < Y < \hat{Y} + \left(t_c \times s_f\right)\right]$, where s_f is the standard error of the forecast.

LOS 11.i

ANOVA Table for Simple Linear Regression ($k = 1$)

Source of Variation	*Degrees of Freedom*	*Sum of Squares*	*Mean Sum of Squares*
Regression (explained)	1	RSS	$MSR = \frac{RSS}{k} = \frac{RSS}{1} = RSS$
Error (unexplained)	$n - 2$	SSE	$MSE = \frac{SSE}{n-2}$
Total	$n - 1$	SST	

The standard error of the estimate in a simple linear regression is calculated as:

$$SEE = \sqrt{\frac{SSE}{n-2}}$$

The coefficient of determination, R^2, is the proportion of the total variation of the dependent variable explained by the regression:

$$R^2 = \frac{RSS}{SST} = \frac{SST - SSE}{SST}$$

In multiple regression (next topic review) the *F*-test tests the statistical significance of all of the independent variables.

In simple linear regression, because there is only one independent variable (k = 1), the *F*-test tests the same null hypothesis as testing the statistical significance of b_1, using the *t*-test: $H_0: b_1 = 0$ versus $H_a: b_1 \neq 0$. With only one independent variable, *F* is calculated as:

$$F\text{-stat} = \frac{MSR}{MSE} \text{ with 1 and } n-2 \text{ degrees of freedom}$$

In fact, in simple linear regression, $F = t_{b_1}^2$.

LOS 11.j

The limitations of regression analysis include the following:

- Parameter instability (especially when dealing with economic and financial variables).
- The limited usefulness of regression models in identifying profitable investment strategies based on publicly available information.
- The possibility of violating the assumptions underlying regression analysis (heteroskedasticity and autocorrelation).

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

CONCEPT CHECKERS

Use the following data to answer Questions 1 through 3.

An analyst is interested in predicting annual sales for XYZ Company, a maker of paper products. The following table reports a regression of the annual sales for XYZ against paper product industry sales.

Regression Output

Parameters	*Coefficient*	*Standard Error of the Coefficient*
Intercept	–94.88	32.97
Slope (industry sales)	0.2796	0.0363

The correlation between company and industry sales is 0.9757. The regression was based on five observations.

1. Which of the following is *closest* to the value and reports the *most likely* interpretation of the R^2 for this regression? The R^2 is:
   A. 0.048, indicating that the variability of industry sales explains about 4.8% of the variability of company sales.
   B. 0.952, indicating that the variability of industry sales explains about 95.2% of the variability of company sales.
   C. 0.952, indicating that the variability of company sales explains about 95.2% of the variability of industry sales.

2. Based on the regression results, XYZ Company's market share of any increase in industry sales is expected to be *closest* to:
   A. 4%.
   B. 28%.
   C. 45%.

3. The analyst determines that the *t*-statistic is 7.72 and that the correlation coefficient is not significant (using 95% confidence). Is the analyst correct?
   A. Yes.
   B. No, because the test statistic is 60.93.
   C. No, because the correlation coefficient is significantly different from zero (using 95% confidence).

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Use the following information to answer Questions 4 and 5.

A study was conducted by the British Department of Transportation to estimate urban travel time between locations in London, England. Data was collected for motorcycles and passenger cars. Simple linear regression was conducted using data sets for both types of vehicles, where Y = urban travel time in minutes and X = distance between locations in kilometers. The following results were obtained:

Regression Results for Travel Times Between Distances in London

Passenger cars:	$\hat{Y} = 1.85 + 3.86X$	$R^2 = 0.758$
Motorcycles:	$\hat{Y} = 2.50 + 1.93X$	$R^2 = 0.676$

4. The estimated increase in travel time for a motorcycle commuter planning to move 8 km farther from his workplace in London is *closest* to:
   A. 31 minutes.
   B. 15 minutes.
   C. 0.154 hours.

5. Based on the regression results, which model is more reliable?
   A. The passenger car model because 3.86 > 1.93.
   B. The motorcycle model because 1.93 < 3.86.
   C. The passenger car model because 0.758 > 0.676.

6. Which of the following is not a necessary assumption of simple linear regression analysis?
   A. The residuals are normally distributed.
   B. There is a constant variance of the error term.
   C. The dependent variable is uncorrelated with the residuals.

7. Which of the following statements regarding simple linear regression is *most accurate*?
   A. If the units of the independent variable are tons instead of pounds, the estimated slope coefficient will be 2,000 times larger.
   B. If the slope of the regression line is +1, the variables are perfectly positively correlated.
   C. If a researcher knows the sum of squared errors, the number of observations, and the standard error of estimate, he can calculate the coefficient of determination for the regression.

8. What is the *most appropriate* interpretation of a slope coefficient estimate equal to 10.0?
   A. The predicted value of the dependent variable when the independent variable is zero is 10.0.
   B. For every one unit change in the independent variable, the model predicts that the dependent variable will change by 10 units.
   C. For every one unit change in the independent variable, the model predicts that the dependent variable will change by 0.1 units.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

9. What is the appropriate alternative hypothesis to test the statistical significance of the intercept term in the following regression?

$$Y = a_1 + a_2(X) + \varepsilon$$

A. $H_A: a_1 \neq 0$.
B. $H_A: a_1 > 0$.
C. $H_A: a_2 \neq 0$.

10. Consider the following statement: In a simple linear regression, the appropriate degrees of freedom for the critical *t*-value used to calculate a confidence interval around both a parameter estimate and a predicted Y-value is the same as the number of observations minus two. The statement is:
A. justified.
B. not justified, because the appropriate of degrees of freedom used to calculate a confidence interval around a parameter estimate is the number of observations.
C. not justified, because the appropriate of degrees of freedom used to calculate a confidence interval around a predicted Y-value is the number of observations.

11. The variation in the dependent variable explained by the independent variable is measured by the:
A. mean squared error.
B. sum of squared errors.
C. regression sum of squares.

CHALLENGE PROBLEMS

Use the following information for Questions 12 through 17.

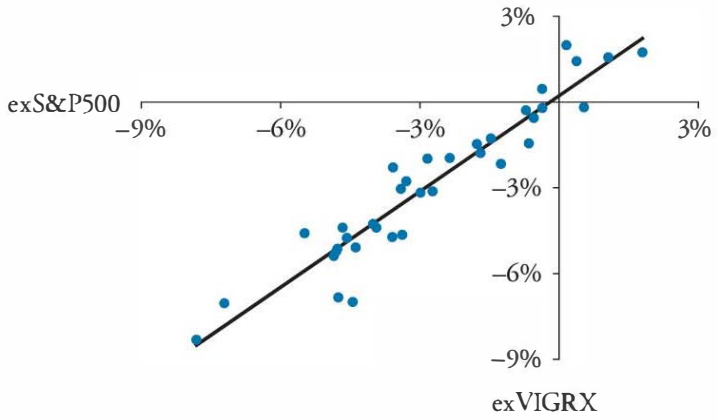
Bill Coldplay, CFA, is analyzing the performance of the Vanguard Growth Index Fund (VIGRX) over the past three years. The fund employs a passive management investment approach designed to track the performance of the MSCI US Prime Market Growth index, a broadly diversified index of growth stocks of large U.S. companies.

Coldplay estimates a regression using excess monthly returns on VIGRX (exVIGRX) as the dependent variable and excess monthly returns on the S&P 500 Index (exS&P500) as the independent variable. The data are expressed in decimal terms (e.g., 0.03, not 3%).

$$exVIGRX_t = b_0 + b_1(exS\&P500_t) + \varepsilon_t$$

A scatter plot of excess returns for both return series from June 2004 to May 2007 are shown in the following figure.

Analysis of Large-Cap Growth Fund



Results from that analysis are presented in the following figures.

Estimated Coefficients

Coefficient	*Coefficient Estimate*	*Standard Error*
b_0	0.0023	0.0022
b_1	1.1163	0.0624

Partial ANOVA Table

Source of Variation	*Sum of Squares*
Regression (explained)	0.0228
Error (unexplained)	0.0024

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

12. The 90% confidence interval for b_0 is *closest* to:
A. –0.0014 to +0.0060.
B. –0.0006 to +0.0052.
C. +0.0001 to +0.0045.

13. Are the intercept term and the slope coefficient statistically significantly different from zero at the 5% significance level?

	Intercept term significant?	Slope coefficient significant?
A.	Yes	Yes
B.	Yes	No
C.	No	Yes

14. Coldplay would like to test the following hypothesis: H_0: $b_1 \leq 1$ versus H_1: $b_1 > 1$ at the 1% significance level. The calculated *t*-statistic and the appropriate conclusion are:

	Calculated *t*-statistic	Appropriate conclusion
A.	1.86	Reject H_0
B.	1.86	Fail to reject H_0
C.	2.44	Reject H_0

15. Coldplay forecasts the excess return on the S&P 500 for June 2007 to be 5% and the 95% confidence interval for the predicted value of the excess return on VIGRX for June 2007 to be 3.9% to 7.7%. The standard error of the forecast is *closest* to:
A. 0.0080.
B. 0.0093.
C. 0.0111.

16. The R^2 from the regression is *closest* to:
A. 0.095.
B. 0.295.
C. 0.905.

17. The standard error of estimate (SEE) is *closest* to:
A. 0.008.
B. 0.014.
C. 0.049.

18. Which of the following statements *least accurately* describes a limitation of correlation analysis?
A. Outliers may influence the results of regression.
B. Serial correlation means that there may appear to be a relationship between two or more variables when, in fact, there is none.
C. Correlation only measures linear relationships, but not nonlinear ones.

19. Regression analysis is *least likely* to be limited by:
A. parameter instability.
B. insufficient data.
C. violations of the assumptions underlying regression analysis.

20. Carla Preusser finds that the total assets under management by a popular hedge fund manager, and the number of lizards lying out in the sun in a nearby park, can be modeled as functions of time: $f(t) = t^{1.8}$ and $f(t) = t + 5$, respectively. The correlation between the two models is 0.98. Two potential problems with using the lizards to predict total assets include:

A. spurious correlation and the non-linear relationship in the total assets function.
B. spurious correlation and the non-geometric relationship in the lizard function.
C. outliers and non-linear relationship in the total assets function.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

ANSWERS – CONCEPT CHECKERS

1. B The R^2 is computed as the correlation squared: $(0.9757)^2 = 0.952$.

   The interpretation of this R^2 is that 95.2% of the variation in Company XYZ's sales is explained by the variation in industry sales. Answer C is incorrect because it is the independent variable (industry sales) that explains the variation in the dependent variable (company sales). This interpretation is based on the economic reasoning used in constructing the regression model.

2. B The slope coefficient of 0.2796 indicates that a $1 million increase in industry sales will result in an increase in firm sales of approximately 28% ($279,600) of that amount.

3. C The test of significance for the correlation coefficient is evaluated using the following *t*-statistic:

$$t = \frac{r\sqrt{n-2}}{\sqrt{1-r^2}} = \frac{0.9757\sqrt{3}}{\sqrt{1-0.952}} = \frac{1.69}{0.219} = 7.72$$

   From the *t*-table, we find that with df = 3 and 95% significance, the two-tailed critical *t*-values are ±3.182 (recall that for the *t*-test the degrees of freedom = n – 2). Because the computed *t* is greater than +3.182, the correlation coefficient is significantly different from zero.

4. B The slope coefficient is 1.93, indicating that each additional kilometer increases travel time by 1.93 minutes:

   $1.93 \times 8 = 15.44$

5. C The higher R^2 for the passenger car model indicates that regression results are more reliable. Distance is a better predictor of travel time for cars. Perhaps the aggressiveness of the driver is a bigger factor in travel time for motorcycles than it is for autos.

6. C The model does not assume that the dependent variable is uncorrelated with the residuals. It does assume that the independent variable is uncorrelated with the residuals.

7. A If the independent variable is in pounds, the interpretation of the slope coefficient is the change in the dependent variable for a one pound change in the independent variable. If the independent variable is measured in tons (2,000 pounds) the slope coefficient is interpreted as the change in the dependent variable for a 2,000 pound change in the independent variable, which will be 2,000 times larger. The slope of the regression line is not a function of the correlation between the two variables. The researcher would need to know either the regression sum of squares or the total sum of squares, along with the sum of squared errors, in order to calculate the coefficient of determination.

8. B The slope coefficient is best interpreted as the predicted change in the dependent variable for a 1-unit change in the independent variable. If the slope coefficient estimate is 10.0 and the independent variable changes by one unit, the dependent variable will change by 10 units. The intercept term is best interpreted as the value of the dependent variable when the independent variable is equal to zero.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

9. A In this regression, a_1 is the intercept term. To test the statistical significance means to test the null hypothesis that a_1 is equal to zero versus the alternative that it is not equal to zero.

10. A In simple linear regression, the appropriate degrees of freedom for both confidence intervals is the number of observations in the sample (n) minus two.

11. C The regression sum of squares measures the variation in the dependent variable explained by the independent variable (i.e., the explained variation). The sum of squared errors measures the variation in the dependent variable NOT explained by the independent variable. The mean squared error is equal to the sum of squared errors divided by its degrees of freedom.

ANSWERS – CHALLENGE PROBLEMS

12. A Note that there are 36 monthly observations from June 2004 to May 2007, so n = 36. The critical two-tailed 10% *t*-value with 34 (n – 2 = 36 – 2 = 34) degrees of freedom is approximately 1.69. Therefore, the 90% confidence interval for b_0 (the intercept term) is 0.0023 +/– (0.0022)(1.69), or –0.0014 to +0.0060.

13. C The critical two-tailed 5% *t*-value with 34 degrees of freedom is approximately 2.03. The calculated *t*-statistics for the intercept term and slope coefficient are, respectively, 0.0023 / 0.0022 = 1.05 and 1.1163 / 0.0624 = 17.9. Therefore, the intercept term is not statistically different from zero at the 5% significance level, while the slope coefficient is.

14. B Notice that this is a one-tailed test. The critical one-tailed 1% *t*-value with 34 degrees of freedom is approximately 2.44. The calculated *t*-statistic for the slope coefficient is (1.1163 – 1) / 0.0624 = 1.86. Therefore, the slope coefficient is not statistically different from one at the 1% significance level and Coldplay should fail to reject the null hypothesis.

15. B This is a tricky question because you are given the confidence interval and its midpoint and asked to solve for the standard error of the forecast (s_f). Remember to also convert the percentages to decimals. The critical two-tailed 5% *t*-value with 34 degrees of freedom is approximately 2.03. The midpoint, or predicted value is 0.0023 +1.1163 × 0.05 = 0.058. Therefore, 0.058 +/– (2.03)(s_f) is equivalent to 0.039 to 0.077 and solving for s_f yields s_f = 0.0093.

16. C SST is equal to the sum of RSS and SSE: 0.0228 + 0.0024 = 0.0252. R^2 = RSS / SST = 0.0228 / 0.0252 = 0.905.

17. A Because n = 36, and the degrees of freedom for the sum of squared errors (SSE) is n – 2 in simple linear regression, the degrees of freedom for SSE is 34, and the mean squared error is SSE / 34. The standard error of estimate (SEE) is equal to the square root of the mean squared error:

$$\text{SEE} = \sqrt{\frac{0.0024}{34}} = 0.008$$

18. B The appearance of a relationship between two variables when there is none is spurious correlation. Outliers may influence the results of regression and the estimate of the correlation coefficient. Correlation only measures linear relationships properly.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

19. B The insufficient availability of data is not likely to be much of a limitation for most financial and economic models; usually an abundance of data is available. The other choices are limitations of regression analysis.

20. A There is little to no chance that the relationship between total assets under management and lizards in a park is other than a coincidence. The correlation is spurious. The non-linear relationship in the total assets function makes correlation a poor choice of measure.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

The following is a review of the Quantitative Methods for Valuation principles designed to address the learning outcome statements set forth by CFA Institute. This topic is also covered in:

Multiple Regression and Issues in Regression Analysis

Study Session 3

Exam Focus

Multiple regression is the centerpiece of the quantitative methods topic at Level II. It is a useful analysis tool that shows up throughout the Level II curriculum. Multiple regression is especially important for multifactor models in Study Sessions 10 (Equity), and 18 (Portfolio Management). It should be considered as highly probable to appear on the exam.

You should know how to use a t-test to assess the significance of the individual regression parameters and an *F*-test to assess the effectiveness of the model as a whole in explaining the dependent variable. You should understand the effect that heteroskedasticity, serial correlation, and multicollinearity have on regression results. Also be able to identify the common model misspecifications.

Focus on interpretation of the regression equation and the test statistics. Remember that most of the test and descriptive statistics discussed (e.g., *t*-stat, *F*-stat, and R^2) are provided in the output of statistical software. Hence, application and interpretation of these measurements are more likely than actual computations on the exam.

Warm-Up: Multiple Regression Basics

Multiple regression is regression analysis with more than one independent variable. It is used to quantify the influence of two or more independent variables on a dependent variable. For instance, simple (or univariate) linear regression explains the variation in stock returns in terms of the variation in systematic risk as measured by beta. With multiple regression, stock returns can be regressed against beta and against additional variables, such as firm size, equity, and industry classification, that might influence returns.

The general multiple linear regression model is:

$$Y_i = b_0 + b_1X_{1i} + b_2X_{2i} + \ldots + b_kX_{ki} + \varepsilon_i$$

where:

Y_i = *i*th observation of the dependent variable Y, i = 1, 2, …, n
X_j = independent variables, j = 1, 2, …, k
X_{ji} = *i*th observation of the *j*th independent variable
b_0 = intercept term
b_j = slope coefficient for each of the independent variables
ε_i = error term for the *i*th observation
n = number of observations
k = number of independent variables

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

The multiple regression methodology estimates the intercept and slope coefficients such that the sum of the squared error terms, $\sum_{i=1}^{n} \varepsilon_i^2$, is minimized. The result of this procedure is the following regression equation:

$$\hat{Y}_i = \hat{b}_0 + \hat{b}_1 X_{1i} + \hat{b}_2 X_{2i} + \ldots + \hat{b}_k X_{ki}$$

where the "^" indicates an estimate for the corresponding regression coefficient

The residual, $\hat{\varepsilon}_i$, is the difference between the observed value, Y_i, and the predicted value from the regression, $\hat{Y}_i$:

$$\hat{\varepsilon}_i = Y_i - \hat{Y}_i = Y_i - \left(\hat{b}_0 + \hat{b}_1 X_{1i} + \hat{b}_2 X_{2i} + \ldots + \hat{b}_k X_{ki}\right)$$

LOS 12.a: Formulate a multiple regression equation to describe the relation between a dependent variable and several independent variables, determine the statistical significance of each independent variable, and interpret the estimated coefficients and their *p*-values.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 330

Professor's Note: Testing the statistical significance of the regression coefficients means conducting a t*-test with a null hypothesis that the regression coefficient is equal to zero. Rather than cover that concept here, even though it is mentioned in LOS 12.a, we will cover it in detail in LOS 12.b as part of our general discussion of hypothesis testing. We will also defer a discussion of* p*-values to LOS 12.b.*

Let's illustrate multiple regression using research by Arnott and Asness (2003).[1] As part of their research, the authors test the hypothesis that future 10-year real earnings growth in the S&P 500 (EG10) can be explained by the trailing dividend payout ratio of the stocks in the index (PR) and the yield curve slope (YCS). YCS is calculated as the difference between the 10-year T-bond yield and the 3-month T-bill yield at the start of the period. All three variables are measured in percent.

Formulating the Multiple Regression Equation

The authors formulate the following regression equation using annual data (46 observations):

$$EG10 = b_0 + b_1 PR + b_2 YCS + \varepsilon$$

The results of this regression are shown in Figure 1.

1. Arnott, Robert D., and Clifford S. Asness. 2003. "Surprise! Higher Dividends = Higher Earnings Growth." *Financial Analysts Journal*, vol. 59, no. 1 (January/February): 70–87.

Figure 1: Coefficient and Standard Error Estimates for Regression of EG10 on PR and YCS

	Coefficient	*Standard Error*
Intercept	–11.6%	1.657%
PR	0.25	0.032
YCS	0.14	0.280

Interpreting the Multiple Regression Results

The interpretation of the estimated regression coefficients from a multiple regression is the same as in simple linear regression for the intercept term but significantly different for the slope coefficients:

- The **intercept term** is the value of the dependent variable when the independent variables are all equal to zero.
- Each slope coefficient is the estimated change in the dependent variable for a one-unit change in that independent variable, *holding the other independent variables constant*. That's why the slope coefficients in a multiple regression are sometimes called **partial slope coefficients**.

For example, in the real earnings growth example, we can make these interpretations:

- *Intercept term*: If the dividend payout ratio is zero and the slope of the yield curve is zero, we would expect the subsequent 10-year real earnings growth rate to be –11.6%.
- *PR coefficient*: If the payout ratio increases by 1%, we would expect the subsequent 10-year earnings growth rate to increase by 0.25%, *holding YCS constant*.
- *YCS coefficient*: If the yield curve slope increases by 1%, we would expect the subsequent 10-year earnings growth rate to increase by 0.14%, *holding PR constant*.

Let's discuss the interpretation of the multiple regression slope coefficients in more detail. Suppose we run a regression of the dependent variable Y on a single independent variable $X1$ and get the following result:

$$Y = 2.0 + 4.5X1$$

The appropriate interpretation of the estimated slope coefficient is that if $X1$ increases by 1 unit, we would expect Y to increase by 4.5 units.

Now suppose we add a second independent variable $X2$ to the regression and get the following result:

$$Y = 1.0 + 2.5X1 + 6.0X2$$

Notice that the estimated slope coefficient for $X1$ changed from 4.5 to 2.5 when we added $X2$ to the regression. We would expect this to happen most of the time when a second variable is added to the regression, unless $X2$ is uncorrelated with $X1$, because

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

if $X1$ increases by 1 unit, then we would expect $X2$ to change as well. The multiple regression equation captures this relationship between $X1$ and $X2$ when predicting Y.

Now the interpretation of the estimated slope coefficient for $X1$ is that if $X1$ increases by 1 unit, we would expect Y to increase by 2.5 units, *holding X2 constant.*

LOS 12.b: Formulate a null and an alternative hypothesis about the population value of a regression coefficient, calculate the value of the test statistic, determine whether to reject the null hypothesis at a given level of significance by using a one-tailed or two-tailed test, and interpret the results of the test.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 332

Hypothesis Testing of Regression Coefficients

As with simple linear regression, the magnitude of the coefficients in a multiple regression tells us nothing about the importance of the independent variable in explaining the dependent variable. Thus, we must conduct hypothesis testing on the estimated slope coefficients to determine if the independent variables make a significant contribution to explaining the variation in the dependent variable.

The *t*-statistic used to test the significance of the individual coefficients in a multiple regression is calculated using the same formula that is used with simple linear regression:

$$t = \frac{\hat{b}_j - b_j}{s_{\hat{b}_j}} = \frac{\text{estimated regression coefficient} - \text{hypothesized value}}{\text{coefficient standard error of } b_j}$$

The *t*-statistic has n – k – 1 degrees of freedom.

Professor's Note: An easy way to remember the number of degrees of freedom for this test is to recognize that "k" is the number of regression coefficients in the regression, and the "1" is for the intercept term. Therefore, the degrees of freedom is the number of observations minus k minus 1.

Determining Statistical Significance

The most common hypothesis test done on the regression coefficients is to test statistical significance, which means testing the null hypothesis that the coefficient is zero versus the alternative that it is not:

"testing statistical significance" $\Rightarrow H_0: b_j = 0$ versus $H_a: b_j \neq 0$

Example: Testing the statistical significance of a regression coefficient

Test the statistical significance of the independent variable PR in the real earnings growth example at the 10% significance level. The results of that regression are reproduced in the following figure.

Coefficient and Standard Error Estimates for Regression of EG10 on PR and YCS

	Coefficient	*Standard Error*
Intercept	−11.6%	1.657%
PR	0.25	0.032
YCS	0.14	0.280

Answer:

We are testing the following hypothesis:

H_0: PR = 0 versus H_a: PR ≠ 0

The 10% two-tailed critical *t*-value with 46 – 2 – 1 = 43 degrees of freedom is approximately 1.68. We should reject the null hypothesis if the *t*-statistic is greater than 1.68 or less than −1.68.

The *t*-statistic is:

$$t = \frac{0.25}{0.032} = 7.8$$

Therefore, because the *t*-statistic of 7.8 is greater than the upper critical *t*-value of 1.68, we can reject the null hypothesis and conclude that the PR regression coefficient is statistically significantly different from zero at the 10% significance level.

Interpreting *p*-Values

The *p*-value is the smallest level of significance for which the null hypothesis can be rejected. An alternative method of doing hypothesis testing of the coefficients is to compare the *p*-value to the significance level:

- If the *p*-value is less than significance level, the null hypothesis can be rejected.
- If the *p*-value is greater than the significance level, the null hypothesis cannot be rejected.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Example: Interpreting *p*-values

Given the following regression results, determine which regression parameters for the independent variables are statistically significantly different from zero at the 1% significance level, assuming the sample size is 60.

Variable	*Coefficient*	*Standard Error*	*t-Statistic*	*p-Value*
Intercept	0.40	0.40	1.0	0.3215
X1	8.20	2.05	4.0	0.0002
X2	0.40	0.18	2.2	0.0319
X3	–1.80	0.56	–3.2	0.0022

Answer:

The independent variable is statistically significant if the *p*-value is less than 1%, or 0.01. Therefore *X*1 and *X*3 are statistically significantly different from zero.

Figure 2 shows the results of the *t*-tests for each of the regression coefficients of our 10-year earnings growth example, including the *p*-values.

Figure 2: Regression Results for Regression of EG10 on PR and YCS

	Coefficient	*Standard Error*	*t-statistic*	*p-value*
Intercept	–11.6%	1.657%	–7.0	< 0.0001
PR	0.25	0.032	7.8	< 0.0001
YCS	0.14	0.280	0.5	0.62

As we determined in a previous example, we can reject the null hypothesis and conclude that PR is statistically significant. We can also draw the same conclusion for the intercept term because –7.0 is less than the lower critical value of –1.68 (because it is a two-tailed test). However, we fail to reject the null hypothesis for YCS, so we cannot conclude that YCS has a statistically significant effect on the dependent variable, EG10, when PR is also included in the model. The *p*-values tell us exactly the same thing (as they always will): the intercept term and PR are statistically significant at the 10% level because their *p*-values are less than 0.10, while YCS is not statistically significant because its *p*-value is greater than 0.10.

Other Tests of the Regression Coefficients

You should also be prepared to formulate one- and two-tailed tests in which the null hypothesis is that the coefficient is equal to some value other than zero, or that it is greater than or less than some value.

Example: Testing regression coefficients (two-tail test)

Using the data from Figure 2, test the null hypothesis that PR is equal to 0.20 versus the alternative that it is not equal to 0.20 using a 5% significance level.

Answer:

We are testing the following hypothesis:

H_0: PR = 0.20 versus H_a: PR $\neq$ 0.20

The 5% two-tailed critical *t*-value with 46 – 2 – 1 = 43 degrees of freedom is approximately 2.02. We should reject the null hypothesis if the *t*-statistic is greater than 2.02 or less than –2.02.

The *t*-statistic is:

$$t = \frac{0.25 - 0.20}{0.032} = 1.56$$

Therefore, because the *t*-statistic of 1.56 is between the upper and lower critical *t*-values of –2.02 and 2.02, we cannot reject the null hypothesis and must conclude that the PR regression coefficient is not statistically significantly different from 0.20 at the 5% significance level.

Example: Testing regression coefficients (one-tail test)

Using the data from Figure 2, test the null hypothesis that the intercept term is greater than or equal to –10.0% versus the alternative that it is less than –10.0% using a 1% significance level.

Answer:

We are testing the following hypothesis:

H_0: Intercept $\geq$ –10.0% versus H_a: Intercept < –10.0%

The 1% one-tailed critical *t*-value with 46 – 2 – 1 = 43 degrees of freedom is approximately 2.42. We should reject the null hypothesis if the *t*-statistic is less than –2.42.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

The *t*-statistic is:

$$t = \frac{-11.6\% - (-10.0\%)}{1.657\%} = -0.96$$

Therefore, because the *t*-statistic of –0.96 is not less than –2.42, we cannot reject the null hypothesis.

LOS 12.c: Calculate and interpret 1) a confidence interval for the population value of a regression coefficient and 2) a predicted value for the dependent variable, given an estimated regression model and assumed values for the independent variables.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 340

Confidence Intervals for a Regression Coefficient

The confidence interval for a regression coefficient in multiple regression is calculated and interpreted the same way as it is in simple linear regression. For example, a 95% confidence interval is constructed as follows:

$$\hat{b}_j \pm (t_c \times s_{\hat{b}_j})$$

or

estimated regression coefficient ± (critical *t*-value)(coefficient standard error)

The critical *t*-value is a two-tailed value with n – k – 1 degrees of freedom and a 5% significance level, where *n* is the number of observations and *k* is the number of independent variables.

Example: Calculating a confidence interval for a regression coefficient

Calculate the 90% confidence interval for the estimated coefficient for the independent variable PR in the real earnings growth example.

Answer:

The critical *t*-value is 1.68, the same as we used in testing the statistical significance at the 10% significance level (which is the same thing as a 90% confidence level). The estimated slope coefficient is 0.25 and the standard error is 0.032. The 90% confidence interval is:

0.25 ± (1.68)(0.032) = 0.25 ± 0.054 = 0.196 to 0.304

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Professor's Note: Notice that because zero is not contained in the 90% confidence interval, we can conclude that the PR coefficient is statistically significant at the 10% level, the same conclusion we made when using the t-test in LOS 12.b. Constructing a confidence interval and conducting a t-test with a null hypothesis of "equal to zero" will always result in the same conclusion regarding the statistical significance of the regression coefficient.

Predicting the Dependent Variable

We can use the regression equation to make predictions about the dependent variable *based on forecasted values of the independent variables.* The process is similar to forecasting with simple linear regression, only now we need predicted values for more than one independent variable. The predicted value of dependent variable *Y* is:

$$\hat{Y}_i = \hat{b}_0 + \hat{b}_1\hat{X}_{1i} + \hat{b}_2\hat{X}_{2i} + ... + \hat{b}_k\hat{X}_{ki}$$

where:

$\hat{Y}_i$ = the predicted value of the dependent variable

$\hat{b}_j$ = the estimated slope coefficient for the *j*th independent variable

$\hat{X}_{ji}$ = the forecast of the *j*th independent variable, j = 1, 2, …, *k*

Professor's Note: The prediction of the dependent variable uses the estimated intercept and all of the estimated slope coefficients, regardless of whether the estimated coefficients are statistically significantly different from zero. For example, suppose you estimate the following regression equation: $\hat{Y} = 6 + 2X_1 + 4X_2$, and you determine that only the first independent variable (X_1) is statistically significant (i.e., you rejected the null that $b_1 = 0$). To predict Y given forecasts of $X_1 = 0.6$ and $X_2 = 0.8$, you would use the complete model: $\hat{Y} = 6 + (2 \times 0.6) + (4 \times 0.8) = 10.4$. Alternatively, you could drop X2 and reestimate the model using just X1, but remember that the coefficient on X1 will likely change.

Example: Calculating a predicted value for the dependent variable

An analyst would like to use the estimated regression equation from the previous example to calculate the predicted 10-year real earnings growth for the S&P 500, assuming the payout ratio of the index is 50%. He observes that the slope of the yield curve is currently 4%.

Answer:

$$\widehat{EG10} = -11.6\% + 0.25(50\%) + 0.14(4\%) = 1.46\%$$

The model predicts a 1.46% real earnings growth rate for the S&P 500, assuming a 50% payout ratio, when the slope of the yield curve is 4%.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

LOS 12.d: Explain the assumptions of a multiple regression model.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 336

As with simple linear regression, most of the assumptions made with the multiple regression pertain to ε, the model's error term:

- A linear relationship exists between the dependent and independent variables. In other words, the model on the first page of this topic review correctly describes the relationship.
- The independent variables are not random, and there is no exact linear relation between any two or more independent variables.
- The expected value of the error term, conditional on the independent variable, is zero [i.e., $E(\varepsilon | X_1, X_2, ..X_k) = 0$].
- The variance of the error terms is constant for all observations [i.e., $E(\varepsilon_i^2) = \sigma_\varepsilon^2$].
- The error term for one observation is not correlated with that of another observation [i.e., $E(\varepsilon_i \varepsilon_j) = 0, j \neq i$].
- The error term is normally distributed.

LOS 12.e: Calculate and interpret the *F*-statistic, and describe how it is used in regression analysis.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 341

The *F*-Statistic

An *F*-test assesses how well the set of independent variables, as a group, explains the variation in the dependent variable. That is, the *F*-statistic is used to test whether *at least one* of the independent variables explains a significant portion of the variation of the dependent variable.

For example, if there are four independent variables in the model, the hypotheses are structured as:

$H_0: b_1 = b_2 = b_3 = b_4 = 0$ versus H_a: at least one $b_j \neq 0$

The *F*-statistic, *which is always a one-tailed test*, is calculated as:

$$F = \frac{MSR}{MSE} = \frac{RSS/k}{SSE/(n-k-1)}$$

where:
RSS = regression sum of squares
SSE = sum of squared errors
MSR = mean regression sum of squares
MSE = mean squared error

Professor's Note: Recall from the previous topic review that the regression sum of squares and the sum of squared errors are found in an ANOVA table. We analyze an ANOVA table from a multiple regression later in this LOS.

To determine whether at least one of the coefficients is statistically significant, the calculated *F*-statistic is compared with the **one-tailed** critical *F*-value, F_c, at the appropriate level of significance. The degrees of freedom for the numerator and denominator are:

$$df_{numerator} = k$$

$$df_{denominator} = n - k - 1$$

where:
n = number of observations
k = number of independent variables

The decision rule for the *F*-test is:

Decision rule: reject H_0 if F (test-statistic) > F_c (critical value)

Rejection of the null hypothesis at a stated level of significance indicates that at least one of the coefficients is significantly different than zero, which is interpreted to mean that at least one of the independent variables in the regression model makes a significant contribution to the explanation of the dependent variable.

Professor's Note: It may have occurred to you that an easier way to test all of the coefficients simultaneously is to just conduct all of the individual t-tests and see how many of them you can reject. This is the wrong approach, however, because if you set the significance level for each t-test at 5%, for example, the significance level from testing them all simultaneously is NOT 5%, but rather some higher percentage. Just remember to use the F-test on the exam if you are asked to test all of the coefficients simultaneously.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Example: Calculating and interpreting the *F*-statistic

An analyst runs a regression of monthly value-stock returns on five independent variables over 60 months. The total sum of squares is 460, and the sum of squared errors is 170. Test the null hypothesis at the 5% significance level that **all** five of the independent variables are equal to zero.

Answer:

The null and alternative hypotheses are:

$$H_0: b_1 = b_2 = b_3 = b_4 = b_5 = 0 \text{ versus } H_a: \text{at least one } b_j \neq 0$$

$$RSS = SST - SSE = 460 - 170 = 290$$

$$MSR = \frac{290}{5} = 58.0$$

$$MSE = \frac{170}{60-5-1} = 3.15$$

$$F = \frac{58.0}{3.15} = 18.41$$

The critical *F*-value for 5 and 54 degrees of freedom at a 5% significance level is approximately 2.40. Remember, it's a **one-tailed** test, so we use the 5% *F*-table! Therefore, we can reject the null hypothesis and conclude that at least one of the five independent variables is significantly different than zero.

Professor's Note: When testing the hypothesis that all the regression coefficients are simultaneously equal to zero, the F-test is always a one-tailed test, despite the fact that it looks like it should be a two-tailed test because there is an equal sign in the null hypothesis. This is a common source of confusion among Level II candidates; make sure you don't make that mistake on the exam.

LOS 12.f: Distinguish between and interpret the R^2 and adjusted R^2 in multiple regression.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 344

Coefficient of Determination, R^2

In addition to an *F*-test, the multiple coefficient of determination, R^2, can be used to test the overall effectiveness of the entire set of independent variables in explaining the dependent variable. Its interpretation is similar to that for simple linear regression: the percentage of variation in the dependent variable that is *collectively* explained by all of the independent variables. For example, an R^2 of 0.63 indicates that the model, as a whole, explains 63% of the variation in the dependent variable.

R^2 is also calculated the same way as in simple linear regression.

$$R^2 = \frac{\text{total variation} - \text{unexplained variation}}{\text{total variation}} = \frac{SST - SSE}{SST} = \frac{\text{explained variation}}{\text{total variation}} = \frac{RSS}{SST}$$

Professor's Note: Regression output often includes multiple R, which is the correlation between actual values of y and forecasted values of y. Multiple R is the square root of R^2. For a regression with one independent variable, the correlation between the independent variable and dependent variable is the same as multiple R (with the sign for the slope coefficient).

Adjusted R^2

Unfortunately, R^2 by itself *may not be a reliable measure of the explanatory power of the multiple regression model.* This is because R^2 almost always increases as variables are added to the model, even if the marginal contribution of the new variables is not statistically significant. Consequently, a relatively high R^2 may reflect the impact of a large set of independent variables rather than how well the set explains the dependent variable. This problem is often referred to as overestimating the regression.

To overcome the problem of overestimating the impact of additional variables on the explanatory power of a regression model, many researchers recommend adjusting R^2 for the number of independent variables. The *adjusted R^2* value is expressed as:

$$R_a^2 = 1 - \left[\left(\frac{n-1}{n-k-1}\right) \times (1 - R^2)\right]$$

where:
n = number of observations
k = number of independent variables
R_a^2 = adjusted R^2

R_a^2 is less than or equal to R^2. So while adding a new independent variable to the model will increase R^2, it may either *increase or decrease* the R_a^2. If the new variable has only a small effect on R^2, the value of R_a^2 may decrease. In addition, R_a^2 may be less than zero if the R^2 is low enough.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Example: Calculating R^2 and adjusted R^2

An analyst runs a regression of monthly value-stock returns on five independent variables over 60 months. The total sum of squares for the regression is 460, and the sum of squared errors is 170. Calculate the R^2 and adjusted R^2.

Answer:

$$R^2 = \frac{460 - 170}{460} = 0.630 = 63.0\%$$

$$R_a^2 = 1 - \left[\left(\frac{60-1}{60-5-1}\right) \times (1 - 0.63)\right] = 0.596 = 59.6\%$$

The R^2 of 63% suggests that the five independent variables together explain 63% of the variation in monthly value-stock returns.

Example: Interpreting adjusted R^2

Suppose the analyst now adds four more independent variables to the regression, and the R^2 increases to 65.0%. Identify which model the analyst would most likely prefer.

Answer:

With nine independent variables, even though the R^2 has increased from 63% to 65%, the adjusted R^2 has decreased from 59.6% to 58.7%:

$$R_a^2 = 1 - \left[\left(\frac{60-1}{60-9-1}\right) \times (1 - 0.65)\right] = 0.587 = 58.7\%$$

The analyst would prefer the first model because the adjusted R^2 is higher and the model has five independent variables as opposed to nine.

LOS 12.g: Evaluate how well a regression model explains the dependent variable by analyzing the output of the regression equation and an ANOVA table.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 341

ANOVA Tables

Analysis of variance (ANOVA) is a statistical procedure that provides information on the explanatory power of a regression. We first discussed the use of ANOVA tables in the previous topic review of simple linear regression. Once again, the interpretation is the same in multiple regression.

The results of the ANOVA procedure are presented in an ANOVA table, which accompanies the output of a multiple regression program. An example of a generic ANOVA table is presented in Figure 3.

Figure 3: ANOVA Table

Source	*df (Degrees of Freedom)*	*SS (Sum of Squares)*	*MS (Mean Square= SS/df)*
Regression	k	RSS	MSR
Error	n – k –1	SSE	MSE
Total	n – 1	SST	

The information in an ANOVA table is used to attribute the total variation of the dependent variable to one of two sources: the regression model or the residuals. This is indicated in the first column in the table, where the "source" of the variation is listed.

The information in an ANOVA table can be used to calculate R^2, the *F*-statistic, and the standard error of estimate (SEE). That is:

$$R^2 = \frac{RSS}{SST}$$

$$F = \frac{MSR}{MSE} \text{ with k and } n-k-1 \text{ degrees of freedom}$$

$$SEE = \sqrt{MSE}$$

Professor's Note: R^2, F, and SEE are provided along with the standard ANOVA table produced by most statistical software packages. On the exam, be prepared to fill in "missing data" from an ANOVA output.

Let's look at an example to tie all of this together.

Example: Using an ANOVA table with regression output

In an attempt to estimate a regression equation that can be used to forecast BuildCo's future sales, 22 years of BuildCo's annual sales were regressed against two independent variables:

GDP = the level of gross domestic product
ΔI = changes in 30-year mortgage interest rates (expressed in percentage terms)

The output from a common statistical software package is contained in the following table.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Regression Results for BuildCo Sales Data

		Coefficient	*Standard Error*	*t-Statistic*	*p-Value*
Intercept		6.000	4.520	1.327	0.20
Level of gross domestic product (GDP)		0.004	0.003	?	0.20
Changes in 30-year mortgage rates (ΔI)		−20.500	3.560	?	< 0.001
ANOVA	*df*	*SS*	*MS*	*F*	*Significance F*
Regression	?	236.30	?	?	p < 0.005
Error	?	116.11	?		
Total	?	?			
R^2	?				
R_a^2	?				

Based on the output in the table, the regression equation can be stated as:

$$\widehat{\text{BuildCo Sales}} = 6.000 + 0.004(\text{GDP}) - 20.500(\Delta\text{I})$$

Fill in the missing data and interpret the results of the regression at a 5% level of significance with respect to:

- The significance of the individual independent variables.
- The utility of the model as a whole.

Answer:

Step 1: Fill in the missing data.

The computed test statistics for the regression coefficients are:

$$t_{GDP} = \frac{0.004}{0.003} = 1.333$$

$$t_{\Delta I} = \frac{-20.500}{3.560} = -5.758$$

Degrees of freedom are:

$$df_{regression} = k = 2$$
$$df_{error} = n - k - 1 = 22 - 2 - 1 = 19$$
$$df_{total} = n - 1 = 22 - 1 = 21$$

Other calculations:

$$SST = RSS + SSE = 236.30 + 116.11 = 352.41$$

$$MSR = \frac{RSS}{k} = \frac{236.30}{2} = 118.15$$

$$MSE = \frac{SSE}{n-k-1} = \frac{116.11}{19} = 6.11$$

$$F = \frac{MSR}{MSE} = \frac{118.15}{6.11} = 19.34$$

$$R^2 = \frac{RSS}{SST} = \frac{236.30}{352.41} = 67.05\%$$

$$R_a^2 = 1 - \left(\frac{n-1}{n-k-1}\right)(1-R^2) = 1 - \left(\frac{21}{19}\right)(1-0.6705) = 63.58\%$$

The following table shows what the complete ANOVA table looks like.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Regression Results for BuildCo Sales Data

	Coefficient	*Standard Error*	*t-Statistic*	*p-Value*
Intercept	6.000	4.520	1.327	0.20
Level of gross domestic product (GDP)	0.004	0.003	1.333	0.20
Changes in 30-year mortgage rates (ΔI)	−20.500	3.560	−5.758	< 0.001

ANOVA	*df*	*SS*	*MS*	*F*	*Significance F*
Regression	2	236.30	118.15	19.34	p < 0.005
Error	19	116.11	6.11		
Total	21	352.41			

R^2	67.05%
R_a^2	63.58%

Step 2: Determine the significance of the individual independent variables.

The contribution of the individual variables, as indicated by the significance of their slope coefficients, can be tested using *t*-tests. However, since the *p*-values are included with the regression output, as is usually the case, the level of significance can be observed directly. Just for practice, let's test for significance of the individual coefficients using *t*-tests *and p*-values.

- Using *p*-values. Only the *p*-value of the coefficient for ΔI is less than the 5% level of significance, so we conclude that only ΔI contributes significantly to the level of BuildCo's annual sales.
- Using *t*-statistics. The hypothesis test structure is:

  $H_0: b_j = 0$ versus $H_a: b \neq 0$

  The critical two-tailed *t*-values with df = 19 are ±2.093.

  The decision rule is reject H_0 if t_{b_j} is greater than 2.093 or less than −2.093.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Since $t_{GDP} = 1.33$ does not fall in the rejection region, we cannot reject the null for GDP, and we conclude that the level of GDP does not make a statistically significant contribution to the variation in sales at the 5% level.

Since $(t_{\Delta I} = -5.758) < (t_c = -2.093)$, we conclude that changes in mortgage rates make a significant contribution to the variation in sales at the 5% level.

Professor's Note: The use of p-values or t-tests will always result in the same conclusions about the statistical significance of the slope estimate (i.e., coefficients on the independent variables). On the exam, use the p-value if it is provided!

Step 3: Determine the utility of the model as a whole.

The overall utility of the model can be generally assessed with the coefficient of determination, R^2. The R^2 value indicates that GDP and ΔI explain 67.05% of the variation in BuildCo's annual sales.

Tests of significance for the set of independent variables should be performed using the *F*-test. The hypotheses for the one-sided *F*-test can be structured as:

$$H_0: b_{\Delta I} = b_{GDP} = 0 \text{ versus } H_a: b_{\Delta I} \neq 0, \text{ or } b_{GDP} \neq 0$$

F_c at the 5% significance level with $df_{numerator} = 2$ and $df_{denominator} = 19$ is 3.52. Remember, this is a one-tailed test.

The decision rule is reject H_0 if F is greater than 3.52.

Since $F > 3.52$, the null hypothesis can be rejected and we can conclude that at least one of the independent variables significantly contributes to the dependent variable. That is, changes in mortgage rates *and* the level of GDP together explain a significant amount of the variation in BuildCo's annual sales at the 5% significance level. Notice that we could have reached this conclusion by observing that the ANOVA table reports that *F* is significant at a level less than 0.5%.

LOS 12.h: Formulate a multiple regression equation by using dummy variables to represent qualitative factors, and interpret the coefficients and regression results.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 345

Observations for most independent variables (e.g., firm size, level of GDP, and interest rates) can take on a wide range of values. However, there are occasions when the independent variable is binary in nature—it is either "on" or "off." Independent variables that fall into this category are called *dummy variables* and are often used to quantify the impact of qualitative events.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Dummy variables are assigned a value of "0" or "1." For example, in a time series regression of monthly stock returns, you could employ a "January" dummy variable that would take on the value of "1" if a stock return occurred in January and "0" if it occurred in any other month. The purpose of including the January dummy variable would be to see if stock returns in January were significantly different than stock returns in all other months of the year. Many "January Effect" anomaly studies employ this type of regression methodology.

The estimated regression coefficient for dummy variables indicates the difference in the dependent variable for the category represented by the dummy variable and the average value of the dependent variable for all classes except the dummy variable class. For example, testing the slope coefficient for the January dummy variable would indicate whether, and by how much, security returns are different in January as compared to the other months.

An *important consideration* when performing multiple regression with dummy variables is the choice of the number of dummy variables to include in the model. Whenever we want to distinguish between *n* classes, we must use n – 1 dummy variables. Otherwise, the regression assumption of no exact linear relationship between independent variables would be violated.

Interpreting the Coefficients in a Dummy Variable Regression

Consider the following regression equation for explaining quarterly EPS in terms of the quarter of their occurrence:

$$EPS_t = b_0 + b_1Q_{1t} + b_2Q_{2t} + b_3Q_{3t} + \varepsilon_t$$

where:
EPS_t = a quarterly observation of earnings per share
Q_{1t} = 1 if period *t* is the first quarter, Q_{1t} = 0 otherwise
Q_{2t} = 1 if period *t* is the second quarter, Q_{2t} = 0 otherwise
Q_{3t} = 1 if period *t* is the third quarter, Q_{3t} = 0 otherwise

The intercept term, b_0, represents the average value of *EPS* for the fourth quarter. The slope coefficient on each dummy variable estimates the *difference* in earnings per share (on average) between the respective quarter (i.e., quarter 1, 2, or 3) and the omitted quarter (the fourth quarter in this case). *Think of the omitted class as the reference point.*

For example, suppose we estimate the quarterly EPS regression model with ten years of data (40 quarterly observations) and find that $b_0 = 1.25$, $b_1 = 0.75$, $b_2 = -0.20$, and $b_3 = 0.10$:

$$\widehat{EPS}_t = 1.25 + 0.75Q_{1t} - 0.20Q_{2t} + 0.10Q_{3t}$$

We can use the equation to determine the average EPS in each quarter over the past ten years:

average fourth quarter EPS = 1.25

average first quarter EPS = 1.25 + 0.75 = 2.00

average second quarter EPS = 1.25 – 0.20 = 1.05

average third quarter EPS = 1.25 + 0.10 = 1.35

These are also the model's predictions of future EPS in each quarter of the following year. For example, to use the model to predict EPS in the first quarter of the next year, set $\hat{Q}_1 = 1$, $\hat{Q}_2 = 0$, and $\hat{Q}_3 = 0$. Then $\widehat{EPS}_{2010} = 1.25 + 0.75(1) - 0.20(0) + 0.10(0) = 2.00$. This simple model uses average EPS for any specific quarter over the past ten years as the forecast of EPS in its respective quarter of the following year.

As with all multiple regression results, the *F*-statistic for the set of coefficients and the R^2 should be evaluated to determine if the quarters, individually or collectively, contribute to the explanation of quarterly EPS.

We can also test whether the average EPS in each of the first three quarters is equal to the fourth quarter EPS (the omitted quarter) by testing the individual slope coefficients using the following null hypotheses:

H_0: $b_1 = 0$ tests whether fourth quarter EPS = first quarter EPS
H_0: $b_2 = 0$ tests whether fourth quarter EPS = second quarter EPS
H_0: $b_3 = 0$ tests whether fourth quarter EPS = third quarter EPS

As before, the *t*-statistic for each test is equal to the coefficient divided by its standard error, and the critical *t*-value is a two-tailed value with n – k –1 = 40 – 3 – 1 = 36 degrees of freedom.

Example: Hypothesis testing with dummy variables

The standard error of the coefficient b_1 is equal to 0.15 from the EPS regression model. Test whether first quarter EPS is equal to fourth quarter EPS at the 5% significance level.

Answer:

We are testing the following hypothesis:

$H_0 : b_1 = 0$ vs. $H_A : b_1 \neq 0$

The *t*-statistic is 0.75/0.15 = 5.0 and the two-tail 5% critical value with 36 degrees of freedom is approximately 2.03. Therefore, we should reject the null and conclude that first quarter EPS is statistically significantly different than fourth quarter EPS at the 5% significance level.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Example of Regression Application with Dummy Variables

Mazumdar and Sengupta (2005)[2] provide a more complex example of an investment application of multiple regression using dummy variables. They determine that loan spreads relative to LIBOR on private debt contracts are negatively associated with measures of the quality of the company's financial disclosures.

The dependent variable (SPREAD) is the quoted spread in basis points over LIBOR on the first year of the loan. The independent variables include a number of quantitative variables, including, for example, average total disclosure score (DISC), standard deviation of daily stock returns (STDRETN), current ratio (CRATIO), and market to book ratio (MKBK). The authors also include three dummy variables in the regression:

- SECURE, which is equal to one if the loan is collateralized, and equal to zero otherwise.
- BID, which is equal to one if the loan contained the option to price the loan relative to a different index, and equal to zero otherwise.
- RESTRUC, which is equal to one if the loan was a result of corporate restructuring, and equal to zero otherwise.

In the model both SECURE and RESTRUC are positive and statistically significantly different from zero, while BID is not. The proper interpretation is that the loan spreads on private debt contracts are higher for collateralized loans than for uncollateralized loans, and higher for loans used for corporate restructuring than for loans used for other purposes, *after controlling for the other independent variables in the model.*

Warm-Up: Why Multiple Regression Isn't as Easy as It Looks

Regression analysis relies on the assumptions listed in LOS 12.d. When these assumptions are violated, the inferences drawn from the model are questionable. There are three primary assumption violations that you will encounter: (1) heteroskedasticity, (2) serial correlation (i.e., autocorrelation), and (3) multicollinearity.

On exam day, you must be able to answer the following four questions about each of the three assumption violations:

- What is it?
- What is its effect on regression analysis?
- How do we detect it?
- How do we correct for it?

Recall that the calculated test statistic for the estimated regression coefficient on the *j*th independent variable is:

$$t = \frac{\hat{b}_j - b_j}{s_{\hat{b}_j}}$$

2. Mazumdar, S. and P. Sengupta. 2005. "Disclosure of the Loan Spread on Private Debt." *Financial Analysts Journal*, vol. 61, no. 3 (May/June): 83–95.

Note that the denominator in the test statistic equation above, $s_{\hat{b}_j}$, is the standard error for coefficient *j*. Without getting into the math, suffice it to say that the coefficient standard error is calculated using the standard error of estimate (SEE), which is the standard deviation of the error term. Any violation of an assumption that affects the error term will ultimately affect the coefficient standard error. Consequently, this will affect the *t*-statistic and *F*-statistic and any conclusions drawn from hypothesis tests involving these statistics.

LOS 12.i: Explain the types of heteroskedasticity and the effects of heteroskedasticity and serial correlation on statistical inference.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 349

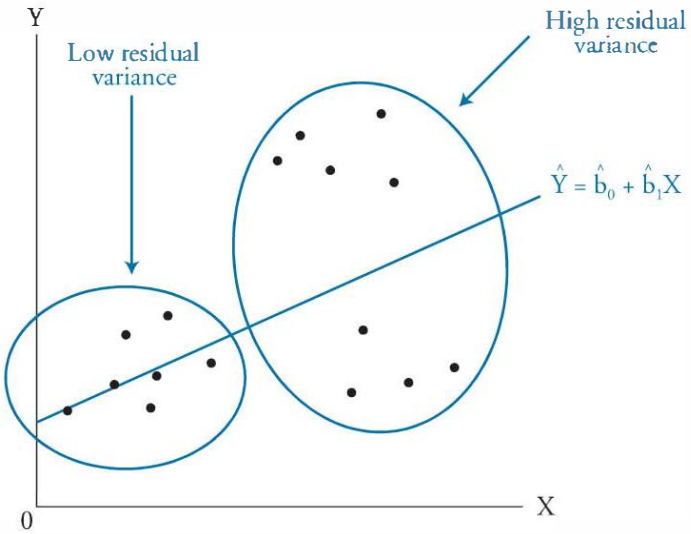
What is Heteroskedasticity?

Recall from LOS 12.d that one of the assumptions of multiple regression is that the variance of the residuals is constant across observations. **Heteroskedasticity** occurs when the variance of the residuals is not the same across all observations in the sample. This happens when there are subsamples that are more spread out than the rest of the sample.

Unconditional heteroskedasticity occurs when the heteroskedasticity is not related to the level of the independent variables, which means that it doesn't systematically increase or decrease with changes in the value of the independent variable(s). While this is a violation of the equal variance assumption, *it usually causes no major problems with the regression.*

Conditional heteroskedasticity is heteroskedasticity that is related to the level of (i.e., conditional on) the independent variables. For example, conditional heteroskedasticity exists if the variance of the residual term increases as the value of the independent variable increases, as shown in Figure 4. Notice in this figure that the residual variance associated with the larger values of the independent variable, *X*, is larger than the residual variance associated with the smaller values of *X*. Conditional heteroskedasticity *does create significant problems for statistical inference.*

Figure 4: Conditional Heteroskedasticity



©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Effect of Heteroskedasticity on Regression Analysis

There are four effects of heteroskedasticity you need to be aware of:

- The standard errors are usually unreliable estimates.
- The coefficient estimates (the $\hat{b}_j$) aren't affected.
- If the standard errors are too small, but the coefficient estimates themselves are not affected, the *t*-statistics will be too large and the null hypothesis of no statistical significance is rejected too often. The opposite will be true if the standard errors are too large.
- The *F*-test is also unreliable.

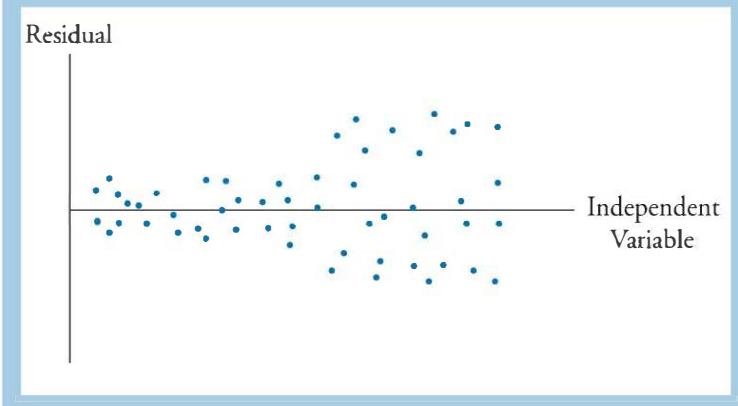
Detecting Heteroskedasticity

There are two methods to detect heteroskedasticity: examining scatter plots of the residuals and using the Breusch-Pagan chi-square test. A scatter plot of the residuals versus one or more of the independent variables can reveal patterns among observations.

Example: Detecting heteroskedasticity with a residual plot

You have been studying the monthly returns of a mutual fund over the past five years, hoping to draw conclusions about the fund's average performance. You calculate the mean return, the standard deviation, and the portfolio's beta by regressing the fund's returns on S&P 500 index returns (the independent variable). The standard deviation of returns and the fund's beta don't seem to fit the firm's stated risk profile. For your analysis, you have prepared a scatter plot of the error terms (actual return – predicted return) for the regression using five years of returns, as shown in the following figure. Determine whether the residual plot indicates that there may be a problem with the data.

Residual Plot



Answer:

The residual plot in the previous figure indicates the presence of conditional heteroskedasticity. Notice how the variation in the regression residuals increases as the independent variable increases. This indicates that the variance of the fund's returns about the mean is related to the level of the independent variable.

The more common way to detect conditional heteroskedasticity is the *Breusch-Pagan test*, which calls for the regression of the squared residuals on the independent variables. If conditional heteroskedasticity is present, the independent variables will significantly contribute to the explanation of the squared residuals. The test statistic for the Breusch-Pagan test, which has a chi-square distribution, is calculated as:

$$\text{BP chi-square test} = n \times R^2_{resid} \text{ with k degrees of freedom}$$

where:
n = the number of observations
R^2_{resid} = R^2 from a second regression of the squared residuals from the first regression on the independent variables
k = the number of independent variables

Professor's Note: The R^2 used in the BP test is the R^2 from a second regression, NOT the original regression.

This is a one-tailed test because heteroskedasticity is only a problem if the R^2 and the BP test statistic are too large.

Example: The Breusch-Pagan test

The residual plot of mutual fund returns over time shows evidence of heteroskedasticity. To confirm your suspicions, you regress the squared residuals from the original regression on the independent variable, S&P 500 index returns. The R^2 from that regression is 8%. Use the Breusch-Pagan test to determine whether heteroskedasticity is present at the 5% significance level.

Answer:

With five years of monthly observations, *n* is equal to 60. The test statistic is:

$$n \times R^2 = 60 \times 0.08 = 4.8$$

The one-tailed critical value for a chi-square distribution with one degree of freedom and α equal to 5% is 3.841. Therefore you should reject the null hypothesis and conclude that you have a problem with conditional heteroskedasticity.

Correcting Heteroskedasticity

The most common remedy and the one recommended in the CFA curriculum is to calculate *robust standard errors* (also called White-corrected standard errors or heteroskedasticity-consistent standard errors). These robust standard errors are then used to recalculate the *t*-statistics using the original regression coefficients. On the exam, use robust standard errors to calculate *t*-statistics if there is evidence of heteroskedasticity.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

A second method to correct for heteroskedasticy is the use of *generalized least squares*, which attempts to eliminate the hetereoskedasticity by modifying the original equation.

Example: Using White-corrected standard errors

An analyst runs a regression of annualized Treasury bill rates (the dependent variable) on annual inflation rates (the independent variable) using monthly data for ten years. The results of the regression are shown in the following table.

Regression of T-Bill Rates on Inflation Rates

Variable	*Coefficient*	*Standard Error*	*t-Statistic*	*p-Value*
Intercept	4.82	0.85	5.67	< 0.0001
Inflation	0.60	0.28	2.14	0.0340

He determines using the Breusch-Pagan test that heteroskedasticity is present, so he also estimates the White-corrected standard error for the coefficient on inflation to be 0.31. The critical two-tail 5% *t*-value for 118 degrees of freedom is 1.98. Is inflation statistically significant at the 5% level?

Answer:

The *t*-statistic should be recalculated using the White-corrected standard error as:

$$t = \frac{0.60}{0.31} = 1.94$$

This is less than the critical *t*-value of 1.98, which means after correcting for heteroskedasticity, the null hypothesis that the inflation coefficient is zero cannot be rejected. Therefore, inflation is not statistically significant. Notice that because the coefficient estimate of 0.60 was not affected by heteroskedasticity, but the original standard error of 0.28 was too low, the original *t*-statistic of 2.14 was too high. After using the higher White-corrected standard error of 0.31, the *t*-statistic fell to 1.94.

What is Serial Correlation?

Serial correlation, also known as **autocorrelation**, refers to the situation in which the residual terms are correlated with one another. Serial correlation is a relatively common problem with time series data.

- *Positive serial correlation* exists when a positive regression error in one time period increases the probability of observing a positive regression error for the next time period.
- *Negative serial correlation* occurs when a positive error in one period increases the probability of observing a negative error in the next period.

Effect of Serial Correlation on Regression Analysis

Because of the tendency of the data to cluster together from observation to observation, positive serial correlation typically results in coefficient standard errors that are too small, even though the estimated coefficients are consistent. These small standard error terms will cause the computed *t*-statistics to be larger than they should be, which will cause too many Type I errors: the rejection of the null hypothesis when it is actually true. The *F*-test will also be unreliable because the MSE will be underestimated leading again to too many Type I errors.

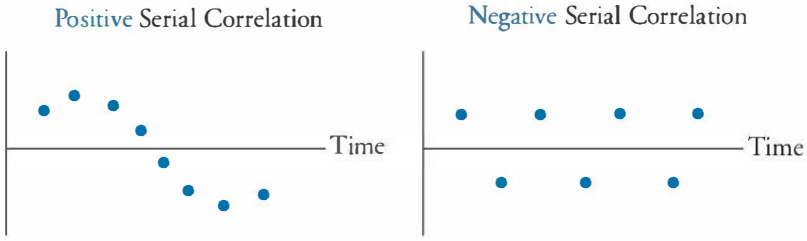
Professor's Note: Positive serial correlation is much more common in economic and financial data, so we focus our attention on its effects. Additionally, serial correlation in a time series regression may make parameter estimates inconsistent. This is discussed in our topic review on Time Series.

Detecting Serial Correlation

There are two methods that are commonly used to detect the presence of serial correlation: residual plots and the Durbin-Watson statistic.

A scatter plot of residuals versus time, like those shown in Figure 5, can reveal the presence of serial correlation. Figure 5 illustrates examples of positive and negative serial correlation.

Figure 5: Residual Plots for Serial Correlation



©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

The more common method is to use the Durbin-Watson statistic (DW) to detect the presence of serial correlation. It is calculated as:

$$DW = \frac{\sum_{t=2}^{T}(\hat{\varepsilon}_t - \hat{\varepsilon}_{t-1})^2}{\sum_{t=1}^{T}\hat{\varepsilon}_t^2}$$

where:
$\hat{\varepsilon}_t$ = residual for period t

If the sample size is very large:

$$DW \approx 2(1 - r)$$

where:
r = correlation coefficient between residuals from one period and those from the previous period

You can see from the approximation that the Durbin-Watson test statistic is approximately equal to 2 if the error terms are homoskedastic and not serially correlated ($r = 0$). $DW < 2$ if the error terms are positively serially correlated ($r > 0$), and $DW > 2$ if the error terms are negatively serially correlated ($r < 0$). But how much below the magic number 2 is statistically significant enough to reject the null hypothesis of no positive serial correlation?

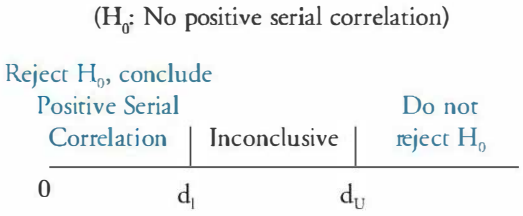
There are tables of DW statistics that provide upper and lower critical DW-values (d_u and d_l, respectively) for various sample sizes, levels of significance, and numbers of degrees of freedom against which the computed DW test statistic can be compared. The DW-test procedure for positive serial correlation is as follows:

H_0: the regression has *no* positive serial correlation

The decision rules are rather complicated because they allow for rejecting the null in favor of either positive or negative correlation. The test can also be inconclusive, which means we don't accept or reject (See Figure 6).

- If $DW < d_l$, the error terms are *positively* serially correlated (i.e., reject the null hypothesis of no positive serial correlation).
- If $d_l < DW < d_u$, the test is inconclusive.
- If $DW > d_u$, there is *no* evidence that the error terms are positively correlated (i.e., fail to reject the null of no positive serial correlation).

Figure 6: Durbin-Watson Decision Rule



Example: The Durbin-Watson test for serial correlation

Suppose you have a regression output which includes three independent variables that provide you with a DW statistic of 1.23. Also suppose that the sample size is 40. At a 5% significance level, determine if the error terms are serially correlated.

Answer:

From a 5% DW table with n = 40 and k = 3, the upper and lower critical DW values are found to be $d_l = 1.34$ and $d_u = 1.66$, respectively. Since DW < d_l (i.e., 1.23 < 1.34), you should reject the null hypothesis and conclude that the regression has positive serial correlation among the error terms.

Correcting Serial Correlation

Possible remedies for serial correlation include:

- *Adjust the coefficient standard errors*, which is the method recommended in the CFA curriculum, using the Hansen method. The Hansen method also corrects for conditional heteroskedasticity. These adjusted standard errors, which are sometimes called serial correlation consistent standard errors or Hansen-White standard errors, are then used in hypothesis testing of the regression coefficients. Only use the Hansen method if serial correlation is a problem. The White-corrected standard errors are preferred if only heteroskedasticity is a problem. If both conditions are present, use the Hansen method.
- *Improve the specification of the model.* The best way to do this is to explicitly incorporate the time-series nature of the data (e.g., include a seasonal term). This can be tricky.

LOS 12.j: Describe multicollinearity, and explain its causes and effects in regression analysis.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 359

Multicollinearity refers to the condition when two or more of the independent variables, or linear combinations of the independent variables, in a multiple regression are highly correlated with each other. This condition distorts the standard error of estimate and the coefficient standard errors, leading to problems when conducting *t*-tests for statistical significance of parameters.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Effect of Multicollinearity on Regression Analysis

Even though multicollinearity does not affect the consistency of slope coefficients, such coefficients themselves tend to be *unreliable.* Additionally, the standard errors of the slope coefficients are artificially inflated. Hence, there is a *greater probability that we will incorrectly conclude that a variable is not statistically significant* (i.e., a Type II error). Multicollinearity is likely to be present to some extent in most economic models. The issue is whether the multicollinearity has a significant effect on the regression results.

Detecting Multicollinearity

The most common way to detect multicollinearity is the situation where *t*-tests indicate that none of the individual coefficients is significantly different than zero, while the *F*-test is statistically significant and the R^2 is high. This suggests that the variables together explain much of the variation in the dependent variable, but the individual independent variables don't. The only way this can happen is when the independent variables are highly correlated with each other, so while their common source of variation is explaining the dependent variable, the high degree of correlation also "washes out" the individual effects.

High correlation among independent variables is sometimes suggested as a sign of multicollinearity. In fact, answers to some old CFA questions suggest the following general rule of thumb: If the absolute value of the sample correlation between any two independent variables in the regression is greater than 0.7, multicollinearity is a potential problem.

However, this only works if there are exactly two independent variables. If there are more than two independent variables, while individual variables may not be highly correlated, linear combinations might be, leading to multicollinearity. High correlation among the independent variables suggests the possibility of multicollinearity, but low correlation among the independent variables *does not necessarily* indicate multicollinearity is *not* present.

Example: Detecting multicollinearity

Bob Watson, CFA, runs a regression of mutual fund returns on average P/B, average P/E, and average market capitalization, with the following results:

Variable	*Coefficient*	*p-Value*
Average P/B	3.52	0.15
Average P/E	2.78	0.21
Market Cap	4.03	0.11
F-test	34.6	< 0.001
R^2	89.6%	

Determine whether or not multicollinearity is a problem in this regression.

Answer:

The R^2 is high and the *F*-test is statistically significant, which suggest that the three variables as a group do an excellent job of explaining the variation in mutual fund returns. However, none of the independent variables individually is statistically significant to any reasonable degree, since the *p*-values are larger than 10%. This is a classic indication of multicollinearity.

Correcting Multicollinearity

The most common method to correct for multicollinearity is to omit one or more of the correlated independent variables. Unfortunately, it is not always an easy task to identify the variable(s) that are the source of the multicollinearity. There are statistical procedures that may help in this effort, like stepwise regression, which systematically remove variables from the regression until multicollinearity is minimized.

Warm-Up: Model Specification

Regression model specification is the selection of the explanatory (independent) variables to be included in the regression and the transformations, if any, of those explanatory variables.

For example, suppose we're trying to predict a P/E ratio using a cross-sectional regression with fundamental variables that are related to P/E. Valuation theory tells us that the stock's dividend payout ratio (DPO), growth rate (G), and beta (B) are associated with P/E. One specification of the model would be:

Specification 1: $P/E = b_0 + b_1DPO + b_2G + b_3B + \varepsilon$

If we also decide that market capitalization (M) is related to P/E ratio, we would create a second specification of the model by including M as an independent variable:

Specification 2: $P/E = a_0 + a_1DPO + a_2G + a_3B + a_4M + \varepsilon$

Finally, suppose we conclude that market cap is not linearly related to P/E, but the natural log of market cap is linearly related to P/E. Then, we would transform M by taking its natural log and creating a new variable lnM. Thus, our third specification would be:

Specification 3: $P/E = c_0 + c_1DPO + c_2G + c_3B + c_4lnM + \varepsilon$

Professor's Note: Notice that we used "a" instead of "b" in Specification 2 and "c" in Specification 3. We must do that to recognize that when we change the specifications of the model, the regression parameters change. For example, we wouldn't expect the intercept in Specification 1 (b_0) to be the same as in Specification 2 (a_0) or the same as Specification 3 (c_0).

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

LOS 12.k: Describe the effects of model misspecification on the results of a regression analysis, and explain how to avoid the common forms of misspecification.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 363

There are three broad categories of *model misspecification*, or ways in which the regression model can be specified incorrectly, each with several subcategories:

1. The functional form can be misspecified.
   - Important variables are omitted.
   - Variables should be transformed.
   - Data is improperly pooled.

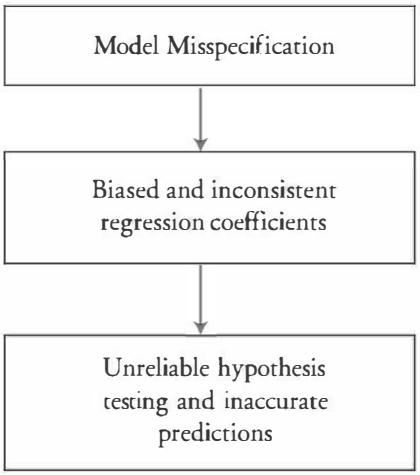
2. Explanatory variables are correlated with the error term in time series models.
   - A lagged dependent variable is used as an independent variable.
   - A function of the dependent variable is used as an independent variable ("forecasting the past").
   - Independent variables are measured with error.

3. Other time-series misspecifications that result in nonstationarity.

Professor's Note: We'll focus on the first two categories because nonstationarity in time series regressions is covered in the next topic review.

The *effects of the model misspecification on the regression results*, as shown in Figure 7, are basically the same for all of the misspecifications we will discuss: regression coefficients are often biased and/or inconsistent, which means we can't have any confidence in our hypothesis tests of the coefficients or in the predictions of the model.

Figure 7: Effects of Model Misspecification


Model Misspecification
Biased and inconsistent regression coefficients
Unreliable hypothesis testing and inaccurate predictions

Professor's Note: Recall the definitions of unbiased and consistent estimators from the Level I curriculum:

- *An unbiased estimator is one for which the expected value of the estimator is equal to the parameter you are trying to estimate. For example, because the expected value of the sample mean is equal to the population mean, the sample mean is an unbiased estimator of the population mean.*
- *A consistent estimator is one for which the accuracy of the parameter estimate increases as the sample size increases. As the sample size increases, the standard error of the sample mean falls, and the sampling distribution bunches more closely around the population mean. In fact, as the sample size approaches infinity, the standard error approaches zero.*

Examples of Misspecification of Functional Form

Let's start with a regression in which we're trying to predict monthly returns on portfolios of Chinese stocks (R) using four independent variables: portfolio beta (B), the natural log of market capitalization (lnM), the natural log of the price-to-book ratio ln(PB), and free float (FF). Free float is equal to the ratio of shares available to be traded by the investing public to total company shares. The regression is estimated with 72 monthly observations from July 1996 to June 2002. The *correct* specification of the model is as follows:

$$R = b_0 + b_1B + b_2\text{lnM} + b_3\text{lnPB} + b_4FF + \varepsilon$$

Suppose we determine in this specification that both lnM and FF are statistically significant at the 1% level.

Professor's Note: The correct regression model specification is based on a study by Wang and Xu (2004).[3] The incorrect specifications that follow are designed to illustrate examples of common misspecifications, but they are not included in the Wang and Xu study.

Misspecification #1: Omitting a Variable

Suppose we do not include lnM in the regression model:

$$R = a_0 + a_1B + a_2\text{lnPB} + a_3FF + \varepsilon$$

If lnM is correlated with any of the remaining independent variables (B, lnPB, or FF), then the error term is also correlated with the same independent variables and the resulting regression coefficients (the estimates of a_0, a_1, and a_2) are biased and inconsistent. That means our hypothesis tests and predictions using the model are unreliable.

3. Fenghua Wang and Yexiao Xu. " hat Determines Chinese Stock Returns." *Financial Analysts Journal* no. 6 (November/December 2004): 65–77.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Professor's Note: Omission of a variable in this context means that the variable should be included in the model but is not. Absence of a variable in the model does not necessarily imply omission.

Just because a variable is highly correlated with an independent variable does not mean it has to be included in the model to avoid omission error.

Misspecification #2: Variable Should Be Transformed

Regression assumes that the dependent variable is linearly related to each of the independent variables. Typically, however, market capitalization is not linearly related to portfolio returns, but the natural log of market cap is linearly related. If we include market cap in the regression without transforming it by taking the natural log—if we use M and not ln(M)—we've misspecified the model.

$$R = c_0 + c_1B + c_2M + c_3\ln PB + c_4FF + \varepsilon$$

Other examples of transformations include squaring the variable or taking the square root of the variable. If financial statement data are included in the regression model, a common transformation is to standardize the variables by dividing by sales (for income statement or cash flow items) or total assets (for balance sheet items). You should recognize these as items from *common-size financial statements.*

Misspecification #3: Incorrectly Pooling Data

Suppose the relationship between returns and the independent variables during the first three years is actually different than relationship in the second three-year period (i.e., the regression coefficients are different from one period to the next). By pooling the data and estimating one regression over the entire period, rather than estimating two separate regressions over each of the subperiods, we have misspecified the model and our hypothesis tests and predictions of portfolio returns will be misleading.

Misspecification #4: Using a Lagged Dependent Variable as an Independent Variable

A lagged variable in a time series regression is the value of a variable from a prior period. In our example, the dependent variable is portfolio return in month *t*, so a lagged dependent variable would be the portfolio return in the previous period, month t – 1 (which is denoted as R_{t-1}).

$$R = d_0 + d_1B + d_2\ln M + d_3\ln PB + d_4FF + d_5R_{t-1} + \varepsilon$$

If the error terms in the regression model are also serially correlated (which is common in time series regressions), then this model misspecification will result in biased and inconsistent regression estimates and unreliable hypothesis tests and return predictions.

Misspecification #5: Forecasting the Past

The proper specification of the model is to measure the dependent variable as returns during a particular month (say July 1996), and the independent variable ln(M) as the natural log of market capitalization *at the beginning* of July. Remember that market cap is equal to shares outstanding times price per share. If we measure market cap *at the end* of July and use it in our regression, we're naturally going to conclude that stocks with higher market cap at the end of July had higher returns during July. In other words, our model is misspecified because it is forecasting the past: we're using variables measured at the end of July to predict a variable measured during July.

Misspecification #6: Measuring Independent Variables with Error

The free float (FF) independent variable is actually trying to capture the relationship between corporate governance quality and portfolio returns. However, because we can't actually measure "corporate governance quality," we have to use a proxy variable. Wang and Xu used free float to proxy for corporate governance quality. The presumption is that the higher the level of free float, the more influence the capital markets have on management's decision making process and the more effective the corporate governance structure. However, because we're using free float as a proxy, we're actually measuring the variable we want to include in our regression—corporate governance quality—with error. Once again our regression estimates will be biased and inconsistent and our hypothesis testing and predictions unreliable.

Professor's Note: For more information on corporate governance and the valuation implications of effective corporate governance practices, see the topic review of corporate governance in Study Session 9.

Another common example when an independent variable is measured with error is when we want to use expected inflation in our regression but use actual inflation as a proxy.

LOS 12.l: Describe models with qualitative dependent variables.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 376

Financial analysis often calls for the use of a model that has a **qualitative dependent variable**, a dummy variable that takes on a value of either zero or one. An example of an application requiring the use of a qualitative dependent variable is a model that attempts to predict when a bond issuer will default. In this case, the dependent variable may take on a value of one in the event of default and zero in the event of no default. An ordinary regression model is not appropriate for situations that require a qualitative dependent variable. However, there are several different types of models that use a qualitative dependent variable.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

- **Probit and logit models.** A probit model is based on the normal distribution, while a logit model is based on the logistic distribution. Application of these models results in estimates of the probability that the event occurs (e.g., probability of default). The maximum likelihood methodology is used to estimate coefficients for probit and logit models. These coefficients relate the independent variables to the likelihood of an event occurring, such as a merger, bankruptcy, or default.
- **Discriminant models.** Discriminant models are similar to probit and logit models but make different assumptions regarding the independent variables. Discriminant analysis results in a linear function similar to an ordinary regression, which generates an overall score, or ranking, for an observation. The scores can then be used to rank or classify observations. A popular application of a discriminant model makes use of financial ratios as the independent variables to predict the qualitative dependent variable bankruptcy. A linear relationship among the independent variables produces a value for the dependent variable that places a company in a bankrupt or not bankrupt class.

The analysis of regression models with qualitative dependent variables is the same as we have been discussing all through this topic review. Examine the individual coefficients using *t*-tests, determine the validity of the model with the *F*-test and the R^2, and look out for heteroskedasticity, serial correlation, and multicollinearity.

LOS 12.m: Interpret the economic meaning of the results of multiple regression analysis, and evaluate a regression model and its results.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 376

The economic meaning of the results of a regression estimation focuses primarily on the slope coefficients. For example, suppose that we run a regression using a cross section of stock returns (in percent) as the dependent variable, and the stock betas (CAPM) and market capitalizations (in $ billions) as our independent variables. The slope coefficients indicate the expected change in the stock returns for a one unit change in beta or market capitalization. The estimated regression equation is:

$$\text{Return} = 5.0 + 4.2\ \text{Beta} - 0.05\ \text{Mkt.Cap.} + \varepsilon$$

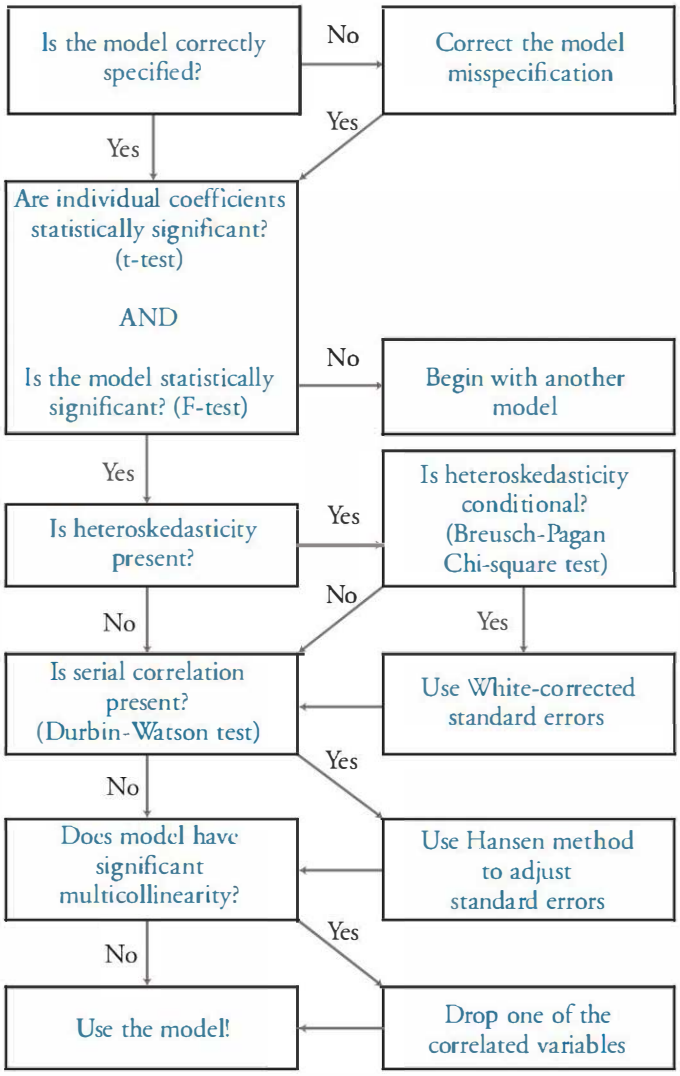
Furthermore, assume that these coefficient estimates are significantly different from zero in a statistical sense. The economic meaning of these results is that, on average, a one unit increase in beta risk is associated with a 4.2% *increase* in return, while a $1 billion increase in market capitalization implies a 0.05% *decrease* in return.

As is always the case with statistical inferences, it is possible to identify a relationship that has statistical significance without having any economic significance. For instance, a study of dividend announcements may identify a statistically significant abnormal return following the announcement, but these returns may not be sufficient to cover transactions costs.

Assessing a Multiple Regression Model—Putting It All Together

The flow chart in Figure 8 will help you evaluate a multiple regression model and grasp the "big picture" in preparation for the exam.

Figure 8: Assessment of a Multiple Regression Model



©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

KEY CONCEPTS

LOS 12.a

The multiple regression equation specifies a dependent variable as a linear function of two or more independent variables:

$$Y_i = b_0 + b_1X_{1i} + b_2X_{2i} + \ldots + b_kX_{ki} + \varepsilon_i$$

The intercept term is the value of the dependent variable when the independent variables are equal to zero. Each slope coefficient is the estimated change in the dependent variable for a one-unit change in that independent variable, holding the other independent variables constant.

LOS 12.b

A *t*-test is used for hypothesis testing of regression parameter estimates:

$$t_{bj} = \frac{\hat{b}_j - b_j}{s_{\hat{b}_j}}, \text{ with } n - k - 1 \text{ degrees of freedom}$$

Testing for statistical significance means testing $H_0: b_j = 0$ vs. $H_a: b_j \neq 0$.

LOS 12.c

The confidence interval for regression coefficient is:

estimated regression coefficient $\pm$ (critical *t*-value)(coefficient standard error)

The value of dependent variable Y is predicted as:

$$\hat{Y} = \hat{b}_0 + \hat{b}_1X_1 + \hat{b}_2X_2 + \ldots + \hat{b}_kX_k$$

LOS 12.d

Assumptions of multiple regression mostly pertain to the error term, ε_i.

- A linear relationship exists between the dependent and independent variables.
- The independent variables are not random, and there is no exact linear relation between any two or more independent variables.
- The expected value of the error term is zero.
- The variance of the error terms is constant.
- The error for one observation is not correlated with that of another observation.
- The error term is normally distributed.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

LOS 12.e

The *F*-distributed test statistic can be used to test the significance of all (or any subset of) the independent variables (i.e., the overall fit of the model) using a one-tailed test:

$$F = \frac{MSR}{MSE} = \frac{RSS/k}{SSE/[n-k-1]} \text{ with k and n – k – 1 degrees of freedom}$$

LOS 12.f

The coefficient of determination, R^2, is the percentage of the variation in Y that is explained by the set of independent variables.

- R^2 increases as the number of independent variables increases—this can be a problem.
- The adjusted R^2 adjusts the R^2 for the number of independent variables.
- $R_a^2 = 1 - \left[\left(\frac{n-1}{n-k-1}\right) \times (1 - R^2)\right]$

LOS 12.g

An ANOVA table is used to assess the usefulness of a regression model's independent variable(s) in explaining the dependent variable:

Source	*df (Degrees of Freedom)*	*SS (Sum of Squares)*	*MS Mean Square = (SS/df)*
Regression	k	RSS	MSR
Error	n – k – 1	SSE	MSE
Total	n – 1	SST	

$$MSE = \frac{SSE}{n-k-1};\ MSR = \frac{RSS}{k};\ R^2 = \frac{RSS}{SST};\ F = \frac{MSR}{MSE};\ SEE = \sqrt{MSE}$$

LOS 12.h

Qualitative independent variables (dummy variables) capture the effect of a binary independent variable:

- Slope coefficient is interpreted as the change in the dependent variable for the case when the dummy variable is one.
- Use one less dummy variable than the number of categories.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

LOS 12.i,j

Summary of what you need to know regarding violations of the assumptions of multiple regression:

Violation	*Conditional Heteroskedasticity*	*Serial Correlation*	*Multicollinearity*
What is it?	Residual variance related to level of independent variables	Residuals are correlated	Two or more independent variables are correlated
Effect?	Coefficients are consistent. Standard errors are underestimated. Too many Type I errors.	Coefficients are consistent. Standard errors are underestimated. Too many Type I errors (positive correlation).	Coefficients are consistent (but unreliable). Standard errors are overestimated. Too many Type II errors.
Detection?	Breusch-Pagan chi-square test $= n \times R^2$	Durbin-Watson test $\approx 2(1 - r)$	Conflicting t and F statistics; correlations among independent variables if $k = 2$
Correction?	Use White-corrected standard errors	Use the Hansen method to adjust standard errors	Drop one of the correlated variables

LOS 12.k

There are six common misspecifications of the regression model that you should be aware of and able to recognize:

- Omitting a variable.
- Variable should be transformed.
- Incorrectly pooling data.
- Using lagged dependent variable as independent variable.
- Forecasting the past.
- Measuring independent variables with error.

The effects of the model misspecification on the regression results are basically the same for all of the misspecifications: regression coefficients are biased and inconsistent, which means we can't have any confidence in our hypothesis tests of the coefficients or in the predictions of the model.

LOS 12.l

Qualitative dependent variables (e.g., bankrupt versus non-bankrupt) require methods other than ordinary least squares (e.g., probit, logit, or discriminant analysis).

LOS 12.m

The values of the slope coefficients suggest the economic meaning of the relationship between the independent and dependent variables, but it is important for the analyst to keep in mind that a regression may have statistical significance even when there is no practical economic significance in the relationship.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

CONCEPT CHECKERS

Use the following ANOVA table for Questions 1 through 4.

Source	*Sum of Squares (SS)*	*Degrees of Freedom*
Regression	1,025	5
Error	925	25

1. The number of sample observations in the regression estimation is *closest* to:
   A. 29.
   B. 30.
   C. 31.

2. The mean squared error (MSE) is *closest* to:
   A. 37.
   B. 82.
   C. 205.

3. The R^2 statistic is *closest* to:
   A. 53%.
   B. 50%.
   C. 47%.

4. The *F*-statistic is *closest* to:
   A. 1.1.
   B. 3.3.
   C. 5.5.

Use the following information to answer Questions 5 through 9.

Multiple regression was used to explain stock returns using the following variables:

Dependent variable:
RET = annual stock returns (%)

Independent variables:
MKT = Market capitalization = Market capitalization / $1.0 million
IND = Industry quartile ranking (IND = 4 is the highest ranking)
FORT = Fortune 500 firm, where {FORT = 1 if the stock is that of a Fortune 500 firm, FORT = 0 if not a Fortune 500 stock}

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

The regression results are presented in the tables below.

	Coefficient	*Standard Error*	*t-Statistic*	*p-Value*
Intercept	0.5220	1.2100	0.430	0.681
Market Capitalization	0.0460	0.0150	3.090	0.021
Industry Ranking	0.7102	0.2725	2.610	0.040
Fortune 500	0.9000	0.5281	1.700	0.139

ANOVA	*df*	*SS*	*MSS*	*F*	*Significance F*
Regression	3	20.5969	6.8656	12.100	0.006
Error	6	3.4031	0.5672		
Total	9	24.0000			

Test	*Test-Statistic*
Breusch-Pagan	17.7
Durbin-Watson	1.8

5. Based on the results in the table, which of the following *most accurately* represents the regression equation?
   A. 0.43 + 3.09(MKT) + 2.61(IND) + 1.70(FORT).
   B. 0.681 + 0.021(MKT) + 0.04(IND) + 0.139(FORT).
   C. 0.522 + 0.0460(MKT) + 0.7102(IND) + 0.9(FORT).

6. The expected amount of the stock return attributable to it being a Fortune 500 stock is *closest* to:
   A. 0.522.
   B. 0.139.
   C. 0.900.

7. The expected return on the stock of a firm that is not in the Fortune 500, has a market capitalization of $5 million, and is in an industry with a rank of 3 is *closest* to:
   A. 2.88%.
   B. 3.98%.
   C. 1.42%.

8. Does being a Fortune 500 stock contribute significantly to stock returns?
   A. Yes, at a 10% level of significance.
   B. Yes, at a 5% level of significance.
   C. No, not at a reasonable level of significance.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

9. The *p*-value of the Breusch-Pagan test is 0.0005. The lower and upper limits for the Durbin-Watson test are 0.40 and 1.90, respectively. Based on this data and the information in the tables, there is evidence of:
   A. only serial correlation.
   B. serial correlation and heteroskedasticity.
   C. only heteroskedasticity.

Use the following information to answer Questions 10 and 11.

An analyst evaluates the sum of squared error and total sum of squares from a multiple regression with four independent variables to be 4,320 and 9,105 respectively. There are 65 observations in the sample.

10. The *F*-statistic is *closest* to:
   A. 13.54.
   B. 13.77.
   C. 16.61.

11. The critical *F*-value for testing $H_0 = b_1 = b_2 = b_3 = b_4 = 0$ vs. H_a: at least one $b_j \neq 0$ at the 5% significance level is *closest* to:
   A. 2.37.
   B. 2.53.
   C. 2.76.

12. Which of the following situations is *least likely* to result in the misspecification of a regression model with monthly returns as the dependent variable?
   A. Failing to include an independent variable that is related to monthly returns.
   B. Using leading P/E from the previous period as an independent variable.
   C. Using actual inflation as an independent variable to proxy for expected inflation.

13. The *least likely* result of regression model misspecification is:
   A. unreliable hypothesis tests of the regression coefficients.
   B. inconsistent regression coefficients.
   C. unbiased regression coefficients.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

CHALLENGE PROBLEMS

14. Phil Ohlmer is developing a regression model to predict returns on a hedge fund composite index using several different independent variables. Which of the following list of independent variables, if included in the model, is *most likely* to lead to biased and inconsistent regression coefficients and why?
    A. Small-cap index returns, high-yield bond index returns, and emerging market index returns; because small-cap returns and hedge fund index returns are likely to be correlated.
    B. Small-cap index returns, high-yield bond index returns, and emerging market index returns; because small-cap returns and emerging market index returns are likely to be correlated.
    C. Small-cap index returns, previous period hedge fund composite index returns, high-yield bond index returns, and emerging market index returns; because the regression model is likely to be misspecified.

15. What condition is the Durbin-Watson statistic designed to detect in multiple regression, and what is the *most appropriate* remedy to correct for that condition?

	Condition	Remedy
A.	Serial correlation	Use the Hansen method
B.	Autocorrelation	Use generalized least squares
C.	Heteroskedasticity	Use generalized least squares

16. Which of the following situations is *least likely* the result of a multiple regression analysis with more than 50 observations?

	R^2	Adjusted R^2
A.	71%	69%
B.	83%	86%
C.	10%	–2%

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Use the following information for Questions 17 and 18.

Phil Ohlmer estimates a cross sectional regression in order to predict price to earnings ratios (P/E) with fundamental variables that are related to P/E, including dividend payout ratio (DPO), growth rate (G), and beta (B). In addition, all 50 stocks in the sample come from two industries, electric utilities or biotechnology. He defines the following dummy variable:

IND = 0 if the stock is in the electric utilities industry, or
= 1 if the stock is in the biotechnology industry

The results of his regression are shown in the following table.

Variable	*Coefficient*	*t-Statistic*
Intercept	6.75	3.89*
IND	8.00	4.50*
DPO	4.00	1.86
G	12.35	2.43*
B	−0.50	1.46

*significant at the 5% level

17. Based on these results, it would be *most appropriate* to conclude that:
A. biotechnology industry PEs are statistically significantly larger than electric utilities industry PEs.
B. electric utilities PEs are statistically significantly larger than biotechnology industry PEs, holding DPO, G, and B constant.
C. biotechnology industry PEs are statistically significantly larger than electric utilities industry PEs, holding DPO, G, and B constant.

18. Ohlmer is valuing a biotechnology stock with a dividend payout ratio of 0.00, a beta of 1.50, and an expected earnings growth rate of 0.14. The predicted P/E on the basis of the values of the explanatory variables for the company is *closest* to:
A. 7.7.
B. 15.7.
C. 17.2.

19. Assumptions underlying a multiple regression are *most likely* to include:
A. The expected value of the error term is $0.00 < i < 1.00$.
B. Linear and non-linear relationships exist between the dependent and independent variables.
C. The error for one observation is not correlated with that of another observation.

20. Qualitative dependent variables should be verified using:
A. a dummy variable based on the logistic distribution.
B. a discriminant model using a linear function for ranked observations.
C. tests for heteroskedasticity, serial correlation, and multicollinearity.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

ANSWERS – CONCEPT CHECKERS

1. C k = 5 and n – 5 – 1 = 25, so n = 31

2. A $MSE = \frac{SSE}{df_{error}} = \frac{925}{25} = 37$

3. A $R^2 = \frac{RSS}{SST} = \frac{1,025}{1,950} = 53\%$

4. C $F = \frac{MSR}{MSE} = \frac{\frac{RSS}{df_{regression}}}{\frac{SSE}{df_{error}}} = \frac{\frac{1,025}{5}}{\frac{925}{25}} = \frac{205}{37} = 5.5$

5. C The coefficients column contains the regression parameters. The regression equation is thus RET = 0.522 + 0.0460(MKT) + 0.7102(IND) + 0.9(FORT).

6. C The coefficient on FORT is the amount of the return attributable to the stock of a Fortune 500 firm. Other things equal, the return on a Fortune 500 company is expected to exceed the return on a non-Fortune 500 company by 0.9% annually.

7. A The regression equation is 0.522 + 0.0460(MKT) + 0.7102(IND) + 0.9(FORT), so RET = 0.522 + 0.0460(5) + 0.7102(3) + 0.900(0) = 2.88%.

8. C The *p*-value = 0.139, or 13.9%, which is not a reasonable level of significance.

9. C The Breusch-Pagan test is statistically significant at any reasonable level of significance, which indicates heteroskedasticity. The Durbin-Watson statistic is greater than the lower limit, but less than the upper limit, which places it in the "inconclusive" area. Thus, we are unable to reject the null hypothesis that there is no serial correlation present.

10. C RSS = 9,105 – 4,320 = 4,785

$$F = \frac{\frac{4,785}{4}}{\frac{4,320}{65-4-1}} = \frac{1,196.25}{72} = 16.61$$

11. B This is a one-tailed test, so the critical *F*-value at the 5% significance level with 4 and 60 degrees of freedom is approximately 2.53.

12. B Using leading P/E from a prior period as an independent variable in the regression is unlikely to result in misspecification because it is not related to any of the six types of misspecifications previously discussed. We're not forecasting the past because leading P/E is calculated using beginning-of-period stock price and a forecast of earnings for the next period. Omitting a relevant independent variable from the regression and using actual instead of expected inflation (measuring the independent variable in error) are likely to result in model misspecification.

13. C The effects of the model misspecification on the regression results are basically the same for all of the misspecifications: regression coefficients are biased and inconsistent, which means we can't have any confidence in our hypothesis tests of the coefficients or in the predictions of the model. Notice that choice C states that model misspecification will result in "unbiased" regression coefficients, while in fact model misspecification is most likely to result in "biased" regression coefficients.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

ANSWERS – CHALLENGE PROBLEMS

14. C Including a lagged dependent variable (previous period hedge fund composite index returns) in the list of independent variables is likely to lead to model misspecification and biased and inconsistent regression coefficients.

    The fact that an independent variable (small-cap returns) and the dependent variable (hedge fund index returns) are correlated is not a problem for the regression model; we would expect that if the model has predictive power, the dependent variable would be correlated with the independent variables. The fact that two independent variables (small-cap returns and emerging market index returns) are correlated is not a problem of model misspecification, but potentially one of multicollinearity. Without additional information, we can't draw any conclusions concerning whether multicollinearity is a problem (remember "most likely").

15. A The Durbin-Watson statistic tests for serial correlation of the residuals. The appropriate remedy if serial correlation is detected is to use the Hansen method.

16. B Adjusted R^2 must be less than or equal to R^2. However, if R^2 is low enough and the number of independent variables is large, adjusted R^2 may be negative.

17. C The *t*-statistic tests the null that industry PEs are equal. The dummy variable is significant and positive, and the dummy variable is defined as being equal to one for biotechnology stocks, which means that biotechnology PEs are statistically significantly larger than electric utility PEs. Remember, however, this is only accurate if we hold the other independent variables in the model constant.

18. B Note that IND = 1 because the stock is in the biotech industry. Predicted P/E = 6.75 + (8.00 × 1) + (4.00 × 0.00) + (12.35 × 0.14) – (0.50 × 1.5) = 15.7.

19. C Assumptions underlying a multiple regression include: the error for one observation is not correlated with that of another observation; the expected value of the error term is zero; a linear relationship exists between the dependent and independent variables; the variance of the error terms is constant.

20. C All qualitative dependent variable models must be tested for heteroskedasticity, serial correlation, and multicollinearity. Each of the alternatives are potential examples of a qualitative dependent variable model, but none are universal elements of all qualitative dependent variable models.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

The following is a review of the Quantitative Methods for Valuation principles designed to address the learning outcome statements set forth by CFA Institute. This topic is also covered in:

Time-Series Analysis

Study Session 3

Exam Focus

A time series is a set of observations of a random variable spaced evenly through time (e.g., quarterly sales revenue for a company over the past 60 quarters). For the exam, given a regression output, identifying violations such as heteroskedasticity, nonstationarity, serial correlation, etc., will be important, as well as being able to calculate a predicted value given a time-series model. Know why a log-linear model is sometimes used; understand the implications of seasonality and how to detect and correct it, as well as the root mean squared error (RMSE) criterion.

LOS 13.a: Calculate and evaluate the predicted trend value for a time series, modeled as either a linear trend or a log-linear trend, given the estimated trend coefficients.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 412

A **time series** is a set of observations for a variable over successive periods of time (e.g., monthly stock market returns for the past ten years). The series has a **trend** if a consistent pattern can be seen by plotting the data (i.e., the individual observations) on a graph. For example, a seasonal trend in sales data is easily detected by plotting the data and noting the significant jump in sales during the same month(s) each year.

Linear Trend Model

A **linear trend** is a time series pattern that can be graphed using a straight line. A downward sloping line indicates a negative trend, while an upward-sloping line indicates a positive trend.

The simplest form of a linear trend is represented by the following linear trend model:

$$y_t = b_0 + b_1(t) + \varepsilon_t$$

where:

y_t = the value of the time series (the dependent variable) at time t
b_0 = intercept at the vertical axis (y-axis)
b_1 = slope coefficient (or trend coefficient)
ε_t = error term (or residual term or disturbance term)
t = time (the independent variable); t = 1, 2, 3…T

Ordinary least squares (OLS) regression is used to estimate the coefficient in the trend line, which provides the following prediction equation:

$$\hat{y}_t = \hat{b}_0 + \hat{b}_1(t)$$

where:
$\hat{y}_t$ = the predicted value of y (the dependent variable) at time t
$\hat{b}_0$ = the estimated value of the intercept term
$\hat{b}_1$ = the estimated value of the slope coefficient

Don't let this model confuse you. It's very similar to the simple linear regression model we covered previously; only here, (t) takes on the value of the time period. For example, in period 2, the equation becomes:

$$\hat{y}_2 = \hat{b}_0 + \hat{b}_1(2)$$

And, likewise, in period 3:

$$\hat{y}_3 = \hat{b}_0 + \hat{b}_1(3)$$

This means $\hat{y}$ increases by the value of $\hat{b}_1$ each period.

Example: Using a linear trend model

Assume you are given a linear trend model with $\hat{b}_0 = 1.70$ and $\hat{b}_1 = 3.0$.

Calculate $\hat{y}_t$ for t = 1 and t = 2.

Answer:

When t = 1, $\hat{y}_1 = 1.70 + 3.0(1) = 4.70$

When t = 2, $\hat{y}_2 = 1.70 + 3.0(2) = 7.70$

Note that the difference between $\hat{y}_1$ and $\hat{y}_2$ is 3.0, or the value of the trend coefficient b_1.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Example: Trend analysis

Consider hypothetical time series data for manufacturing capacity utilization.

Manufacturing Capacity Utilization

Quarter	*Time (t)*	*Manufacturing Capacity Utilization (in%)*	*Quarter*	*Time (t)*	*Manufacturing Capacity Utilization (in %)*
2004.1	1	82.4	2005.4	8	80.9
2004.2	2	81.5	2006.1	9	81.3
2004.3	3	80.8	2006.2	10	81.9
2004.4	4	80.5	2006.3	11	81.7
2005.1	5	80.2	2006.4	12	80.3
2005.2	6	80.2	2007.1	13	77.9
2005.3	7	80.5	2007.2	14	76.4

Applying the OLS methodology to fit the linear trend model to the data produces the results shown below.

Time Series Regression Results for Manufacturing Capacity Utilization

Regression model: $y_t = b_0 + b_1 t + \varepsilon_t$

R square	0.346			
Adjusted R square	0.292			
Standard error	1.334			
Observations	14			
		Coefficients	*Standard Error*	*t-Statistic*
Intercept		82.137	0.753	109.066
Manufacturing utilization		−0.223	0.088	−2.534

Based on this information, predict the projected capacity utilization for the time period involved in the study (i.e., in-sample estimates).

Answer:

As shown in the regression output, the estimated intercept and slope parameters for our manufacturing capacity utilization model are $\hat{b}_0 = 82.137$ and $\hat{b}_1 = -0.223$, respectively. This means that the prediction equation for capacity utilization can be expressed as:

$$\hat{y}_t = 82.137 - 0.223t$$

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

With this equation, we can generate estimated values for capacity utilization, $\hat{y}_t$, for each of the 14 quarters in the time series. For example, using the model capacity utilization for the first quarter of 2004 is estimated at 81.914:

$$\hat{y}_t = 82.137 - 0.223(1) = 82.137 - 0.223 = 81.914$$

Note that the estimated value of capacity utilization in that quarter (using the model) is not exactly the same as the actual, measured capacity utilization for that quarter (82.4). The difference between the two is the error or residual term associated with that observation:

$$\text{Residual (error)} = \text{actual value} - \text{predicted value} \approx 82.4 - 81.914 = 0.486$$

Note that since the actual, measured value is greater than the predicted value of y for 2004.1, the error term is positive. Had the actual, measured value been less than the predicted value, the error term would have been negative.

The projections (i.e., values generated by the model) for all quarters are compared to the actual values below.

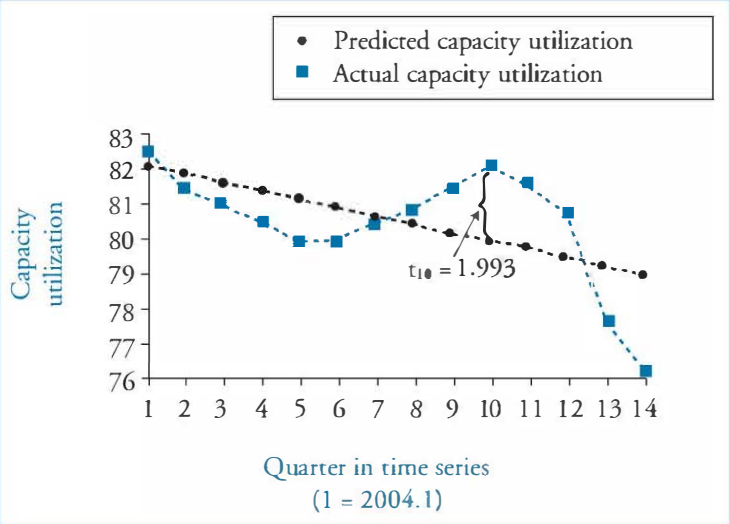
Projected Versus Actual Capacity Utilization

Quarter	*Time*	$\hat{y}_t$	y_t	*Quarter*	*Time*	$\hat{y}_t$	y_t
2004.1	1	81.914	82.4	2005.4	8	80.353	80.9
2004.2	2	81.691	81.5	2006.1	9	80.130	81.3
2004.3	3	81.468	80.8	2006.2	10	79.907	81.9
2004.4	4	81.245	80.5	2006.3	11	79.684	81.7
2005.1	5	81.022	80.2	2006.4	12	79.460	80.3
2005.2	6	80.799	80.2	2007.1	13	79.237	77.9
2005.3	7	80.576	80.5	2007.2	14	79.014	76.4

The following graph shows visually how the predicted values compare to the actual values, which were used to generate the regression equation. The **residuals**, or **error terms**, are represented by the distance between the predicted (straight) regression line and the actual data plotted in blue. For example, the residual for t = 10 is 81.9 – 79.907 = 1.993

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Predicted vs. Actual Capacity Utilization



Since we utilized a linear regression model, the predicted values will by definition fall on a straight line. Since the raw data does not display a linear relationship, the model will probably not do a good job of predicting future values.

Log-Linear Trend Models

Time series data, particularly financial time series, often display *exponential growth* (growth with continuous compounding). Positive exponential growth means that the random variable (i.e., the time series) tends to increase at some constant rate of growth. If we plot the data, the observations will form a convex curve. Negative exponential growth means that the data tends to decrease at some constant rate of decay, and the plotted time series will be a concave curve.

When a series exhibits exponential growth, it can be modeled as:

$$y_t = e^{b_0 + b_1(t)}$$

where:
y_t = the value of the dependent variable at time t
b_0 = the intercept term
b_1 = the constant rate of growth
e = the base of the natural logarithm
t = time = 1, 2, 3...T

This model defines *y*, the dependent variable, as an *exponential* function of time, the independent variable. Rather than try to fit the nonlinear data with a linear (straight line) regression, we take the natural log of both sides of the equation and arrive at the *log-linear* model. This is frequently used when time series data exhibit exponential growth.

$$\ln(y_t) = \ln\left(e^{b_0 + b_1(t)}\right) \Rightarrow \ln(y_t) = b_0 + b_1(t)$$

Now that the equation has been transformed from an exponential to a linear function, we can use a linear regression technique to model the series. The use of the transformed data produces a *linear* trend line with a better fit for the data and increases the predictive ability of the model.

Example: Log-linear trend model

An analyst estimates a log-linear trend model using quarterly revenue data (in millions of $) from the first quarter of 1996 to the fourth quarter of 2007 for JP Northfield, Inc.:

$$\ln \text{revenue}_t = b_0 + b_1(t) + \varepsilon_t \qquad t = 1, 2, \ldots 48$$

The results are shown in the following table.

	Coefficient	*Standard Error*	*t-statistic*
Intercept	4.00	0.05	80.0
Trend	0.09	0.01	9.0

Calculate JP Northfield's predicted revenues in the first quarter of 2008.

Answer:

In the first quarter of 2008, *t* is equal to 49 because the sample has 48 observations.

$$\ln \text{revenue}_{49} = 4.00 + 0.09(49) = 8.41$$

$$\text{revenue}_{49} = e^{\ln \text{revenue}_{49}} = e^{8.41} = \$4{,}492 \text{ million}$$

The first answer you get in this calculation is the natural log of the revenue forecast. In order to turn the natural log into a revenue figure, you use the 2nd function of the LN key (e^x) on your BA II Plus: enter 8.41 and press [2nd] e^x = 4,492 million.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

LOS 13.b: Describe factors that determine whether a linear or a log-linear trend should be used with a particular time series, and evaluate the limitations of trend models.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 412

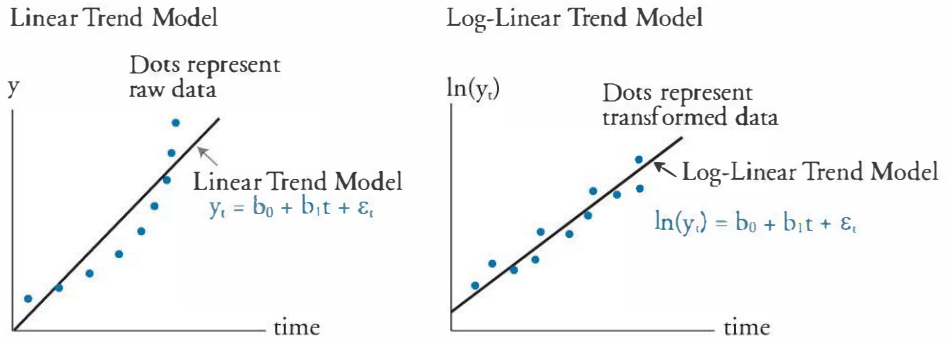
Factors that Determine Which Model Is Best

To determine if a linear or log-linear trend model should be used, the analyst should plot the data. A *linear trend model* may be appropriate if the data points appear to be equally distributed above and below the regression line. Inflation rate data can often be modeled with a linear trend model.

If, on the other hand, the data plots with a non-linear (curved) shape, then the residuals from a linear trend model will be persistently positive or negative for a period of time. In this case, the *log-linear model* may be more appropriate. By taking the log of the *y* variable, a regression line can better fit the data. Financial data (e.g., stock indices and stock prices) and company sales data are often best modeled with log-linear models.

Figure 1 shows a time series that is best modeled with a log-linear trend model rather than a linear trend model.

Figure 1: Linear vs. Log-Linear Trend Models



The left panel is a plot of data that exhibits exponential growth along with a linear trend line. The panel on the right is a plot of the natural logs of the original data and a representative log-linear trend line. The log-linear model fits the transformed data better than the linear trend model and, therefore, yields more accurate forecasts.

The bottom line is that when a variable grows at a constant *rate*, a log-linear model is most appropriate. When the variable increases over time by a constant *amount*, a linear trend model is most appropriate.

Limitations of Trend Models

Recall from the previous two topic reviews that one of the assumptions underlying linear regression is that the residuals are uncorrelated with each other. A violation of this

assumption is referred to as autocorrelation. In this case, the residuals are persistently positive or negative for periods of time and it is said that the data exhibit serial correlation. This is a significant limitation, as it means that the model is not appropriate for the time series and that we should not use it to predict future values.

In the preceding discussion, we suggested that a log-linear trend model would be better than a linear trend model when the variable exhibits a constant growth rate. However, it may be the case that even a log-linear model is not appropriate in the presence of serial correlation. In this case, we will want to turn to an autoregressive model.

Recall from the previous topic review that the Durbin Watson statistic (DW) is used to detect autocorrelation. For a time series model without serial correlation DW should be approximately equal to 2.0. A DW significantly different from 2.0 suggests that the residual terms are correlated.

LOS 13.c: Explain the requirement for a time series to be covariance stationary, and describe the significance of a series that is not stationary.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 421

When the dependent variable is regressed against one or more lagged values of itself, the resultant model is called as an **autoregressive model** (AR). For example, the sales for a firm could be regressed against the sales for the firm in the previous month.

Consider:

$$x_t = b_0 + b_1 x_{t-1} + \varepsilon_t$$

where:
x_t = value of time series at time t
b0 = intercept at the vertical axis (y-axis)
b1 = slope coefficient
x_{t-1} = value of time series at time $t - 1$
ε_t = error term (or residual term or disturbance term)
t = time; t = 1, 2, 3…T

In an autoregressive time series, past values of a variable are used to predict the current (and hence future) value of the variable.

Statistical inferences based on ordinary least squares (OLS) estimates for an AR time series model may be invalid unless the time series being modeled is **covariance stationary.**

A time series is covariance stationary if it satisfies the following three conditions:

1. *Constant and finite expected value.* The expected value of the time series is constant over time. (Later, we will refer to this value as the mean-reverting level.)

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

2. *Constant and finite variance.* The time series' volatility around its mean (i.e., the distribution of the individual observations around the mean) does not change over time.

3. *Constant and finite covariance between values at any given lag.* The covariance of the time series with leading or lagged values of itself is constant.

LOS 13.d: Describe the structure of an autoregressive (AR) model of order *p*, and calculate one- and two-period-ahead forecasts given the estimated coefficients.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 420

The following model illustrates how variable *x* would be regressed on itself with a lag of one and two periods:

$$x_t = b_0 + b_1 x_{t-1} + b_2 x_{t-2} + \varepsilon_t$$

Such a model is referred to as a *second-order* autoregressive model, or an AR(2) model. In general, an AR model of order *p*, AR(*p*), is expressed as:

$$x_t = b_0 + b_1 x_{t-1} + b_2 x_{t-2} + \ \ldots \ + b_p x_{t-p} + \varepsilon_t$$

where *p* indicates the number of lagged values that the autoregressive model will include as independent variables.

Forecasting With an Autoregressive Model

Autoregressive time series model forecasts are calculated in the same manner as those for other regression models, but since the independent variable is a lagged value of the dependent variable, it is necessary to calculate a one-step-ahead forecast before a two-step-ahead forecast can be calculated. The calculation of successive forecasts in this manner is referred to as the chain rule of forecasting.

A one-period-ahead forecast for an AR(1) model is determined in the following manner:

$$\hat{x}_{t+1} = \hat{b}_0 + \hat{b}_1 x_t$$

Likewise, a two-step-ahead forecast for an AR(1) model is calculated as:

$$\hat{x}_{t+2} = \hat{b}_0 + \hat{b}_1 \hat{x}_{t+1}$$

Note that the ^ symbol above the variables in the equations indicates that the inputs used in multi-period forecasts are actually forecasts (estimates) themselves. This implies that multi-period forecasts are more uncertain than single-period forecasts. For example, for a two-step-ahead forecast, there is the usual uncertainty associated with forecasting x_{t+1} using x_t, plus the additional uncertainty of forecasting x_{t+2} using the forecasted value for x_{t+1}.

Example: Forecasting

Suppose that an AR(1) model has been estimated and has produced the following prediction equation: $x_t = 1.2 + 0.45x_{t-1}$. Calculate a two-step-ahead forecast if the current value of x is 5.0.

Answer:

One-step-ahead forecast: If $x_t = 5$, then $\hat{x}_{t+1} = 1.2 + 0.45(5) = 3.45$.

Two-step-ahead forecast: If $\hat{x}_{t+1} = 3.45$, then $\hat{x}_{t+2} = 1.2 + 0.45(3.45) = 2.75$.

LOS 13.e: Explain how autocorrelations of the residuals can be used to test whether the autoregressive model fits the time series.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 422

Autocorrelation & Model Fit

When an AR model is correctly specified, the residual terms will not exhibit *serial correlation*. Serial correlation (or autocorrelation) means the error terms are positively or negatively correlated. When the error terms are correlated, standard errors are unreliable and *t*-tests of individual coefficients can incorrectly show statistical significance or insignificance.

If the residuals have significant autocorrelation, the AR model that produced the residuals is not the best model for the time series being analyzed. The procedure to test whether an AR time series model is correctly specified involves three steps:

Step 1: **Estimate** the AR model being evaluated using linear regression:

Start with a first-order AR model [i.e., AR(1)] using $x_t = b_0 + b_1x_{t-1} + \varepsilon_t$.

Step 2: **Calculate** the autocorrelations of the model's residuals (i.e., the level of correlation between the forecast errors from one period to the next).

Step 3: **Test** whether the autocorrelations are significantly different from zero:

If the model is correctly specified, none of the autocorrelations will be statistically significant. To test for significance, a *t*-test is used to test the hypothesis that the correlations of the residuals are zero. The *t*-statistic is the estimated autocorrelation divided by the standard error. The standard error is $1/\sqrt{T}$, where T is the number of observations, so the test statistic for each autocorrelation is $t = \dfrac{\rho_{\varepsilon_t,\varepsilon_{t-k}}}{1/\sqrt{T}}$ with (T – 2) degrees of freedom and $\rho_{\varepsilon_t,\varepsilon_{t-k}}$ is the correlation of error term t with the kth lagged error term.

Professor's Note: The Durbin-Watson test that we used with trend models is not appropriate for testing for serial correlation of the error terms in an autoregressive model. Use this t-test instead.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Example: Testing an AR model for proper specification

The correlations of the error terms from the estimation of an AR(1) model using a sample with 102 observations are presented in the following figure. Determine whether the model is correctly specified.

Autocorrelation Analysis

Model: $y_t = b_0 + b_1 y_{t-1} + \varepsilon_t$

Lag	*Autocorrelation*	*t-Statistic*	*Lag*	*Autocorrelation*	*t-Statistic*
1	0.0616114	0.622245	7	–0.010146	–0.102470
2	0.0843368	0.851760	8	0.0211711	0.213818
3	0.0258823	0.261398	9	–0.0959502	–0.969050
4	0.0188928	0.190808	10	0.0389730	0.393608
5	0.1001404	1.011368	11	–0.0677132	–0.683870
6	–0.0638219	–0.644570	12	–0.0122798	–0.124020

Answer:

In this example, the standard error is $1/\sqrt{102}$ or 0.099. The *t*-statistic for Lag 2 is then computed as 0.0843368 / 0.099 = 0.8518.

The critical two-tail *t*-value at the 5% significance level and 100 degrees of freedom is 1.98. The *t*-statistics indicate that none of the autocorrelations of the residuals in the previous figure is statistically different from zero because their absolute values are less than 1.98. Thus, there is sufficient reason to believe that the error terms from the AR(1) model are not serially correlated.

If the t-tests indicate that any of the correlations computed in Step 2 are statistically significant (i.e., $t \geq 1.98$), the AR model is not specified correctly. Additional lags are included in the model and the correlations of the residuals (error terms) are checked again. This procedure will be followed until all autocorrelations are insignificant.

LOS 13.f: Explain mean reversion, and calculate a mean-reverting level.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 425

A time series exhibits **mean reversion** if it has a tendency to move toward its mean. In other words, the time series has a tendency to decline when the current value is above the mean and rise when the current value is below the mean. If a time series is at its mean-reverting level, the model predicts that the next value of the time series will be the same as its current value (i.e., $\hat{x}_t = x_{t-1}$ when a time series is at its mean-reverting level).

For an AR(1) model, $x_t = b_0 + b_1 x_{t-1}$, the above equality implies that $x_t = b_0 + b_1 x_t$.

Solving for x_t, the mean-reverting level is expressed as $x_t = \dfrac{b_0}{(1 - b_1)}$.

So, if $x_t > \frac{b_0}{(1-b_1)}$, the AR(1) model predicts that x_{t+1} will be lower than x_t, and if $x_t < \frac{b_0}{1-b_1}$, the model predicts that x_{t+1} will be higher than x_t.

Example: Mean-reverting time series

Calculate the mean-reverting level for the manufacturing capacity utilization time series using the following regression results:

Time Series Regression Results for Manufacturing Capacity Utilization

Regression model: $x_t = b_0 + b_1 x_{t-1}$

R square	0.346508
Adjusted R square	0.29205
Standard error	1.333885
Observations	14

	Coefficients	*Standard Error*	*t-Statistic*
Intercept	82.137	0.753	109.080
Manufacturing utilization	−0.223	0.0884	−2.522

Answer:

$b_0 = 82.137$ and $b_1 = -0.223$, so the mean-reverting level, $b_0 / (1 - b_1)$, is computed as: mean-reverting level $= \frac{82.137}{[1-(-0.223)]} = 67.16$

This means that if the current level of manufacturing capacity utilization is above 67.16, it is expected to fall in the next period, and if manufacturing capacity utilization is below 67.16 in the current period, it is expected to rise in the next period.

All covariance stationary time series have a finite mean-reverting level. An AR(1) time series will have a finite mean-reverting level when the absolute value of the lag coefficient is less than 1 (i.e., $|b_1| < 1$).

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

LOS 13.g: Contrast in-sample and out-of-sample forecasts, and compare the forecasting accuracy of different time-series models based on the root mean squared error criterion.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 429

In-sample forecasts $(\hat{y}_t)$ are *within* the range of data (i.e., time period) used to estimate the model, which for a time series is known as the sample or test period. In-sample forecast errors are $(y_t - \hat{y}_t)$, where *t* is an observation within the sample period. In other words, we are comparing how accurate our model is in forecasting the actual data we used to develop the model. The Predicted vs. Actual Capacity Utilization figure in our Trend Analysis example shows an example of values predicted by the model compared to the values used to generate the model.

Out-of-sample forecasts are made *outside* of the sample period. In other words, we compare how accurate a model is in forecasting the *y* variable value for a time period outside the period used to develop the model. Out-of-sample forecasts are important because they provide a test of whether the model adequately describes the time series and whether it has relevance (i.e., predictive power) in the real world. Nonetheless, an analyst should be aware that most published research employs in-sample forecasts only.

The **root mean squared error** criterion (RMSE) is used to compare the accuracy of autoregressive models in forecasting out-of-sample values. For example, a researcher may have two autoregressive (AR) models: an AR(1) model and an AR(2) model. To determine which model will more accurately forecast future values, we calculate the RMSE (the square root of the average of the squared errors) for the out-of-sample data. Note that the model with the lowest RMSE for in-sample data may not be the model with the lowest RMSE for out-of-sample data.

For example, assume we have 60 months of historical unemployment data. We estimate both models over the first 36 of 60 months. To determine which model will produce better (i.e., more accurate) forecasts, we then forecast the values for the last 24 of 60 months of historical data. Using the actual values for the last 24 months as well as the values predicted by the models, we can calculate the RMSE for each model.

The model with the lower RMSE for the out-of-sample data will have lower forecast error and will be expected to have better predictive power in the future.

In addition to examining the RMSE criteria for a model, we will also want to examine the stability of regression coefficients, which we discuss below.

LOS 13.h: Explain the instability of coefficients of time-series models.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 431

Financial and economic time series inherently exhibit some form of *instability* or *nonstationarity*. This is because financial and economic conditions are dynamic, and the estimated regression coefficients in one period may be quite different from those estimated during another period.

Models estimated with shorter time series are usually more stable than those with longer time series because a longer sample period increases the chance that the underlying economic process has changed. Thus, there is a tradeoff between the increased statistical reliability when using longer time periods and the increased stability of the estimates when using shorter periods.

The primary concern when selecting a time series sample period is the underlying economic processes. Have there been regulatory changes? Has there been a dramatic change in the underlying economic environment?

If the answer is yes, then the historical data may not provide a reliable model. Merely examining the significance of the autocorrelation of the residuals will not indicate whether the model is valid. We must also examine whether the data is covariance stationary.

LOS 13.i: Describe characteristics of random walk processes, and contrast them to covariance stationary processes.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 433

Random walk. If a time series follows a random walk process, the predicted value of the series (i.e., the value of the dependent variable) in one period is equal to the value of the series in the previous period plus a random error term.

A time series that follows a simple random walk process is described in equation form as $x_t = x_{t-1} + \varepsilon_t$, where the best forecast of x_t is x_{t-1} and:

1. $E(\varepsilon_t) = 0$: The expected value of each error term is zero.
2. $E(\varepsilon_t^2) = \sigma^2$: The variance of the error terms is constant.
3. $E(\varepsilon_i,\varepsilon_j) = 0$; if $i \neq j$: There is no serial correlation in the error terms.

Random Walk with a Drift. If a time series follows a random walk *with a drift*, the intercept term is not equal to zero. That is, in addition to a random error term, the time series is expected to increase or decrease by a constant amount each period. A random walk with a drift can be described as:

$$x_t = b_0 + b_1 x_{t-1} + \varepsilon_t$$

where:
b_0 = the constant drift
b_1 = 1

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Covariance Stationarity. Neither a random walk nor a random walk with a drift exhibits covariance stationarity. To show this, let's start by expressing a random walk as:

$$x_t = b_0 + b_1 x_{t-1} + \varepsilon_t$$

where:
$b_0 = 0$ (for a random walk without a drift)
$b_0 \neq 0$ (for a random walk with a drift)
$b_1 = 1$ (for a random walk with or without a drift)

In either case (with or without a drift), the mean-reverting level is $\frac{b_0}{1 - b_1} = \frac{b_0}{0}$ (the division of any number by zero is undefined), and as we stated earlier, a time series must have a **finite mean-reverting level** to be covariance stationary. Thus, a random walk, with or without a drift, is not covariance stationary, and exhibits what is known as a **unit root** ($b_1 = 1$). For a time series that is not covariance stationary, the least squares regression procedure that we have been using to estimate an AR(1) model will not work without transforming the data. We discuss unit roots and how they are handled in the next section.

LOS 13.j: Describe implications of unit roots for time-series analysis, explain when unit roots are likely to occur and how to test for them, and demonstrate how a time series with a unit root can be transformed so it can be analyzed with an AR model.

LOS 13.k: Describe the steps of the unit root test for nonstationarity, and explain the relation of the test to autoregressive time-series models.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 437

As we discussed in the previous LOS, if the coefficient on the lag variable is 1, the series is not covariance stationary. If the value of the lag coefficient is equal to one, the time series is said to have a **unit root** and will follow a random walk process. Since a time series that follows a random walk is not covariance stationary, modeling such a time series in an AR model can lead to incorrect inferences.

Unit Root Testing for Nonstationarity

To determine whether a time series is covariance stationary, we can (1) run an AR model and examine autocorrelations, or (2) perform the Dickey Fuller test.

In the first method, an AR model is estimated and the statistical significance of the autocorrelations at various lags is examined. A stationary process will usually have residual autocorrelations insignificantly different from zero at all lags or residual autocorrelations that decay to zero as the number of lags increases.

A more definitive test for unit root is the Dickey Fuller test. For statistical reasons, you cannot directly test whether the coefficient on the independent variable in an AR time

series is equal to 1.0. To compensate, **Dickey and Fuller** created a rather ingenious test for a unit root. Remember, if an AR(1) model has a coefficient of 1, it has a unit root and no finite mean reverting level (i.e., it is not covariance stationary). Dickey and Fuller (DF) transform the AR(1) model to run a simple regression. To transform the model, they (1) start with the basic form of the AR(1) model and (2) subtract x_{t-1} from both sides:

(1) $$x_t = b_0 + b_1 x_{t-1} + \varepsilon$$

(2) $$x_t - x_{t-1} = b_0 + b_1 x_{t-1} - x_{t-1} + \varepsilon \rightarrow$$

$$x_t - x_{t-1} = b_0 + (b_1 - 1)x_{t-1} + \varepsilon$$

Then, rather than directly testing whether the original coefficient is different from 1, they test whether the new, transformed coefficient $(b_1 - 1)$ is different from zero using a modified *t*-test. If $(b_1 - 1)$ is not significantly different from zero, they say that b_1 must be equal to 1.0 and, therefore, the series must have a unit root.

Professor's Note: In their actual test, DF use the variable g, which equals $(b_1 - 1)$. The null hypothesis is g = 0 (i.e., the time series has a unit root). For the exam, understand how the test is conducted and be able to interpret its results. For example, if on the exam you are told the null (g = 0) cannot be rejected, your answer is that the time series has a unit root. If the null is rejected, the time series does not have a unit root.

First Differencing

If we believe a time series is a random walk (i.e., has a unit root), we can transform the data to a covariance stationary time series using a procedure called **first differencing**. The first differencing process involves subtracting the value of the time series (i.e., the dependent variable) in the immediately preceding period from the current value of the time series to define a new dependent variable, *y*. Note that by taking first differences, you model the **change** in the value of the dependent variable rather than the value of the dependent variable.

So, if the original time series of *x* has a unit root, the change in *x*, $x_t - x_{t-1} = \varepsilon_t$, is just the error term. This means we can define y_t as:

$$y_t = x_t - x_{t-1} \Rightarrow y_t = \varepsilon_t$$

Then, stating *y* in the form of an AR(1) model:

$$y_t = b_0 + b_1 y_{t-1} + \varepsilon$$

where:
$b_0 = b_1 = 0$

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

This transformed time series has a finite mean-reverting level of $\frac{0}{1-0} = 0$ and is, therefore, covariance stationary.

Example: Unit root

Suppose we decide to model the capacity utilization data. Using an AR(1) model, the results indicate that the capacity utilization time series probably contains a unit root and is, therefore, not covariance stationary. Discuss how this time series can be transformed to be covariance stationary.

Answer:

Covariance stationarity can often be achieved by transforming the data using first differencing and modeling the first-differenced time series as an autoregressive time series.

Example: First differencing

The next figure contains the first-differences of our manufacturing capacity utilization time series for the period 2004.1 through 2007.3. The first two columns contain the original time series. The first differences of the original series are contained in the third column of the table, and the one-period lagged values on the first-differences are presented in the fourth column of the table. Note that the first differences in this example represent the *change* in manufacturing capacity from the preceding period and are designated as y_t and y_{t-1}.

First-Differenced Manufacturing Capacity Utilization Data

Quarter	*Capacity*	*Change in Capacity* $y_t = x_t - x_{t-1}$	*Lagged Change in Capacity* $y_{t-1} = x_{t-1} - x_{t-2}$
2004.1	82.4		
2004.2	81.5	−0.9	
2004.3	80.8	−0.7	−0.9
2004.4	80.5	−0.3	−0.7
2005.1	80.2	−0.3	−0.3
2005.2	80.2	0.0	−0.3
2005.3	80.5	0.3	0.0
2005.4	80.9	0.4	0.3
2006.1	81.3	0.4	0.4
2006.2	81.9	0.6	0.4
2006.3	81.7	−0.2	0.6
2006.4	80.3	−1.4	−0.2
2007.1	77.9	−2.4	−1.4
2007.2	76.4	−1.5	−2.4
2007.3	76.4	0.0	−1.5

After this transformation, it is appropriate to regress the AR(1) model, $y_t = b_0 + b_1 y_{t-1}$. The regression results for the first-differenced time series are presented in the next figure, where it can be seen that the estimated coefficient on the lag variable is less than one (0.655).

Regression Output for First-Differenced Manufacturing Capacity

	Change in Capacity Utilization			
AR(1) Model $y_t = b_0 + b_1 y_{t-1} + \varepsilon_t$				
R^2	0.430869388			
Adjusted R^2	0.379130241			
Standard error	0.699210366			
Observations	13			
	Coefficients	*Standard Error*	*t-Statistic*	*p-Value*
Intercept	−0.090014589	0.220409703	−0.4084	0.69082
Lag 1	0.65496839	0.226964091	2.885780	0.0148

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

LOS 13.l: Explain how to test and correct for seasonality in a time-series model, and calculate and interpret a forecasted value using an AR model with a seasonal lag.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 445

Seasonality in a time-series is a pattern that tends to repeat from year to year. One example is monthly sales data for a retailer. Given that sales data normally vary according to the time of year, we might expect this month's sales (x_t) to be related to sales for the same month last year (x_{t-12}).

When seasonality is present, modeling the associated time series data would be misspecified unless the AR model incorporates the effects of the seasonality.

Example: Detecting seasonality

You are interested in predicting occupancy levels for a resort hotel chain and have obtained the chain's quarterly occupancy levels for the most recent 40 quarters (ten years). You decide to model the quarterly occupancy time-series using the AR(1) model:

$$\ln x_t = b_0 + b_1 \ln x_{t-1} + \varepsilon_t$$

Determine whether seasonality exists using the results presented in the following example.

Autoregression Output for Log-Quarterly Hotel Occupancy

Resort Occupancy Levels			
AR(1) Model $\ln x_t = b_0 + b_1 \ln x_{t-1} + \varepsilon_t$			
R^2	0.7929		
Standard error	0.1952		
Observations	39		
	Coefficients	Standard Error	*t*-Statistic
Intercept	0.0375	0.0274	1.369
Lag 1	0.5318	0.1635	3.2526
Autocorrelation of Residuals			
Residual Lag	Autocorrelation	Standard Error	*t*-Statistic
1	−0.0615	0.1601	−0.3841
2	−0.0121	0.1601	−0.0756
3	−0.0212	0.1601	−0.1324
4	0.8719	0.1601	5.4460

Answer:

The bottom part of the table contains the residual autocorrelations for the first four lags of the time series. What stands out is the relatively large autocorrelation and *t*-statistic for the fourth lag. With 39 observations and two parameters, (b_0 and b_1), there are 37 degrees of freedom. At a significance level of 5%, the critical *t*-value is 2.026.

The *t*-statistics indicate that none of the first three lagged autocorrelations is significantly different from zero. However, the *t*-statistic at Lag 4 is 5.4460, which means that we must reject the null hypothesis that the Lag 4 autocorrelation is zero and conclude that seasonality is present in the time-series. Thus, we conclude that this model is misspecified and will be unreliable for forecasting purposes. We need to include a seasonality term to make the model more correctly specified.

Professor's Note: With an AR(1) model, we lose one observation (i.e., we go from 40 to 39 observations). With an AR(2) model, we lose two observations, and so on. You may encounter time-series problems in other texts where the number of observations in the regression statistics seems not to be impacted by the order of the autoregressive model. In these cases, the author is implicitly indicating that additional prior data was available. For example, if an AR(2) model regression on a calendar year's monthly data shows 12 observations, it indicates that two additional data points from November and December of the previous year were additionally available.

Correcting for seasonality. The interpretation of seasonality in the above example is that occupancy in any quarter is related to occupancy in the previous quarter and the same quarter in the previous year. For example, fourth quarter 2009 occupancy is related to third quarter 2009 occupancy as well as fourth quarter 2008 occupancy.

To adjust for seasonality in an AR model, an additional lag of the *dependent* variable (corresponding to the same period in the previous year) is added to the original model as another *independent* variable. For example, if quarterly data are used, the seasonal lag is 4; if monthly data are used the seasonal lag is 12; and so on.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Example: Correcting for seasonality in a time-series model

We continue with our resort occupancy level example, where the significant residual correlation at Lag 4 indicates seasonality in the quarterly time series. By testing the correlations of the error terms, it appears that occupancy levels in each quarter are related not only to the previous quarter, but also to the corresponding quarter in the previous year. To adjust for this problem, we add a lagged value of the dependent variable to the original model that corresponds to the seasonal pattern.

To model the autocorrelation of the same quarters from year to year, we use an AR(1) model with a seasonal lag: $\ln x_t = b_0 + b_1(\ln x_{t-1}) + b_2(\ln x_{t-4}) + \varepsilon_t$. Note that this specification, the inclusion of a seasonal lag, does not result in an AR(2) model. It results in an AR(1) model incorporating a seasonal lag term.

The results obtained when this model is fit to the natural logarithm of the time series are presented in the following. Determine whether the model is specified correctly.

Log-Resort Hotel Occupancy

AR(1) Model with a Seasonal Lag: $\ln x_t = b_0 + b_1(\ln x_{t-1}) + b_2(\ln x_{t-4}) + \varepsilon_t$

R^2	0.948983874
Standard error	0.3754
Observations	36

	Coefficients	Standard Error	*t*-Statistic
Intercept	0.0085	0.0049	1.7347
Lag 1	0.2598	0.0527	4.9298
Lag 4	0.7921	0.2166	3.6570

Autocorrelation of Residuals

Residual Lag	Autocorrelation	Standard Error	*t*-Statistic
1	–0.0526	0.1667	–0.3156
2	0.0715	0.1667	0.4290
3	–0.0241	0.1667	–0.1446
4	–0.0435	0.1667	–0.2610

Answer:

Notice in the bottom of the table that the fourth-lag residual autocorrelation has dropped substantially and is, in fact, no longer statistically significant. Also notable in these results is the improvement in the R-square for the adjusted model (94.9%) compared to the R-square from the original model (79.3%). The results shown in the figure indicate that, by incorporating a seasonal lag term, the model is now specified correctly.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Forecasting with an AR Model with a Seasonal Lag

Example: Forecasting with an autoregressive model

Based on the regression results from the previous example and the occupancy levels over the past year (presented below), forecast the level of hotel occupancy for the first quarter of 2003.

Quarterly Hotel Occupancy Levels

Quarter	2002.1	2002.2	2002.3	2002.4
Occupancy Level	250,000	750,000	450,000	600,000

Answer:

We express the seasonally adjusted forecasting equation as:

$$\ln x_t = 0.0085 + 0.2598(\ln x_{t-1}) + 0.7921(\ln x_{t-4})$$

where x_t is the occupancy level for the tth quarter.

To forecast the occupancy level for the hotel chain for the first quarter of 2003 (i.e., 2003.1), the following computation is made:

$$\ln y_{2003.1} = 0.0085 + 0.2598(\ln y_{2002.4}) + 0.7921(\ln y_{2002.1})$$

$$\ln y_{2003.1} = 0.0085 + 0.2598(\ln 600{,}000) + 0.7921(\ln 250{,}000)$$

$$\ln y_{2003.1} = 0.0085 + 0.2598(13.3047) + 0.7921(12.4292)$$

$$\ln y_{2003.1} = 13.3103$$

$$\text{Since } y = e^{\ln(y)},\ y_{2003.1} = e^{13.3103} = 603{,}378.52$$

The forecasted level of hotel occupancy for the first quarter of 2003 is 603,379, a significant increase over the same quarter the previous year.

Professor's Note: Once again, the first answer you get in this calculation is the natural log of the occupancy forecast. In order to turn the natural log into an occupancy figure, you use the 2nd function of the LN key (e^x) on your BA II Plus: enter 13.3103 and press [2nd] e^x = 603,378.52.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

LOS 13.m: Explain autoregressive conditional heteroskedasticity (ARCH), and describe how ARCH models can be applied to predict the variance of a time series.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 451

When examining a single time series, such as an AR model, **autoregressive conditional heteroskedasticity** (ARCH) exists if the variance of the residuals in one period is *dependent* on the variance of the residuals in a previous period. When this condition exists, the standard errors of the regression coefficients in AR models and the hypothesis tests of these coefficients are invalid.

Using ARCH Models

An ARCH model is used to test for autoregressive conditional heteroskedasticity. Within the ARCH framework, an ARCH(1) time series is one for which the variance of the residuals in one period is dependent on (i.e., a function of) the variance of the residuals in the preceding period. To test whether a time series is ARCH(1), the squared residuals from an estimated time-series model, $\hat{\varepsilon}_t^2$, are regressed on the first lag of the squared residuals $\hat{\varepsilon}_{t-1}^2$.

The ARCH(1) regression model is expressed as:

$$\hat{\varepsilon}_t^2 = a_0 + a_1\hat{\varepsilon}_{t-1}^2 + \mu_t$$

where a_0 is the constant and μ_t is an error term.

If the coefficient, a_1, is statistically different from zero, the time series is ARCH(1).

If a time-series model has been determined to contain ARCH errors, regression procedures that correct for heteroskedasticity, such as *generalized least squares*, must be used in order to develop a predictive model. Otherwise, the standard errors of the model's coefficients will be incorrect, leading to invalid conclusions.

Predicting the Variance of a Time Series

However, if a time series has ARCH errors, an ARCH model can be used to predict the variance of the residuals in future periods. For example, if the data exhibit an ARCH(1) pattern, the ARCH(1) model can be used in period t to predict the variance of the residuals in period t + 1:

$$\hat{\sigma}_{t+1}^2 = \hat{a}_0 + \hat{a}_1\hat{\varepsilon}_t^2$$

Example: ARCH(1) time series

The next figure contains the results from the regression of an ARCH(1) model. The squared errors for periods t through T are regressed on the squared errors for periods t – 1 through T – 1. (μ_t is the error term for the model.) Determine whether the results indicate autoregressive conditional heteroskedasticity (ARCH), and if so, calculate the predicted variance of the error terms in the next period if the current period squared error is 0.5625.

ARCH (1) Regression Results

Model: $\hat{\varepsilon}_t^2 = a_0 + a_1\hat{\varepsilon}_{t-1}^2 + \mu_t$	*Coefficients*	*Standard Error*	*t-Statistic*	*p-Value*
Constant	5.9068	1.08631	5.4375	< 0.001
Lag 1	0.4515	0.09558	4.7238	< 0.001

Answer:

Since the *p*-value for the coefficient on the lagged variable indicates statistical significance, we can conclude that the time series is ARCH(1). As such, the variance of the error term in the next period can be computed as:

$$\hat{\sigma}_{t+1}^2 = \hat{a}_0 + \hat{a}_1\hat{\varepsilon}_t^2 = 5.9068 + 0.4515(0.5625) = 6.1608$$

Professor's Note: If the coefficient a_1 is zero, the variance is constant from period to period. If a_1 is greater than (less than) zero, the variance increases (decreases) over time (i.e., the error terms exhibit heteroskedasticity).

LOS 13.n: Explain how time-series variables should be analyzed for nonstationarity and/or cointegration before use in a linear regression.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 454

Occasionally an analyst will run a regression using two time series (i.e., time series utilizing two different variables). For example, using the market model to estimate the equity beta for a stock, an analyst regresses a time series of the stock's returns (y_t) on a time series of returns for the market (x_t):

$$y_t = b_0 + b_1x_t + e_t$$

Notice that now we are faced with two different time series (y_t and x_t), either or both of which could be subject to nonstationarity.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

To test whether the two time series have unit roots, the analyst first runs separate DF tests with five possible results:

1. Both time series are covariance stationary.
2. Only the dependent variable time series is covariance stationary.
3. Only the independent variable time series is covariance stationary.
4. Neither time series is covariance stationary and the two series *are not* cointegrated.
5. Neither time series is covariance stationary and the two series *are* cointegrated.

In scenario 1 the analyst can use linear regression, and the coefficients should be statistically reliable, but regressions in scenarios 2 and 3 will not be reliable. Whether linear regression can be used in scenarios 4 and 5 depends upon whether the two time series are *cointegrated.*

Cointegration

Cointegration means that two time series are economically linked (related to the same macro variables) or follow the same trend and that relationship is not expected to change. If two time series are cointegrated, the error term from regressing one on the other is covariance stationary and the *t*-tests are reliable. This means that scenario 5 will produce reliable regression estimates, whereas scenario 4 will not.

To test whether two time series are cointegrated, we regress one variable on the other using the following model:

$$y_t = b_0 + b_1 x_t + \varepsilon$$

where:
y_t = value of time series y at time t
x_t = value of time series x at time t

The residuals are tested for a unit root using the Dickey Fuller test with critical t-values calculated by Engle and Granger (i.e., the DF–EG test). If the test rejects the null hypothesis of a unit root, we say the error terms generated by the two time series are covariance stationary and the two series are cointegrated. If the two series are cointegrated, we can use the regression to model their relationship.

Professor's Note: For the exam, remember that the DF test does not use the standard critical t-values we typically use in testing the statistical significance of individual regression coefficients. The DF–EG test further adjusts them to test for cointegration. As with the DF test, you do not have to know critical t-values for the DF–EG test. Just remember that like the regular DF test, if the null is rejected, we say the series (of error terms in this case) is covariance stationary and the two time series are cointegrated.

Figure 2: Can Linear Regression Be Used to Model the Relationship Between Two Time Series?

		Independent Variable Time Series	
		Is Covariance Stationary	*Is NOT Covariance Stationary*
Dependent Variable Time Series	*Is Covariance Stationary*	Yes	No
	Is NOT Covariance Stationary	No	Yes, IF the two time series are cointegrated

LOS 13.o: Determine the appropriate time-series model to analyze a given investment problem, and justify that choice.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 458

To determine what type of model is best suited to meet your needs, follow these guidelines:

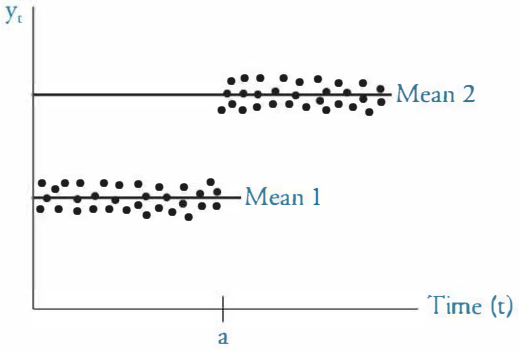
1. Determine your goal.
   - Are you attempting to model the relationship of a variable to other variables (e.g., cointegrated time series, cross-sectional multiple regression)?
   - Are you trying to model the variable over time (e.g., trend model)?

2. If you have decided on using a time series analysis for an individual variable, plot the values of the variable over time and look for characteristics that would indicate nonstationarity, such as non-constant variance (heteroskedasticity), non-constant mean, seasonality, or structural change.

   A **structural change** is indicated by a significant ***shift*** in the plotted data at a point in time that seems to divide the data into two or more distinct patterns. (Figure 3 shows a data plot that indicates a structural shift in the time series at Point a.) In this example, you have to run two different models, one incorporating the data before and one after that date, and test whether the time series has actually shifted. If the time series has shifted significantly, a single time series encompassing the entire period (i.e., both patterns) will likely produce unreliable results.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Figure 3: A Structural Shift in a Time Series



3. If there is no seasonality or structural shift, use a trend model.
   - If the data plot on a straight line with an upward or downward slope, use a linear trend model.
   - If the data plot in a curve, use a log-linear trend model.

4. Run the trend analysis, compute the residuals, and test for serial correlation using the Durbin Watson test.
   - If you detect no serial correlation, *you can use the model.*
   - If you detect serial correlation, you must use another model (e.g., AR).

5. If the data has serial correlation, reexamine the data for stationarity before running an AR model. If it is not stationary, treat the data for use in an AR model as follows:
   - If the data has a linear trend, first-difference the data.
   - If the data has an exponential trend, first-difference the natural log of the data.
   - If there is a structural shift in the data, run two separate models as discussed above.
   - If the data has a seasonal component, incorporate the seasonality in the AR model as discussed below.

6. After first-differencing in 5 above, if the series is covariance stationary, run an AR(1) model and test for serial correlation and seasonality.
   - If there is no remaining serial correlation, *you can use the model.*
   - If you still detect serial correlation, incorporate lagged values of the variable (possibly including one for seasonality—e.g., for monthly data, add the 12th lag of the time series) into the AR model until you have removed (i.e., modeled) any serial correlation.

7. Test for ARCH. Regress the square of the residuals on squares of lagged values of the residuals and test whether the resulting coefficient is significantly different from zero.
   - If the coefficient is not significantly different from zero, *you can use the model.*
   - If the coefficient is significantly different from zero, ARCH is present. Correct using generalized least squares.

8. If you have developed two statistically reliable models and want to determine which is better at forecasting, calculate their out-of-sample RMSE.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Key Concepts

LOS 13.a

A time series is a set of observations for a variable over successive periods of time. A time series model captures the time series pattern and allows us to make predictions about the variable in the future.

LOS 13.b

A simple linear trend model is: $y_t = b_0 + b_1 t + \varepsilon_t$, estimated for t = 1, 2, …, T.

A log-linear trend model, $\ln(y_t) = b_0 + b_1 t + \varepsilon_t$, is appropriate for exponential data.

A plot of the data should be used to determine whether a linear or log-linear trend model should be used.

The primary limitation of trend models is that they are not useful if the residuals exhibit serial correlation.

LOS 13.c

A time series is covariance stationary if its mean, variance, and covariances with lagged and leading values do not change over time. Covariance stationarity is a requirement for using AR models.

LOS 13.d

Autoregressive time series multiperiod forecasts are calculated in the same manner as those for other regression models, but since the independent variable consists of a lagged variable, it is necessary to calculate a one-step-ahead forecast before a two-step-ahead forecast may be calculated. The calculation of successive forecasts in this manner is referred to as the chain rule of forecasting.

A one-period-ahead forecast for an AR(1) would be determined in the following manner:

$$\hat{x}_{t+1} = \hat{b}_0 + \hat{b}_1 x_t$$

A two-period-ahead forecast for an AR(1) would be determined in the following manner:

$$\hat{x}_{t+2} = \hat{b}_0 + \hat{b}_1 \hat{x}_{t+1}$$

LOS 13.e

When an AR model is correctly specified, the residual terms will not exhibit serial correlation. If the residuals possess some degree of serial correlation, the AR model that produced the residuals is not the best model for the data being studied and the regression results will be problematic. The procedure to test whether an AR time-series model is correctly specified involves three steps:

1. Estimate the AR model being evaluated using linear regression.
2. Calculate the autocorrelations of the model's residuals.
3. Test whether the autocorrelations are significant.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

LOS 13.f

A time series is mean reverting if it tends towards its mean over time. The mean reverting level for an AR(1) model is $\frac{b_0}{(1-b_1)}$.

LOS 13.g

In-sample forecasts are made *within* the range of data used in the estimation. Out-of-sample forecasts are made *outside* of the time period for the data used in the estimation.

The root mean squared error criterion (RMSE) is used to compare the accuracy of autoregressive models in forecasting out-of-sample values. A researcher may have two autoregressive (AR) models, both of which seem to fit the data: an AR(1) model and an AR(2) model. To determine which model will more accurately forecast future values, we calculate the square root of the mean squared error (RMSE). The model with the lower RMSE for the out-of-sample data will have lower forecast error and will be expected to have better predictive power in the future.

LOS 13.h

Most economic and financial time series data are not stationary. The degree of the nonstationarity depends on the length of the series and changes in the underlying economic environment.

LOS 13.i

A random walk time series is one for which the value in one period is equal to the value in another period, plus a random error. A random walk process does not have a mean reverting level and is not stationary.

LOS 13.j

A time series has a unit root if the coefficient on the lagged dependent variable is equal to one. A series with a unit root is not covariance stationary. Economic and finance time series frequently have unit roots. Data with a unit root must be first differenced before being used in a time series model.

LOS 13.k

To determine whether a time series is covariance stationary, we can (1) run an AR model and/or (2) perform the Dickey Fuller test.

LOS 13.l

Seasonality in a time series is tested by calculating the autocorrelations of error terms. A statistically significant lagged error term corresponding to the periodicity of the data indicates seasonality. Seasonality can be corrected by incorporating the appropriate seasonal lag term in an AR model.

If a seasonal lag coefficient is appropriate and corrects the seasonality, the AR model with the seasonal terms will have no statistically significant autocorrelations of error terms.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

LOS 13.m

ARCH is present if the variance of the residuals from an AR model are correlated across time. ARCH is detected by estimating $\hat{\varepsilon}_t^2 = a_0 + a_1\hat{\varepsilon}_{t-1}^2 + \mu_t$. If a_1 is significant, ARCH exists and the variance of errors can be predicted using: $\hat{\sigma}_{t+1}^2 = \hat{a}_0 + \hat{a}_1\hat{\varepsilon}_t^2$.

LOS 13.n

When working with two time series in a regression: (1) if neither time series has a unit root, then the regression can be used; (2) if only one series has a unit root, the regression results will be invalid; (3) if both time series have a unit root and are cointegrated, then the regression can be used; (4) if both time series have a unit root but are not cointegrated, the regression results will be invalid.

The Dickey Fuller test with critical *t*-values calculated by Engle and Granger is used to determine whether two times series are cointegrated.

LOS 13.o

The RMSE criterion is used to determine which forecasting model will produce the most accurate forecasts. The RMSE equals the square root of the average squared error.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Concept Checkers

Use the following data to answer Questions 1 and 2.

The results of the estimation of monthly revolving credit outstanding (RCO) on the one-period lagged values for RCO from January 2006 through December 2008 are presented in the following table.

Regression Results for Outstanding Revolving Credit Study

Model: $RCO_t = b_0 + b_1 RCO_{t-1} + \varepsilon_t$				
R^2	0.952643			
Adjusted R^2	0.951208			
Standard error	9.261452			
Observations	35			
	Coefficients	*Standard Error*	*t-Statistic*	*p-Value*
Intercept	–34.0019	24.19417	–1.40537	0.169255
Lag 1	1.065697	0.041362	25.76512	< 0.0001

1. What type of time-series model was used to produce the regression results in the table?
   A. An AR model.
   B. A heteroskedasticity (H) model.
   C. A trend model with a drift.

2. An approach that may work in the case of modeling a time series that has a unit root is to:
   A. use an ARCH model.
   B. use a trend model.
   C. model the first differences of the time series.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Use the following data to answer Questions 3 through 7.

Consider the results of the regression of monthly real estate loans (RE) in billions of dollars by commercial banks over the period January 2005 through September 2008 in the following table:

Time Series Regression Results for Real Estate Loans

Model: $RE_t = b_0 + b_1 t + \varepsilon_t$	$t = 1, 2, ..., 45$
R^2	0.967908
Adjusted R^2	0.9671617
Standard error	29.587649
Observations	45
Durbin-Watson	0.601

	Coefficients	*Standard Error*
Intercept	1195.6241	8.9704362
b_1	12.230448	0.3396171

3. The regression of real estate loans against time is a(an):
   A. trend model.
   B. AR model.
   C. ARCH model.

4. The results of the estimation indicate a(an):
   A. upward trend.
   B. AR(2) model.
   C. ARCH system.

5. Are the intercept and slope coefficient significantly different from zero at the 5% level of significance?
   A. Both are statistically significant.
   B. One is, but the other is not.
   C. Neither of them is statistically significant.

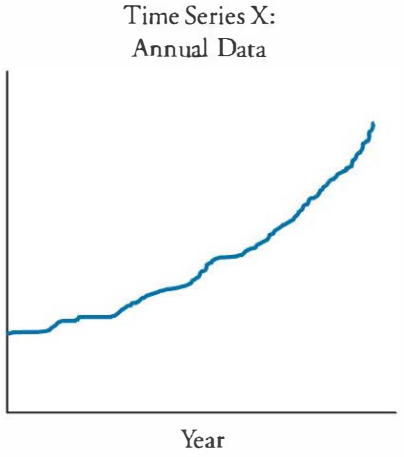
6. The forecasted value of real estate loans for October 2008 is *closest* to:
   A. $1,733.764 billion.
   B. $1,745.990 billion.
   C. $1,758.225 billion.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

7. Based on the time series regression results, is there evidence of serial correlation of the residuals?
   A. Yes positive, but not negative serial correlation.
   B. Yes negative, but not positive serial correlation.
   C. Neither positive nor negative serial correlation.

8. An analyst has determined that monthly sport utility vehicle (SUV) sales in the United States have been increasing over the last ten years, but the growth rate over that period has been relatively constant. Which model is *most appropriate* to predict future SUV sales?
   A. $SUVsales_t = b_0 + b_1(t) + e_t$.
   B. $lnSUVsales_t = b_0 + b_1(t) + e_t$.
   C. $lnSUVsales_t = b_0 + b_1(SUVsales_{t-1}) + e_t$.

9. Is the time series shown in the following figure likely to be covariance stationary?



   A. X is not covariance stationary due to homoskedasticity.
   B. X is not covariance stationary due to non-constant mean.
   C. X is covariance stationary.

10. Given the prediction equation: $\hat{x}_t = 5 + 1.75x_{t-1}$, what is the forecast value of x_{t+2} if x_{t-1} is 16.5?
   A. 64.28.
   B. 117.49.
   C. 210.61.

11. Which of the following AR models is *most appropriate* for a time series with annual seasonality using quarterly observations?
A. $b_1x_{t-1} + b_2x_{t-12} + \varepsilon_t$.
B. $b_0 + b_1x_{t-1} + b_2x_{t-4} + \varepsilon_t$.
C. $b_0 + b_1x_{t-4} + b_2x_{t-12} + \varepsilon_t$.

Use the following data to answer Questions 12 through 14.

Regression Results for Monthly Cash Flow Study

	Coefficients	*Standard Error*	t-*Statistic*	p-*Value*
Intercept	26.8625	12.15146	2.210639	0.035719
Lag 1	0.7196	0.042584	16.89837	< 0.0001
Autocorrelation of the Residual				
Lag	*Autocorrelation*	*Standard Error*	t-*Statistic*	p-*Value*
12	–0.0254	0.0632	-0.4019	0.5612

12. The number of observations in the time series used to estimate the model represented in the table above is *closest* to:
A. 16.
B. 50.
C. 250.

13. Based on the information given, what type of model was used?
A. AR(1).
B. AR(2).
C. AR(12).

14. Does the information indicate the presence of seasonality?
A. No, because the lag-12 autocorrelation of the residual is not significant.
B. Yes, because the lag-12 autocorrelation of the residual is significantly different than one.
C. There is not enough information provided; the autocorrelation for the first lag is also needed to detect seasonality.

15. Which of the following will always have a finite mean-reverting level?
A. A covariance-stationary time series.
B. A random-walk-with-drift time series.
C. A time series with unit root.

16. When evaluating a time series model's real-world ability to forecast, we would have the most confidence in a model with small:
A. in-sample forecast error.
B. out-of-sample forecast error.
C. residuals.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

17. Which of the following is true of modeling a time series that contains two or more distinct periods where the data is fundamentally different?
A. The optimal data sample period for estimating the time-series model can be calculated mathematically.
B. To most accurately estimate the time-series model, the entire available time series data set should be used as the sample period.
C. We have to fit two different models for each of the two distinct periods.

18. Which of the following statements is most accurate? A random walk process:
A. is nonstationary.
B. has a finite mean-reverting level.
C. can be appropriately fit as an AR(1) model.

19. Which of the following is not correct about the Dickey-Fuller unit root test for nonstationarity?
A. The null hypothesis is that the time series has a unit root.
B. A hypothesis test is conducted using critical values computed by Dickey and Fuller in place of conventional *t*-test values.
C. If the test statistic is significant, we conclude that the times series is nonstationary.

20. A time-series model that uses quarterly data exhibits seasonality if the fourth autocorrelation of the error term:
A. differs significantly from 0.
B. does not differ significantly from 0.
C. does not differ significantly from the first autocorrelation of the error term.

21. In an autoregressive time-series model, seasonality may be corrected by:
A. excluding one or more of the lagged variables until the seasonality disappears.
B. transforming the time series using first-differencing.
C. adding an additional variable that reflects an appropriate lag of the time series.

22. Which of the following indicates the presence of Autoregressive Conditional Heteroskedasticity (ARCH) in a time-series model?
A. The autocorrelations of the error terms are zero at all lags.
B. The variance of the current error depends on the variance of lagged errors.
C. The error term shows significant serial correlation at lag 1.

23. Linear regression is least appropriate for modeling the relationship between two time series when:
A. neither series has a unit root.
B. one of the time series has a unit root, the other does not.
C. both series have a unit root, and the time series are cointegrated.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Answers – Concept Checkers

1. A The independent variable is the dependent variable lagged one period, so the model is an AR(1) model.

2. C The first-differenced series usually does not have a unit root and is, therefore, covariance stationary.

3. A With a trend model, the independent variable is time, *t*.

4. A The slope coefficient (b_1) is positive and significantly different from zero indicating an upward trend.

5. A The *t*-statistic to test the statistical significance of the intercept and slope coefficient is the parameter estimate divided by its standard error. We reject the null hypothesis and conclude the coefficients are statistically significant if the absolute value of the *t*-statistic is greater than the two-tail 5% critical *t*-value with 43 degrees of freedom, which is 2.02.

$$t_{b_0} = \frac{1{,}195.6241}{8.9704362} = 133.3$$

$$t_{b_1} = \frac{12.230448}{0.3396171} = 36.0$$

Both the intercept term and the slope coefficient are significantly different from zero at the 5% level because both *t*-statistics are greater than the critical *t*-value of 2.02.

6. C $\hat{Y}_{46}$ = \$1,195.6241 + \$12.230448(46) = \$1,758.225 billion.

7. A The Durbin-Watson statistic is used to detect serial correlation in the residuals. The lower critical value for a DW test with one independent variable and 45 observations is 1.48 and the upper critical value is 1.57. The actual DW-statistic is 0.601, which is less than the lower critical value. This indicates the residuals are positively serially correlated. The DW-statistic would have to be greater than 4 – 1.48 = 2.52 in order to conclude that negative serial correlation is present. See the previous topic review for details on implementing the Durbin-Watson test.

8. B A log-linear model (choice B) is most appropriate for a time series that grows at a relatively constant growth rate. Neither a linear trend model (choice A), nor an AR(1) model (choice C) are appropriate in this case.

9. B Time series Z has a definite upward trend, which once again suggests the expected value of the time series Z is not constant, and therefore it is not covariance stationary.

10. B Given $x_{t-1} = 16.5$, $\hat{x}_t = 5 + 1.75(16.5) = 33.875$. So, $\hat{x}_{t+1} = 5 + 1.75\,\hat{x}_t = 5 + 1.75(33.875) = 64.28$. So, $\hat{x}_{t+2} = 5 + 1.75\,\hat{x}_{t+1} = 5 + 1.75(64.28) = 117.49$.

11. B The seasonal (annual) lag occurs on a quarterly basis, so the appropriate model is $b_0 + b_1 x_{t-1} + b_2 x_{t-4} + \varepsilon_t$. The intercept b_0 should be included in the model.

12. C The standard error of the estimated autocorrelations is $1/\sqrt{T}$, where *T* is the number of observations (periods). So, if the standard error is given as 0.0632, the number of observations, *T*, in the time series must be $(1/0.0632)^2 \approx 250$.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

13. A The results in the table indicate that the prediction equation is $x_t = 26.8625 + 0.7196x_{t-1}$, which is estimated from an AR(1) model.

14. A The autocorrelation in the twelfth month is not statistically different from zero. Thus, there appears to be no seasonality.

15. A All random-walk time series have a unit root. Time series with unit root do not have a finite mean-reverting level.

16. B Out-of-sample performance is the most important indicator of a model's real-world forecasting ability. In-sample forecast performance is less persuasive, because forecasting the past is not difficult. The residuals from the fitted time-series model are another name for the model's in-sample forecast errors.

17. C To accurately model a time series that contains shifts, it may be necessary to strategically choose a longer or shorter sample period, or to use a first- or second-order autoregressive model. There is no accepted formula for estimating the optimal sample period (though a graphical inspection of the data may be helpful).

18. A A random walk process does not have a finite mean-reverting level and hence covariance nonstationary. An AR(1) model cannot be used to fit a covariance nonstationary time series.

19. C For a unit root test, the null hypothesis is that the time series has a unit root. For testing for unit roots, the Dickey-Fuller (DF) test computes the conventional t-statistic, which is then compared against the revised set of critical values computed by DF. If the test statistic is significant, we reject the null hypothesis (that the time series has a unit root), implying that a unit root is not present.

20. A If the fourth autocorrelation of the error term differs significantly from 0, this is an indication of seasonality.

21. C Adding an appropriate lag is an appropriate solution to seasonality. Excluding variables can sometimes be used to solve multicollinearity. Transforming using first-differencing can be a cure for nonstationarity.

22. B ARCH is present when the variance of the error depends on the variance of previous errors. A zero autocorrelation of the error term at all lags suggests that an autoregressive model is a good fit to the data.

23. B If only one time series has a unit root, we should not use linear regression. If neither time series have unit root, or if both time series have unit root and the time series are cointegrated, linear regression is appropriate to use.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

SELF-TEST: QUANTITATIVE METHODS FOR VALUATION

Professor's Note: Remember that the Level II exam consists of all item set format questions; that is, a vignette presenting the relevant information followed by six multiple choice questions on that topic. For an accurate gauge of your preparedness, allow 18 minutes for each item set in this self-test.

Use the following information to answer Questions 1 through 6.

Theresa Miller is attempting to forecast sales for Alton Industries based on a multiple regression model. The model Miller estimates is:

$$\text{sales} = b_0 + (b_1 \times \text{DOL}) + (b_2 \times \text{IP}) + (b_3 \times \text{GDP}) + \varepsilon_t$$

where:
sales = change in sales adjusted for inflation
DOL = change in the real value of the $ (rates measured in €/$)
IP = change in industrial production adjusted for inflation (millions of $)
GDP = change in inflation-adjusted GDP (millions of $)

All changes in variables are in percentage terms.

Miller runs the regression using monthly data for the prior 180 months. The model estimates (with coefficient standard errors in parentheses) are:

$$\underset{}{\text{sales}} = \underset{}{10.2} + \underset{(5.4)}{(5.6 \times \text{DOL})} + \underset{(4.2)}{(6.3 \times \text{IP})} + \underset{(5.3)}{(9.2 \times \text{GDP})}$$

The sum of squared errors is 145.6 and the total sum of squares is 357.2.

Miller is concerned that one or more of the assumptions underlying multiple regression has been violated in her analysis. In a conversation with Watson Crick, CFA, a colleague who is considered by many in the firm to be a quant specialist, Miller says, "Two of the key assumptions of multiple regression are:"

Assumption 1: The independent variables are not random, and there is no correlation between any two of the independent variables.

Assumption 2: The variance of the residuals is constant and not related to the level of the independent variables.

Miller tests and fails to reject each of the following two null hypotheses at the 99% confidence interval:

Hypothesis 1: A 2% increase in DOL will result in an increase in sales of more than 12%.

Hypothesis 2: A 1% increase in industrial production will result in a 1% decrease in sales.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Figure 1: Partial table of the Student's *t*-distribution (one-tailed probabilities)

Df	p = 0.10	p = 0.05	p = 0.025	p = 0.01	p = 0.005
170	1.287	1.654	1.974	2.348	2.605
176	1.286	1.654	1.974	2.348	2.604
180	1.286	1.653	1.973	2.347	2.603

Figure 2: Partial *F*-Table critical values for right-hand tail area equal to 0.05

	df 1 = 1	df 1 = 3	df 1 = 5
df 2 = 170	3.90	2.66	2.27
df 2 = 176	3.89	2.66	2.27
df 2 = 180	3.89	2.65	2.26

Figure 3: Partial *F*-Table critical values for right-hand tail area equal to 0.025

	df 1 = 1	df 1 = 3	df 1 = 5
df 2 = 170	5.11	3.19	2.64
df 2 = 176	5.11	3.19	2.64
df 2 = 180	5.11	3.19	2.64

1. Are the two multiple regression assumptions proposed by Crick stated correctly?

	Assumption 1	Assumption 2
A.	Yes	No
B.	No	Yes
C.	No	No

2. Did Miller *correctly* interpret the results of the tests in making her reject or fail-to-reject decisions for Hypothesis 1 and Hypothesis 2?

	Hypothesis 1	Hypothesis 2
A.	Yes	Yes
B.	Yes	No
C.	No	Yes

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

3. The appropriate decision with regard to the *F*-statistic for testing the null hypothesis that all of the independent variables are simultaneously equal to zero at the 5% significance level is to:
   A. reject the null hypothesis because the *F*-statistic is larger than the critical *F*-value of 3.19.
   B. fail to reject the null hypothesis because the *F*-statistic is smaller than the critical *F*-value of 3.19.
   C. reject the null hypothesis because the *F*-statistic is larger than the critical *F*-value of 2.66.

4. The unadjusted R^2 and the standard error of the estimate (SEE) are *closest* to:

	Unadjusted R^2	SEE
A.	59.2%	1.425
B.	59.2%	0.910
C.	40.8%	0.910

5. The multiple regression, as specified, *most likely* suffers from:
   A. heteroskedasticity.
   B. multicollinearity.
   C. positive serial correlation of the error terms.

6. What is the width of the 99% confidence interval for GDP, and is zero in that 99% confidence interval?

	Width of 99% CI	Zero in interval
A.	13.8	Yes
B.	13.8	No
C.	27.6	Yes

Use the following data to answer Questions 7 through 10.

Trevor Smith, a financial analyst at the major retail chain Houseco, is working on the budget for the coming year. As an intermediate step in developing the budget, Smith would like to model the company's payroll expenses, a major variable cost for the firm.

Smith models a monthly time series of changes in payroll expenses (in millions of $) with an AR(1) model from January 2001 to June 2009 (102 months). The results of the regression and the first 12 lagged residual autocorrelations are shown in the next two tables.

Regression Results for Payroll Changes

Model: $y_t = b_0 + b_1 y_{t-1} + \varepsilon_t$

	Coefficients	*Standard Error*	*t-Statistic*
Intercept	1.2304	0.00923135	133.28495
Lag 1	0.1717	0.00476779	36.01249

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Lagged Residual Autocorrelation Analysis

Lag	*Autocorrelation*	*t-Statistic*	*Lag*	*Autocorrelation*	*t-Statistic*
1	−0.105	?	7	0.017	0.17170
2	−0.140	−1.4139	8	−0.036	−0.36360
3	−0.044	−0.4444	9	0.163	1.64620
4	−0.032	−0.3232	10	−0.066	−0.66660
5	−0.170	−1.7169	11	0.115	1.16140
6	0.109	1.1008	12	0.021	0.21209

7. Over time, the value of this time series will show a tendency to move towards a value of:
   A. $1.050 million.
   B. $1.342 million.
   C. $1.485 million.

8. To determine whether the model is correctly specified, Smith examines the correlations of the error terms. The *t*-statistic for testing the hypothesis that the first order autocorrelation is zero is *closest* to:
   A. −1.0552.
   B. −10.710.
   C. −36.012.

9. If the change in payroll expense in June 2009 was $1 million, the forecast for the change in payroll expense in August 2009 is *closest* to:
   A. $1.402 million.
   B. $1.471 million.
   C. $1.511 million.

10. Assuming a 5% level of significance, can we conclude that the model is improperly specified?
   A. No, because the lag coefficient is significant.
   B. Yes, because most of the autocorrelations are negative.
   C. No, because none of the autocorrelations are significant.

11. To ensure that he can make valid budgeting decisions based on his model, Smith would like to check that Autoregressive Conditional Heteroskedasticity (ARCH) is not present. Which of the following would indicate the presence of ARCH in Smith's time-series model?
   A. The autocorrelations of the error terms are zero at all lags.
   B. The variance of the current error depends on the variance of previous errors.
   C. The variance of the time series data is not constant.

12. Smith also has access to an additional time-series that describes the Cost of Goods Sold over the same period. Smith is interested in modeling the relationship between the two time series using linear regression. Linear regression would be least appropriate for modeling the relationship between the two time series if:
   A. both series are covariance stationary.
   B. one of the time series is covariance stationary and the other is not.
   C. neither of the two series are covariance stationary, and the two time series are cointegrated.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Self-Test Answers: Quantitative Methods for Valuation

1. B Assumption 1 is stated incorrectly. Some correlation between independent variables is unavoidable; high correlation results in multicollinearity. An exact linear relationship between linear combinations of two or more independent variables should not exist.

   Assumption 2 is stated correctly. The assumption is that neither conditional nor unconditional heteroskestasticity is present in the residuals; in other words, the variance of the residuals is constant. Conditional heteroskedasticity occurs when the residual variance is related to the level of one or more of the independent variables.

2. A The critical values at the 1% level of significance (99% confidence) are 2.348 for a one-tailed test and 2.604 for a two-tailed test (df = 176).

   Hypothesis 1: This hypothesis is asking whether a 2% increase in DOL will increase sales by more than 12%. This will only happen if the value of the coefficient is greater than 6, since 2 × 6 = 12. Since the regression estimate for this coefficient is 5.6, the *t*-statistic for this test is (5.6 – 6) / 3.5 = –0.114. This is a one-tailed test, so the critical value is 2.348. Miller is correct in failing to reject the null.

   Hypothesis 2: This hypothesis is asking whether the value of the coefficient is equal to –1.0, since that is the value that would correspond with a 1% increase in industrial production resulting in a 1% decrease in sales. Since the regression estimate for this coefficient is 6.3, the *t*-statistic for this test is [6.3 – (–1)] / 4.2 = 1.74. This is a two-tailed test, so the critical value is 2.604. Miller is correct in failing to reject the null.

3. C SSR = 357.2 – 145.6 = 211.6, *F*-statistic = (211.6 / 3) / (145.6 / 176) = 85.3. The critical value for a one-tailed 5% *F*-test with 3 and 176 degrees of freedom is 2.66. Because the *F*-statistic is greater than the critical *F*-value, the null hypothesis that all of the independent variables are simultaneously equal to zero should be rejected.

4. B $$\text{SEE} = \sqrt{\frac{145.6}{180-3-1}} = 0.910$$

   $$\text{unadjusted } R^2 = \frac{357.2-145.6}{357.2} = 0.592$$

5. B The regression is highly significant (based on the *F*-stat in Question 3), but the individual coefficients are not. This is a result of a regression with significant multicollinearity problems. The *t*-stats for the significance of the regression coefficients are, respectively, 1.89, 1.6, 1.5, 1.74. None of these are high enough to reject the hypothesis that the coefficient is zero at the 5% level of significance (two-tailed critical value of 1.974 from *t*-table). There is no evidence in the vignette of heteroskedasticity or serial correlation (also known as autocorrelation).

6. C The confidence interval is 9.2 +/– (5.3 × 2.604), where 2.604 is the two-tailed 1% *t*-statistic with 176 degrees of freedom (which is the same as a one-tailed 0.5% *t*-statistic with 176 degrees of freedom). The interval is –4.6 to 23.0, which has a width of 27.6 and zero is in that interval.

7. C The mean-reverting level is $b_0 / (1 - b_1)$ = 1.2304 / (1 – 0.1717) = $1.48545 million.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

8. A $t = \frac{-0.105}{1/\sqrt{101}} = -1.0552$. Note that in an AR(1) model, we lose one observation (i.e., T = 101).

9. B $y_{\text{July 2009}} = 1.2304 + 0.1717(\$1) = \$1.402$ million

   $y_{\text{August 2009}} = 1.2304 + 0.1717(\$1.402) = \$1.471$ million

10. C The critical *t*-value at a 5% level of significance with 100 degrees of freedom is approximately 1.98. At this level, none of the residual autocorrelations is significant. Were any of these residual autocorrelations significant, we could conclude that the model is improperly specified. The presence of an ARCH process, however, should also be tested.

11. B ARCH is present if the variance of the *residuals* from the AR model are correlated across time.

12. B If only one time series is covariance stationary, we should not use linear regression, as regression results would be invalid. If both time series are covariance stationary, or if both time series are covariance nonstationary and the time series are coinregrared, linear regression is appropriate to use.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

The following is a review of the Economics for Valuation principles designed to address the learning outcome statements set forth by CFA Institute. This topic is also covered in:

CURRENCY EXCHANGE RATES: DETERMINATION AND FORECASTING

Study Session 4

EXAM FOCUS

There's no fluff here; you need it all. Take it slow and get a good understanding of quotes, currency cross rates, triangular arbitrage, all parity conditions, and their interrelationships. Forecasting exchange rates has important applications for valuation (which is the focus of Level II). Accordingly, theories of exchange rate determination as well as factors influencing exchange rates are all important. Be prepared to identify warning signs of currency crises.

LOS 14.a: Calculate and interpret the bid–ask spread on a spot or forward foreign currency quotation and describe the factors that affect the bid–offer spread.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 485

Professor's Note: As you can see from the wording of the LOS, you are expected to know that the terms "ask" and "offer" mean the same thing. Accordingly, we will be using them interchangeably.

EXCHANGE RATES

An **exchange rate** is simply the price of one currency in terms of another. For example, a quote of 1.4126 USD/EUR means that each euro costs $1.4126. In this example, euro is called the *base* currency and USD the *price* currency. Hence, a quote is the price of one unit of the base currency in terms of the price currency.

A **spot exchange rate** is the currency exchange rate for immediate delivery, which for most currencies means the exchange of currencies takes place two days after the trade. A **forward exchange rate** is a currency exchange rate for an exchange to be done in the future. Forward rates are quoted for various future dates (e.g., 30 days, 60 days, 90 days, or one year). A forward contract is an agreement to exchange a specific amount of one currency for a specific amount of another currency on a future date specified in the forward agreement.

Dealer quotes often include both bid and offer (ask) rates. For example, the euro could be quoted as $1.4124 – 1.4128. The bid price ($1.4124) is the price at which the dealer will buy euros, and the offer price ($1.4128) is the price at which the dealer will sell euros.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Foreign Exchange Spread

The difference between the offer and bid price is called the *spread*. Spreads are often stated as 'pips'. One pip is 1/10,000. In the above example, the spread is $0.0004 (4 pips) reflecting the dealer's profit. Dealers manage their foreign currency inventories by transacting in the interbank market (think of this as a wholesale market for currency). Spreads are narrower in the interbank market.

The spread quoted by the dealer depends on:

- The spread in the interbank market for the same currency pair. Dealer spreads vary directly with spreads quoted in the interbank market.
- The size of the transaction. Larger, liquidity-demanding transactions generally get quoted a larger spread.
- The relationship between the dealer and client. Sometimes dealers will give favorable rates to preferred clients based on other ongoing business relationships.

The interbank spread on a currency pair depends on:

- **Currencies involved**. Similar to stocks, high-volume currency pairs (e.g., USD/EUR, USD/JPY, and USD/GBP) command lower spreads than do lower-volume currency pairs (e.g., AUD/CAD).
- **Time of day**. The time overlap during the trading day when both the New York and London currency markets are open is considered the most liquid time window; spreads are narrower during this period than at other times of the day.
- **Market volatility**. Spreads are directly related to the exchange rate volatility of the currencies involved. Higher volatility leads to higher spreads to compensate market traders for the increased risk of holding those currencies. Spreads change over time in response to volatility changes.

In addition to these factors, spreads in forward exchange rate quotes increase with maturity. The reasons for this are: longer maturity contracts tend to be less liquid, counterparty credit risk in forward contracts increases with maturity, and interest rate risk in forward contracts increases with maturity.

LOS 14.b: Identify a triangular arbitrage opportunity, and calculate its profit, given the bid–offer quotations for three currencies.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 488

Warm-Up: Working with Foreign Exchange Quotes

Earlier, we stated that a dealer will sell a currency at the ask price and purchase it at the bid price. We need to be a bit more specific. For example, you are given USD/AUD bid and ask quote of 1.0508-1.0510. Investors can buy AUD (i.e., the base currency) from the dealer at the ask price of USD 1.0510. Similarly, investors can sell AUD to the dealer at the bid price of USD 1.0508. Remember, investors always take a loss due to spread. So the rule is *buy the base currency at ask and sell the base currency at bid*.

For transactions in price currency, we do the opposite. If we need to buy USD (i.e, the price currency) using AUD (i.e., selling the base currency), we now use the dealer bid

quote. Similarly, to sell the price currency, we use the dealer ask quote. So the rule is *buy the price currency at bid and sell the price currency at ask.*

Alternatively, it is useful to follow the *up-the-bid-and-multiply, down-the-ask-and-divide rule.* Again given a USD/AUD quote, and you want to convert USD into AUD (you are going down the quote—from USD on top to AUD on bottom), use the ask price for that quote. Conversely, if you want to convert AUD into USD, you are going up the quote (from bottom to top) and, hence, use the bid price.

Example: Converting currencies using spot rates

A dealer is quoting the AUD/GBP spot rate as 1.5060 – 1.5067.

1. Compute the proceeds of converting 1 million GBP.

2. Compute the proceeds of converting 1 million AUD.

Answer:

1. To convert 1 million GBP into AUD, we would be going up the quote (i.e., from GBP in the denominator to AUD in the numerator). Hence, we would use the bid price of 1.5060 and multiply.

   1 million GBP = 1,000,000 × 1.5060 = 1,506,000 AUD

2. To convert 1 million AUD into GBP, we would be going down the quote (i.e., from AUD in the numerator to GBP in the denominator). Hence, we would use the ask price of 1.5067 and divide.

   1 million AUD = 1,000,000 / 1.5067 = 663,702.13 GBP

CROSS RATE

The **cross rate** is the exchange rate between two currencies implied by their exchange rates with a common third currency. It is necessary to use cross rates when there is no active foreign exchange (FX) market in the currency pair being considered. The cross rate must be computed from the exchange rates between each of these two currencies and a major third currency, usually the USD or EUR.

Suppose we have the following quotes:

USD/AUD = 0.60 and MXN/USD = 10.70. What is the cross rate between Australian dollars and pesos (MXN/AUD)?

$$\frac{\text{MXN}}{\text{AUD}} = \frac{\cancel{\text{USD}}}{\text{AUD}} \times \frac{\text{MXN}}{\cancel{\text{USD}}} = 0.60 \times 10.70 = 6.42$$

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

So our MXN/AUD cross rate is 6.42 pesos per Australian dollar. The key to calculating cross rates is to make sure the common currency cancels out.

Cross Rates with Bid-Ask Spreads

Bid-ask spreads complicate the calculation of cross rates considerably. Suppose we are given three currencies A, B, and C; we can have three pairs of currencies (i.e., A/B, A/C, and B/C).

Rules:

$$\left(\frac{A}{C}\right)_{bid} = \left(\frac{A}{B}\right)_{bid} \times \left(\frac{B}{C}\right)_{bid}$$

$$\left(\frac{A}{C}\right)_{offer} = \left(\frac{A}{B}\right)_{offer} \times \left(\frac{B}{C}\right)_{offer}$$

To compute the cross rate for A/C, given A/B and B/C, we can follow the above rules to obtain the bid and offer prices. If we are instead given A/B and C/B rates, we will have to make adjustments to obtain B/C bid and offer rates from C/B bid and offer rates, because A/B × C/B ≠ A/C. The process is as follows:

$$\left(\frac{B}{C}\right)_{bid} = \frac{1}{\left(\frac{C}{B}\right)_{offer}}$$

$$\left(\frac{B}{C}\right)_{offer} = \frac{1}{\left(\frac{C}{B}\right)_{bid}}$$

Triangular Arbitrage

Real-world currency dealers will maintain bid/ask quotes that ensure a profit to the dealer, regardless of which currencies customers choose to trade. If this was not the case, customers could earn profits through the process of triangular arbitrage. In **triangular arbitrage**, we begin with three pairs of currencies, each with bid and ask quotes, and construct a triangle where each node in the triangle represents one currency. To check for arbitrage opportunities, we go around the triangle clockwise (and later, counterclockwise) until we reach our starting point. As before, we follow the up-the-bid-and-multiply, down-the-ask-and-divide rule.

The following example will illustrate triangular arbitrage.

Example: Triangular arbitrage

The following quotes are available from your dealer.

Quotes:

USD/AUD 0.6000 – 0.6015

USD/MXN 0.0933 – 0.0935

1. Compute the implied MXN/AUD cross rate.
2. If your dealer also quotes MXN/AUD = 6.3000 – 6.3025, is an arbitrage profit possible? If so, compute the arbitrage profit in USD if you start with USD 1 million.

Answer:

1. To compute implied cross rates, we need:

$$\left(\frac{\text{MXN}}{\text{AUD}}\right)_{\text{bid}} = \left(\frac{\text{USD}}{\text{AUD}}\right)_{\text{bid}} \times \left(\frac{\text{MXN}}{\text{USD}}\right)_{\text{bid}}$$

Since we are given USD/MXN quotes instead of MXN/USD quotes, we first convert these quotes:

$$\left(\frac{\text{MXN}}{\text{USD}}\right)_{\text{bid}} = \frac{1}{\left(\frac{\text{USD}}{\text{MXN}}\right)_{\text{offer}}} = \left(\frac{1}{0.0935}\right) = 10.70$$

and

$$\left(\frac{\text{MXN}}{\text{USD}}\right)_{\text{offer}} = \frac{1}{\left(\frac{\text{USD}}{\text{MXN}}\right)_{\text{bid}}} = \left(\frac{1}{0.0933}\right) = 10.72$$

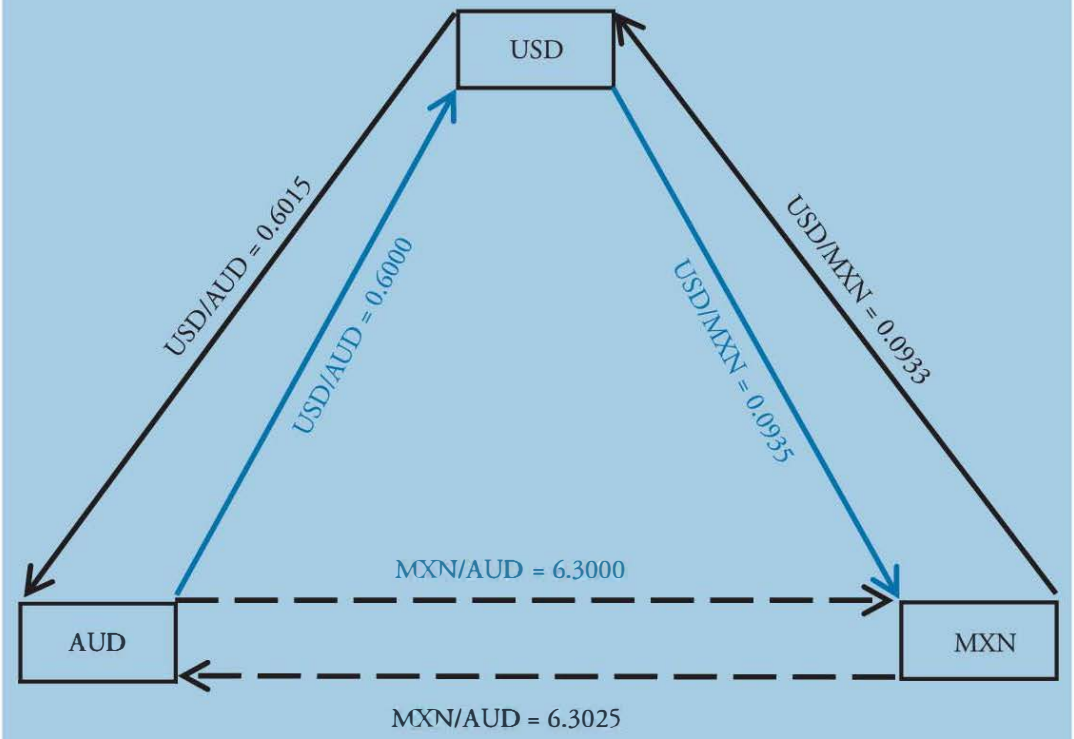
Now, the implied cross rates:

$$\left(\frac{\text{MXN}}{\text{AUD}}\right)_{\text{bid}} = \left(\frac{\text{USD}}{\text{AUD}}\right)_{\text{bid}} \times \left(\frac{\text{MXN}}{\text{USD}}\right)_{\text{bid}} = 0.60 \times 10.70 = 6.42$$

$$\left(\frac{\text{MXN}}{\text{AUD}}\right)_{\text{offer}} = \left(\frac{\text{USD}}{\text{AUD}}\right)_{\text{offer}} \times \left(\frac{\text{MXN}}{\text{USD}}\right)_{\text{offer}} = 0.6015 \times 10.72 = 6.4481$$

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

2. Since the dealer quote of MXN/AUD = 6.30 – 6.3025 falls outside of these cross rates, arbitrage profit may be possible (we have to check it). Remember to use the dealer quotes in the triangle and not the cross rates we computed.



To see how we label the arrows in this triangle, we follow the "up the bid, down the offer" rule. To convert from USD to MXN, (down with respect to the USD/MXN quote), we use the offer rate of 0.0935.

Going clockwise and starting with USD 1 million:

1. Convert USD 1 million into MXN @ 0.0935 USD/MXN. Note that the quote is USD/MXN and hence we are going down, and thus need to use the ask. Also remember: down, divide. We get 1 million/0.0935 = 10,695,187 MXN.

2. Next, we convert 10,695,187 MXN into AUD @ 6.3025 MXN/AUD to get 1,696,975 AUD.

3. Finally, we convert AUD 1,696,975 into USD @ 0.6000 USD/AUD. Here the quote is USD/AUD and we are converting from AUD to USD, so we are going up the quote and need to multiply by the bid. (Remember: up, multiply.) We get 1,696,975 × 0.60 = 1,018,185 USD – a profit of 18,185 USD.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

We can also check for arbitrage in the counter-clockwise direction (even though we can never earn an arbitrage profit both ways):

1. Convert USD 1 million into AUD using 0.6015. Again, the quote is USD/AUD and we are going down, so use the ask price and divide. We get 1 million/0.6015 = 1,662,510 AUD.

2. Next, we convert 1,662,510 AUD into MXN using 6.3000 to get 10,473,814 MXN.

3. Finally, we convert MXN 10,473,814 into USD at 0.0933 to get 977,207 USD – a loss of 22,793 USD.

LOS 14.c: Distinguish between spot and forward rates and calculate the forward premium/discount for a given currency.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 493

A currency is quoted at a **forward premium** relative to a second currency if the forward price (in units of the second currency) is greater than the spot price. A currency is quoted at a **forward discount** relative to a second currency if the forward price (in units of the second currency) is less than the spot price. The premium or discount is for the base currency (i.e., the currency at the bottom of the quote). For example, if the spot price is \$/€1.20 and forward price is \$/€1.25 we say that the euro is trading at a forward premium.

$$\text{forward premium (discount)} = F - S_0$$

Given a quote of A/B, if the above equation results in a positive value, we say that currency B (i.e., the base currency) is trading at a premium in the forward market.

In the FX markets, forward quotes are often presented as a premium or discount over spot rates. The following example illustrates this convention.

Example: Spot and forward quotes

Given the following quotes for AUD/CAD, compute the bid and offer rates for a 30-day forward contract.

Maturity	Rate
Spot	1.0511/1.0519
30-day	+3.9/+4.1
90-day	+15.6/+16.8
180-day	+46.9/+52.3

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Answer:

Since the forward quotes presented are all positive, the CAD (i.e., the base currency) is trading at a forward premium.

30-day bid = 1.0511 + 3.9/10,000 = 1.05149

30-day offer = 1.0519 + 4.1/10,000 = 1.05231

The 30-day all-in forward quote for AUD/CAD is 1.05149/1.05231.

Professor's Note: For an investor wishing to convert AUD into CAD in the forward market, the relevant quote would be the ask rate (using the down-the-ask rule) of 1.05231. This is also known as the all-in (i.e., after adding (subtracting) the forward premium (discount)) rate for the investor in question.

LOS 14.d: Calculate the mark-to-market value of a forward contract.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 498

If the forward contract price is consistent with covered interest rate parity (discussed later), the value of the contract at initiation is zero to both parties. After initiation, the value of the forward contract will change as forward quotes for the currency pair change in the market.

The value of a forward contract (to the party buying the base currency) at maturity (time *T*) is:

$$V_T = (FP_T - FP)(\text{contract size})$$

where:

V_T = value of the forward contract at time *T*, denominated in price currency
T = maturity of the forward contract
FP = forward price locked in at inception to buy base currency (and with a maturity of *T*)
FP_T = forward price to sell the same currency at time $T = S_T$
contract size = number of units of currency covered by the agreement

Example: Valuing a forward contract at maturity

Yew Mun Yip has entered into a 90-day forward contract to buy CAD 1 million with AUD. The following AUD/CAD quotes were applicable when the contract was initiated:

Maturity	Rate
Spot	1.0511/1.0519
30-day	+3.9/+4.1
90-day	+15.6/+16.8
180-day	+46.9/+50.3

At maturity of the contract, the spot rate is 1.0612/1.0614. What is the profit/loss in AUD for Yip's position?

Answer:

Since Yip is buying CAD, he is converting AUD to CAD (i.e., going down the quote). From our up-the-bid, down-the-ask rule, the relevant quote is the 90-day ask rate.

90-day ask = 1.0519 + 16.8/10,000 = 1.05358 (this is his all-in rate) at initiation

At expiration, Yip will take delivery of 1 million CAD at a cost of 1,053,580 AUD. Yip will then close out his position and, hence, will be selling CAD to obtain AUD (i.e., going up the quote) in the spot market. The relevant quote for converting CAD into AUD is the spot bid rate of 1.0612 (using our up-the-bid rule). At that rate, Yip would exchange 1 million CAD into AUD 1,061,200. His profit would then be AUD (1,061,200 – 1,053,580) = AUD 7,620.

or:

profit = (1.0612 – 1.05358)(1 million) = AUD 7,620

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Value Prior to Expiration

The value of a forward currency contract prior to expiration is also known as the *mark-to-market value*. To compute the value of a forward contract prior to expiration, we follow the same method, except that we need to discount the computed value for the time period remaining until the contract settlement date.

$$V_t = \frac{(FP_t - FP)(\text{contract size})}{\left[1 + R\left(\frac{\text{days}}{360}\right)\right]}$$

where:

V_t = value of the forward contract at time t (to the party buying the base currency), ($t < T$) denominated in price currency

FP_t = forward price (to sell base currency) at time t in the market for a new contract maturing at time T

FP = forward price specified in the contract at inception (to buy the base currency)

days = number of days remaining to maturity of the forward contract ($T - t$)

R = interest rate of price currency

Example: Valuing a forward contract prior to maturity

Yew Mun Yip has entered into a 90-day forward contract long CAD 1 million against AUD at a forward rate of 1.05358 AUD/CAD. Thirty days after initiation, the following AUD/CAD quotes are available:

Maturity	FX Rate
Spot	1.0612/1.0614
30-day	+4.9/+5.2
60-day	+8.6/+9.0
90-day	+14.6/+16.8
180-day	+42.3/+48.3

The following information is available (at t=30) for AUD interest rates:

30-day rate: 1.12%

60-day rate: 1.16%

90-day rate: 1.20%

What is the mark-to-market value in AUD of Yip's forward contract?

Answer:

Yip's contract calls for long CAD (i.e., converting AUD to CAD). To value the contract, we would look to unwind the position. To unwind the position, Yip can take an offsetting position in a new forward contract with the same maturity. Hence, Yip would be selling CAD in exchange for AUD and, hence, going up the bid (i.e., use the bid price). Note that after 30 days, 60 more days remain in the original contract.

The forward bid price for a new contract expiring in T – t = 60 days is 1.0612 + 8.6/10,000 = 1.06206.

The interest rate to use for discounting the value is also the 60-day AUD interest rate of 1.16%:

$$V_t = \frac{(FP_t - FP)(\text{contract size})}{\left[1 + R\left(\frac{\text{days}}{360}\right)\right]} = \frac{(1.06206 - 1.05358)(1{,}000{,}000)}{\left[1 + 0.0116\left(\frac{60}{360}\right)\right]} = 8{,}463.64$$

Thirty days into the forward contract, Yip's position has gained (positive value) AUD 8,463.64. This is because Yip's position is long CAD, which has appreciated relative to AUD since inception of the contract. Yip can close out the contract on that day and receive AUD 8,463.64.

Note: Be sure to use the AUD (price currency) interest rate.

LOS 14.e: Explain international parity relations—covered and uncovered interest rate parity, purchasing power parity, and the international Fisher effect.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 503

Covered Interest Rate Parity

The word 'covered' in the context of covered interest parity means bound by arbitrage. **Covered interest rate** parity holds when any forward premium or discount exactly offsets differences in interest rates, so that an investor would earn the same return investing in either currency. If covered interest rate parity holds and euro interest rates are higher than dollar interest rates, depreciation of the euro relative to the dollar will just offset the higher euro interest rate.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Formally, covered interest rate parity requires that (given A/B quote structure):

$$F = \frac{\left[1 + R_A\left(\frac{\text{days}}{360}\right)\right]}{\left[1 + R_B\left(\frac{\text{days}}{360}\right)\right]} S_0$$

where:
F = forward rate (quoted as A/B)
S_0 = spot rate (quoted as A/B)
days = number of days in the underlying forward contract
R_A = interest rate for Currency A
R_B = interest rate for Currency B

Professor's Note: For all parity relations, follow the numerator-denominator rule. If you are given USD/EUR quote, the USD interest rate should be in the numerator and the EUR interest rate in the denominator of the parity equation.

Example: Covered interest arbitrage

The U.S. dollar interest rate is 8%, and the euro interest rate is 6%. The spot exchange rate is $1.30 per euro (USD/EUR), and the 1-year forward rate is $1.35 per euro. Determine whether a profitable arbitrage opportunity exists, and illustrate such an arbitrage if it does.

Answer:

First, we note that the forward value of the euro is too high. Interest rate parity would require a forward rate of:

$1.30(1.08 / 1.06) = $1.3245

Because the market forward rate of $1.35 is higher than that implied by interest rate parity, we should sell euros in the forward market and do the opposite (i.e., buy euros) in the spot market. The steps in the covered interest arbitrage are:

Initially:

Step 1: Borrow $1,000 at 8% and purchase 1,000 / 1.30 = 769.23 euros in the spot market.
Step 2: Invest the euros at 6%.
Step 3: Sell (enter into a forward contract to sell) the expected proceeds at the end of one year (i.e., 769.23 × 1.06 = 815.38 euros), forward one year at $1.35 each.

After one year:

Step 1: Sell the 815.38 euros under the terms of the forward contract at $1.35 to get $1,100.76.
Step 2: Repay the $1,000 8% loan, which requires $1,080.
Step 3: Keep the difference of $20.76 as an arbitrage profit.

Uncovered Interest Rate Parity

With covered interest rate parity, arbitrage will force the forward contract exchange rate to a level consistent with the difference between the two country's nominal interest rates. If forward currency contracts are not available, or if capital flows are restricted so as to prevent arbitrage, the relationship need not hold. **Uncovered interest rate parity** refers to such a situation; uncovered in this context means not bound by arbitrage.

The exact relation for uncovered interest rate parity to hold is:

$$E(S_t) = \text{expected spot rate at time } t = \left(\frac{1+R_A}{1+R_B}\right)^t (S_0)$$

The base currency is expected to appreciate (depreciate) by approximately $R_A - R_B$ when the difference is positive (negative). Uncovered interest rate parity assumes that investors are risk-neutral.

Professor's Note: Again the parity follows the numerator-denominator rule mentioned earlier: if the quote is AUD/USD, we use the AUD interest rate in the numerator and the USD interest rate in the denominator.

The following example illustrates the use of uncovered interest rate parity to *forecast* future spot exchange rates using market interest rates.

Example: Forecasting spot rates with uncovered interest rate parity

Suppose the spot exchange rate quote is ZAR/EUR = 8.385. The 1-year nominal rate in the eurozone is 10% and the 1-year nominal rate in South Africa is 8%. Calculate the expected spot rate one year from today using uncovered interest rate parity.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Answer:

$$8.3850 \times \frac{[1+0.08]}{[1+0.10]} = 8.2325$$

The rand interest rate is less than the euro interest rate, so uncovered interest rate parity predicts that the value of the rand will rise (it will take fewer rand to buy one euro) because of higher interest rates in the eurozone. Note that if the interest rates given had been 180-day rates, we would have needed to adjust them by multiplying by (180/360) in order to get the expected spot rate 180 days from now.

Comparing covered and uncovered interest parity, we see that covered interest rate parity derives the no-arbitrage forward rate, while uncovered interest rate parity derives the *expected* future spot rate (which is not market traded). Covered interest parity is assumed by arbitrage, but this is not the case for uncovered interest rate parity.

If the forward rate is equal to the expected future spot rate, we say that the forward rate is an **unbiased predictor** of the future spot rate. In such an instance, $F = E(S_1)$. In this special case, if covered interest parity holds, uncovered interest parity would also hold (and vice versa). Stated differently, if uncovered interest rate parity holds, the forward rate is an unbiased predictor of expected future spot rates.

There is no reason that uncovered interest rate parity must hold in the short run, and indeed it typically does not. There is evidence that it does hold in the long run to a significant extent, so longer-term expected future spot rates based on uncovered interest rate parity are often used as forecasts of future exchange rates.

International Fisher Relation

Professor Irving Fisher originated the idea that the nominal rate of return is (approximately) the sum of the real rate and the expected rate of inflation.

We can write this approximate relation as:

$$R_{nominal} = R_{real} + E(inflation)$$

or, the precise relation as:

$$(1 + R_{nominal}) = (1 + R_{real})[1 + E(inflation)]$$

From this idea that the difference between the nominal rate of return and the real rate of return is due to expected inflation, we need to add only an assumption that real rates of return are equal across countries to get the international Fisher relation.

Using the Fisher relation for two countries, A and B, we have:

$$(1 + R_{\text{nominal A}}) = (1 + R_{\text{real A}})[1 + E(\text{inflation}_A)]$$

$$(1 + R_{\text{nominal B}}) = (1 + R_{\text{real B}})[1 + E(\text{inflation}_B)]$$

So we can write:

$$\frac{(1+R_{\text{nominal A}})}{(1+R_{\text{nominal B}})} = \frac{(1+R_{\text{real A}})[1+E(\text{inflation}_A)]}{(1+R_{\text{real B}})[1+E(\text{inflation}_B)]}$$

Under the assumption that $R_{\text{real A}} = R_{\text{real B}}$, we get the international Fisher relation:

$$\frac{(1+R_{\text{nominal A}})}{(1+R_{\text{nominal B}})} = \frac{[1+E(\text{inflation}_A)]}{[1+E(\text{inflation}_B)]}$$

or its linear approximation:

$$R_{\text{nominal A}} - R_{\text{nominal B}} = E(\text{inflation}_A) - E(\text{inflation}_B)$$

This tells us that the difference between two countries' nominal interest rates should be approximately equal to the difference between their expected inflation rates.

Under **real interest rate** parity, real interest rates are assumed to converge across different markets. Taking the Fisher relation and real interest rate parity together gives us the international Fisher effect.

Example: Calculating the real interest rate

Suppose the nominal South African interest rate is 9.0% and the expected inflation rate is 3.5%. Calculate the real interest rate.

Answer:

Exact methodology:

$$(1.090) = (1 + \text{real } r_{ZAR})(1.035)$$

$$\text{real } r_{ZAR} = \frac{1.090}{1.035} - 1 = 0.053 = 5.3\%$$

Linear approximation:

$$0.090 = \text{real } r_{ZAR} + 0.035$$

$$\text{real } r_{ZAR} = 0.090 - 0.035 = 0.055, \text{ or } 5.5\%$$

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

If we move to a 2-country scenario, we will now have two nominal interest rates and two expected inflation rates. If the real rates for both countries are assumed to be equal, they drop out of the equation, and we are left with the international Fisher relation in both its exact formulation and as a linear approximation, as shown in the following example.

Example: Using the international Fisher relation

Suppose that the eurozone expected annual inflation rate is 9.0%, and that the expected South African inflation rate is 13.0%. The nominal interest rate is 10.09% in the eurozone. Use the international Fisher relation, and its linear approximation, to estimate the nominal interest rate in South Africa.

Answer:

Exact methodology:

$$\frac{1+R_{EUR}}{1+R_{ZAR}} = \frac{1+E(I_{EUR})}{1+E(I_{ZAR})}$$

$$\frac{1.1009}{1+R_{ZAR}} = \frac{1.09}{1.13}$$

$$R_{ZAR} = \frac{1.1009(1.13)}{1.09} - 1 = 14.13\%$$

Linear approximation:

$$\text{real rate EUR} \approx 10.09\% - 9\% = 1.09\%$$

$$R_{ZAR} = 13\% + 1.09\% = 14.09\%$$

These are the nominal ZAR interest rates if the international Fisher relation holds.

The argument for the equality of real interest rates across countries is based on the idea that with free capital flows, funds will move to the country with a higher real rate until real rates are equalized.

Purchasing Power Parity

The law of one price states that identical goods should have the same price in all locations. For instance, a pair of designer jeans should cost the same in New York as they do in London, after adjusting for the exchange rate. The potential for arbitrage is the basis for the law of one price: if widgets cost less in New York than they do in Paris, an enterprising individual will buy widgets in New York and sell them in Paris, until this action causes the price differential to disappear. Note, however, that the law of one price does not hold in practice, due to the effects of frictions such as tariffs and transportation costs.

Instead of focusing on individual products, **absolute purchasing power parity** (absolute PPP) compares the average price of a representative basket of consumption goods between countries. Absolute PPP requires only that the law of one price be correct *on average*, that is, for like baskets of goods in each country. In practice, even if the law of one price held for every good in two economies, absolute PPP might not hold because the weights (consumption patterns) of the various goods in the two economies may not be the same (e.g., people eat more potatoes in Russia and more rice in Japan).

Relative Purchasing Power Parity

Relative purchasing power parity (relative PPP) states that changes in exchange rates should exactly offset the price effects of any inflation differential between the two countries. Simply put, if (over a 1-year period) Country A has a 6% inflation rate and Country B has a 4% inflation rate, then Country A's currency should *depreciate* by approximately 2% relative to Country B's currency over the period.

The equation for relative PPP is as follows:

$$S_t = S_0\left[\frac{1+\text{inflation}_A}{1+\text{inflation}_B}\right]^t$$

where:
S_0 = spot exchange rate today (A/B)
S_t = expected spot exchange rate after t periods (A/B)

Relative PPP is based on the idea that even if absolute PPP does not hold, there may still be a relationship between changes in the exchange rate and differences between the inflation rates of the two countries.

Ex-Ante Version of PPP

The ex-ante version of purchasing power parity is the same as relative purchasing power parity except that it uses *expected* inflation instead of actual inflation.

The following example illustrates the use of the ex-ante version of the PPP relation.

Example: Calculating the exchange rate predicted by the ex ante version of PPP

The current spot rate is USD/AUD = 1.00. You expect the annualized Australian inflation rate to be 6% over the next 6 months, and the annualized U.S. inflation rate to be 3% over the same period. According to ex-ante version of PPP, what is the expected spot rate in six months?

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Answer:

$$1.000\left[\frac{1.03}{1.06}\right]^{0.5} = 0.9857 \text{ USD/AUD}$$

Since the AUD has the higher expected inflation rate, we expect that the AUD will depreciate relative to the USD. To keep the cost of goods and services the same across borders, countries with higher rates of inflation should see their currencies depreciate. In fact, the estimated depreciation is approximately 3% (annualized).

Professor's Note: The intuition here is that if Australia's annual inflation rate is 3% greater than the U.S. inflation rate, the AUD will depreciate at an approximate 3% annual rate. As stated previously, follow the numerator/denominator rule: we have quotes in USD/AUD so we use U.S. inflation in the numerator and Australian inflation in the denominator.

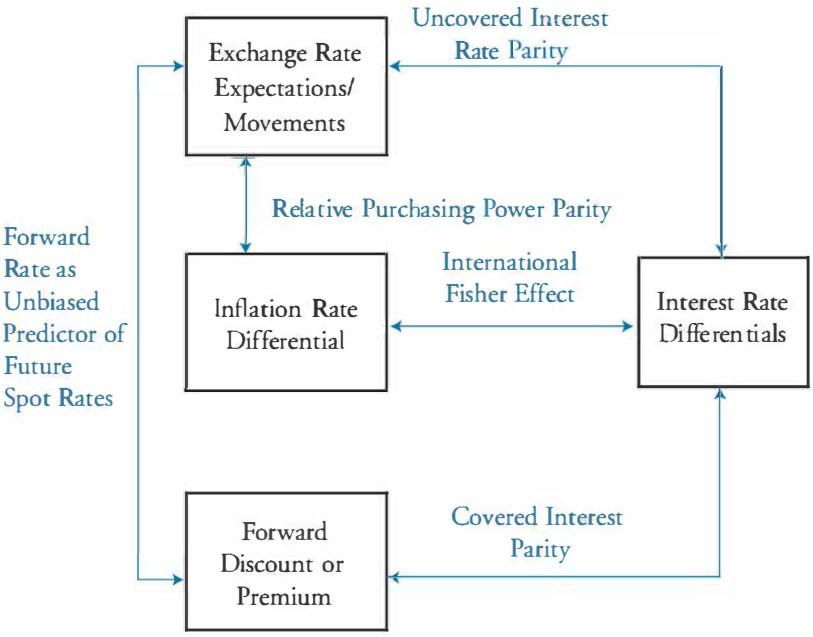
Because there is no true arbitrage available to force relative PPP to hold, violations of relative PPP in the short run are common. However, because the evidence suggests that the relative form of PPP holds approximately in the long run, it remains a useful method for estimating the relationship between exchange rates and inflation rates.

LOS 14.f: Describe relations among the international parity conditions.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 516

It is useful to establish how all the parity relations described earlier fit together. Figure 1 shows that these relationships are concerned with the differences between spot exchange rates, expected future spot exchange rates, forward exchange rates, nominal interest rates, and inflation rates. Though these relationships are not all exact, together they provide an extremely useful framework for thinking about exchange rates.

Figure 1: The International Parity Relationships Combined


Exchange Rate Expectations/ Movements
Uncovered Interest Rate Parity
Relative Purchasing Power Parity
Forward Rate as Unbiased Predictor of Future Spot Rates
Inflation Rate Differential
International Fisher Effect
Interest Rate Differentials
Forward Discount or Premium
Covered Interest Parity

Several observations can be made from the relationships among the various parity relationships:

- Covered interest parity holds by arbitrage. If forward rates are unbiased predictors of future spot rates, uncovered interest rate parity also holds (and vice versa).
- Interest rate differentials should mirror inflation differentials. This holds true if the international Fisher relation holds. If that is true, we can also use inflation differentials to forecast future exchange rates – which is the premise of the ex-ante version of PPP.
- By combining relative purchasing power parity with the international Fisher relation we get the uncovered interest rate parity.

LOS 14.g: Evaluate the use of the current spot rate, the forward rate, purchasing power parity, and uncovered interest parity to forecast future spot exchange rates.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 506

We can use ex-ante PPP, uncovered interest rate parity, or forward rates to forecast future spot rates. As stated earlier, uncovered interest rate parity and PPP are not bound by arbitrage and seldom work over the short and medium terms. Similarly, the forward rate is not an unbiased predictor of future spot rate. However, PPP holds over reasonably long time horizons. To understand this, let's consider the concept of real exchange rate.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Real Exchange Rate

The **real exchange rate** between a currency pair includes an adjustment for inflation differentials between the two countries since a base year:

$$\text{real exchange rate} = S_t\left[\frac{CPI_B}{CPI_A}\right]$$

where:
CPI = consumer price index at time *t*
S_t = spot rate at time *t* (given as A/B)

Professor's Note: Please note the exception to our numerator-denominator rule.

If relative PPP holds at any point in time, the real exchange rate would be constant—called the **equilibrium real exchange rate**. However, since relative PPP seldom holds over the short term, the real exchange rate fluctuates around this mean-reverting equilibrium value.

LOS 14.j: Explain how flows in the balance of payment accounts affect currency exchange rates.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 518

Professor's Note: We present this LOS out of order for exposition.

Balance of Payments

Balance-of-payments (BOP) accounting is a method used to keep track of transactions between a country and its international trading partners. It includes government transactions, consumer transactions, and business transactions. The BOP accounts reflect all payments and liabilities to foreigners as well as all payments and obligations received from foreigners. The BOP equation is:

$$\text{current account} + \text{financial account} + \text{official reserve account} = 0$$

The **current account** measures the exchange of goods, the exchange of services, the exchange of investment income, and unilateral transfers (gifts to and from other nations). The current account balance summarizes whether we are selling more goods and services to the rest of the world than we are buying from them (a current account surplus) or buying more from the rest of the world than we are selling to them (a current account deficit).

The **financial account** (also known as the **capital account**) measures the flow of funds for debt and equity investment into and out of the country.

Official reserve account transactions are those made from the reserves held by the official monetary authorities of the country. Normally the official reserve account balance does not change significantly from year to year, and hence, economists focus on the first two parts of the BOP equation. When a country experiences a current account deficit, it must generate a surplus in its capital account (or see its currency depreciate).

Capital flows tend to be the dominant factor influencing exchange rates in the short term, as capital flows tend to be larger and more rapidly changing than goods flows.

Influence of BOP on Exchange Rates

Current Account Influences

Current account deficits lead to a depreciation of domestic currency via a variety of mechanisms:

- **Flow mechanism.** Current account deficits in a country increase the supply of that currency in the markets (as exporters to that country convert their revenues to their own local currency). This puts downward pressure on the exchange value of that currency. The decrease in the value of the currency *may* restore the current account deficit to a balance—depending on the following factors:
  - *The initial deficit.* The larger the initial deficit, the larger the depreciation of domestic currency needed to restore current account balance.
  - *The influence of exchange rates on domestic import and export prices.* As a country's currency depreciates, the cost of imported goods increases. However, some of the increase in cost may not be passed on to consumers.
  - *Price elasticity of demand of the traded goods.* If the most important imports are relatively price inelastic, the quantity imported will not change.
- **Portfolio composition mechanism.** Countries with current account surpluses usually have capital account deficits, which typically take the form of investments in countries with current account deficits. As a result of these flows of capital, investor countries may find their portfolios' composition being dominated by few investee currencies. When investor countries decide to rebalance their investment portfolios, it can have a significant negative impact on the value of those investee country currencies.
- **Debt sustainability mechanism.** A country running a current account deficit may be running a capital account surplus by borrowing from abroad. When the level of debt gets too high relative to GDP, investors may question the sustainability of this level of debt, leading to a rapid depreciation of the borrower's currency.

Capital Account Influences

Capital account flows are one of the major determinants of exchange rates. As capital flows into a country, demand for that country's currency increases, resulting in appreciation. Capital flows into a country may be needed to overcome a shortage of internal savings to fund investments needed for economic growth. However, capital flows in excess of needed investment capital poses several problems. This is especially problematic for emerging markets.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Excessive capital inflows into emerging markets create problems for those countries such as:

- Excessive real appreciation of the domestic currency.
- Financial asset and/or real estate bubbles.
- Increases in external debt by businesses or government.
- Excessive consumption in the domestic market fueled by credit.

Emerging market governments often counteract excessive capital inflows by imposing capital controls or by direct intervention in the foreign exchange markets.

Earlier, we stated that in the short term, real exchange rates fluctuate around the long-term equilibrium real exchange rates. The fluctuations around equilibrium real exchange rates can be explained as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{real exchange rate (A/B)} = {} & \text{equilibrium real exchange rate} \\ & + (\text{real interest rate}_B - \text{real interest rate}_A) \\ & - (\text{risk premium}_B - \text{risk premium}_A)\end{aligned}$$

where:

risk premium_A = risk premium demanded by investors for investing in assets denominated in currency A

Professor's Note: One of the common mistakes candidates make is to mix up A and B in the previous formula. It may be helpful to keep in mind that when we talk about currencies in general, most statements are about the base currency (i.e., the currency in the denominator). For example, when USD/EUR changes from 1.30 to 1.20, we say that the euro (i.e., the base currency) depreciated. Similarly, the computation of a forward premium/discount concerns the base currency. In the previous formula, the increase in value of real exchange rate means that the base currency appreciated in real terms. Also, this formula is not precise and is NOT used for computing real exchange rates. Instead, focus on the directionality discussed next.

Several observations can be made based on the relationship identified above:

- In the short term, the real value of a currency fluctuates around its long-term, equilibrium value.
- The real value of a currency is positively related to its real interest rate and negatively related to the risk premium investors demand for investing in assets denominated in the currency.
- The real interest rate increases when the nominal interest rate increases (keeping inflation expectations unchanged) or when expected inflation decreases (keeping nominal interest rates unchanged).

LOS 14.h: Explain approaches to assessing the long-run fair value of an exchange rate.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 518

As stated previously, if the ex-ante version of relative PPP holds, the real exchange rate will be constant at its equilibrium level. Countries with high relative inflation would see their currencies depreciate relative to countries with low relative inflation. However (as stated earlier), PPP does not necessarily hold over the short term, so the real exchange rate is not constant. Since PPP holds over longer time horizons, inflation differential is one factor that tends to move the real rate back towards its equilibrium level in the long run.

The International Monetary Fund (IMF) assesses long-term equilibrium real exchange rate based on three complementary approaches:

- **Macroeconomic balance approach.** Estimates how much current exchange rates must adjust to equalize a country's expected current account imbalance and that country's sustainable current account imbalance.
- **External sustainability approach.** Estimates how much current exchange rates must adjust to force a country's external debt (asset) relative to GDP towards its sustainable level.
- **Reduced-form econometric model approach**. Estimates the equilibrium path of exchange rate movements based on patterns in several key macroeconomic variables, such as trade balance, net foreign asset/liability, and relative productivity.

A country with excessive capital inflows may choose to intervene in the foreign exchange market to prevent resulting excessive valuation of its currency, and to avoid the crisis that results when such capital flows change causing their currency to depreciate rapidly. One mechanism is to jointly evaluate a country's current account surplus/deficit with its currency's PPP implied value. For example, if a country is running a current account deficit and its currency is overvalued per PPP, the government may intervene to reduce the value of the currency and bring it more in line with its equilibrium value.

LOS 14.i: Describe the carry trade and its relation to uncovered interest rate parity and calculate the profit from such a strategy.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 522

FX Carry Trade

Uncovered interest rate parity states that a currency with a high interest rate should depreciate relative to a currency with a lower interest rate, so that an investor would earn the same return investing in either currency. For example, suppose that short-term interest rates are 3% in the U.K. and 1% in the United States. Uncovered interest rate parity implies that the GBP should depreciate by 2% relative to the USD over the coming year.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

However, uncovered interest rate parity is not bound by arbitrage. If the GBP depreciates by less than 2% (or even appreciates), an investor who has invested in the higher yielding GBP using funds borrowed in USD will earn excess profits. In a FX **carry trade**, an investor invests in a higher yielding currency using funds borrowed in a lower yielding currency. The lower yielding currency is called the *funding currency*.

Consider the following example.

Example: Carry trade

Interest Rates	*Currency Pair*	*Exchange Rates*	
		Today	*One year later*
U.K 3%	USD/GBP	1.50	1.50
U.S. 1%			

Compute the profit to an investor borrowing in the United States and investing in the U.K.

Answer:

return = interest earned on investment – funding cost – currency depreciation

= 3% – 1% – 0%

= 2%

The FX carry trade attempts to capture an interest rate differential and is a bet against uncovered interest rate parity. Carry trade typically performs well during low-volatility periods.

Risks of the Carry Trade

As discussed earlier, the carry trade is profitable only if uncovered interest rate parity does not hold over the investment horizon. The risk is that the funding currency may appreciate significantly against the currency of the investment, which would reduce a trader's profit—or even lead to a loss. Furthermore, the return distribution of the carry trade is not normal; it is characterized by negative skewness and excess kurtosis (i.e., fat tails), meaning that the probability of a large loss is higher than the probability implied under a normal distribution. We call this high probability of a large loss the *crash risk* of the carry trade.

The primary reason for crash risk relates to the fact that the carry trade is a leveraged trade: borrowing a low-yielding funding currency and investing in a high-yielding currency. As more investors follow and adopt the same strategy, the demand for high-yielding currency actually pushes its value *up*. However, with this herding behavior comes the risk that all investors may attempt to exit the trade at the same time. This is especially true if investors use stop-loss orders in their carry trades. During turbulent

times, as investors exit their positions (i.e., a flight to safety), the high-yielding currency can experience a steep decline in value, generating large losses for traders pursuing FX carry trades.

Risk Management in Carry Trades

There are two approaches to managing crash risk in a carry trade:

1. *Volatility filter:* Whenever implied volatility (implied by the market prices of options on currencies or equities) increases above a certain threshold, the carry trade positions are closed (i.e., reversed).

2. *Valuation filter:* A valuation band is established for each currency based on PPP or other models. If the value of a currency falls below (above) the band, the trader will overweight (underweight) that currency in the trader's carry trade portfolio.

LOS 14.k: Describe the Mundell–Fleming model, the monetary approach, and the asset market (portfolio balance) approach to exchange rate determination.

LOS 14.l: Forecast the direction of the expected change in an exchange rate based on balance of payment, Mundell–Fleming, monetary, and asset market approaches to exchange rate determination.

LOS 14.m: Explain the potential impacts of monetary and fiscal policies on exchange rates.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 538

MUNDELL-FLEMING MODEL

Developed in early 1960s, the **Mundell-Fleming model** evaluates the impact of monetary and fiscal policies on interest rates—and consequently on exchange rates. Changes in inflation rates due to changes in monetary/fiscal policy are not explicitly modeled by the Mundell-Fleming model.

We will look at the implications of this model for flexible exchange rate regimes as well as for fixed exchange rate regimes.

Flexible Exchange Rate Regimes

In a flexible (floating) exchange rate system, rates are determined by supply and demand in the foreign exchange markets. We will examine the influence of monetary and fiscal policies when international capital flows are relatively unrestricted (high mobility of capital) versus when capital flows are relatively restricted (low mobility of capital).

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

High Capital Mobility

Expansionary monetary policy and expansionary fiscal policy are likely to have opposite effects on exchange rates. Expansionary monetary policy will reduce the interest rate and, consequently, the inflow of capital investment in physical and financial assets. This decrease in financial inflows (deterioration of the financial account) reduces the demand for the domestic currency, resulting in depreciation of the domestic currency. Restrictive monetary policy should have the opposite effect, increasing interest rates and leading to an appreciation in the value of the domestic currency.

Expansionary fiscal policy (an increased deficit from lower taxes or higher government spending) will increase government borrowing and, consequently, real interest rates. An increase in real interest rates will attract foreign investors, improve the financial account, and consequently, *increase* the demand for the domestic currency. Expansionary fiscal policy will also increase economic activity (growth) and inflation, leading to a deterioration of the current account and a *decrease* in demand for the domestic currency. With these two opposite effects on currency demand, the net effect of expansionary fiscal policy on exchange rates is subject to some debate. If the flow of capital is sensitive to the interest rate differential, then the financial flows effect will dominate the goods flow effect, and the currency will typically appreciate as a result of expansionary fiscal policy.

Low Capital Mobility

Our discussion so far has assumed free flow of capital, which is a valid assumption with respect to developed markets. In emerging markets, however, capital flows may be restricted. In that case, the impact of trade imbalance on exchange rates (goods flow effect) is greater than the impact of interest rates (financial flows effect). In such a case, expansionary fiscal or monetary policy leads to increases in net imports, leading to depreciation of the domestic currency. Similarly, restrictive monetary or fiscal policy leads to an appreciation of domestic currency. Figure 2 summarizes the influence of fiscal and monetary policy on exchange rates.

Figure 2: Monetary and Fiscal Policy and Exchange Rates

Monetary Policy/Fiscal Policy	*Capital Mobility*	
	High	*Low*
Expansionary/Expansionary	Uncertain	Depreciation
Expansionary/Restrictive	Depreciation	Uncertain
Restrictive/Expansionary	Appreciation	Uncertain
Restrictive/Restrictive	Uncertain	Appreciation

Fixed Exchange Rate Regimes

Under a fixed exchange rate regime, the government fixes the rate of exchange of its currency relative to one of the major currencies.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

An expansionary (restrictive) monetary policy would lead to depreciation (appreciation) of domestic currency as stated above. Under a fixed rate regime, the government would then have to purchase (sell) its own currency in the foreign exchange market. This action essentially reverses the expansionary (restrictive) stance.

This explains why in a world with mobility of capital, governments cannot both manage exchange rates as well as pursue independent monetary policy. If the government wants to manage monetary policy, it must either let exchange rates float freely or restrict capital movements to keep them stable.

Expansionary (restrictive) fiscal policy leads to appreciation (depreciation) of domestic currency. Under a fixed exchange rate regime, the government would then sell (buy) its own domestic currency to keep exchange rates stable—*reinforcing* the impact of its fiscal policy on aggregate demand.

Monetary Models

With the Mundell-Fleming model, we assume that inflation (price levels) play no role in exchange rate determination. Under monetary models, we assume that output is fixed, so that monetary policy primarily affects inflation, which in turn affects exchange rates. There are two main approaches to monetary models:

1. **Pure monetary model**. Under a pure monetary model, the PPP holds at any point in time and output is held constant. An expansionary (restrictive) monetary or fiscal policy leads to an increase (decrease) in prices and a decrease (increase) in the value of the domestic currency.

2. **Dornbusch overshooting model**. This model assumes that prices are sticky (inflexible) in the short term and, hence, do not immediately reflect changes in monetary policy. In the case of an expansionary monetary policy, prices increase over time. This leads to a *decrease* in real interest rates—and depreciation of the domestic currency due to capital outflows. Additionally, according to the model, in the short term, exchange rates overshoot the long-run PPP implied values. In other words, under an expansionary monetary policy, in the short term, the depreciation of currency is greater than the depreciation implied by PPP. In the long term, exchange rates gradually increase toward their PPP implied values.

   Similarly, a restrictive monetary policy leads to excessive appreciation of the domestic currency in the short term and then a slow depreciation toward the long-term PPP value.

Portfolio Balance (Asset Market) Models

The Mundell-Fleming approach focuses on the short-term implications of fiscal policy and, as such, is inadequate. The **portfolio balance model** focuses on the long-term implications of sustained fiscal policy (deficit or surplus) on currency values.

When the government runs a fiscal deficit, it borrows money from investors. Under the portfolio balance approach, investors evaluate the debt based on expected risk and return. A sovereign debt investor would earn a return based on both the debt's yield and

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

its currency return. When a government pursues a long-term stance of expansionary fiscal policy, an investor should evaluate the implications of such a policy on expected risk and return (typically the yield should increase due to a higher risk premium). If investors perceive that the yield and/or currency return is sufficient, they will continue to purchase the bonds. However, continued increases in fiscal deficits are unsustainable and investors may refuse to fund the deficits—leading to currency depreciation.

Combining the Mundell-Fleming and portfolio balance approaches, we find that in the short term, with free capital flows, an expansionary fiscal policy leads to domestic currency appreciation (via high real interest rates). In the long term, the government has to reverse course (tighter budgetary policy) leading to depreciation of the domestic currency. If the government does not reverse course, it will have to monetize its debt (i.e., print money), which would also lead to depreciation of the domestic currency.

LOS 14.n: Describe the objectives and effectiveness of central bank intervention and capital controls.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 549

As stated earlier, capital flows can lead to excessive appreciation of a currency. This can lead to several problems including loss of competitiveness of exports in the global markets, asset price bubbles, and excessive consumption fueled by credit creation. Excessive capital inflows to a country can also lead to a currency crisis when such capital is eventually withdrawn from the country. To reduce these problems, policymakers may intervene by imposing capital controls or by direct intervention in the foreign exchange market by the central bank.

Objectives

The objectives of capital controls or central bank intervention in FX markets are to:

- Ensure that the domestic currency does not appreciate excessively.
- Allow the pursuit of independent monetary policies without being hindered by their impact on currency values. For example, an emerging market central bank seeking to reduce inflation may pursue a restrictive monetary policy to do so, increasing interest rates. However, these higher rates may attract large inflows of foreign capital, pushing up the value of the domestic currency.
- Reduce excessive inflow of foreign capital.

Effectiveness

For developed market countries, the volume of trading in a country's currency is usually very large relative to the foreign exchange reserves of its central bank. Evidence has shown that for developed markets, central banks are relatively ineffective at intervening in the foreign exchange markets due to lack of sufficient resources. Evidence in the case of emerging markets is less clear. Central banks of emerging market countries may have accumulated sufficient foreign exchange reserves (relative to trading volume) to affect the supply and demand of their currencies in the foreign exchange markets.

Empirical evidence suggests that the success of capital controls in emerging markets depends on persistence and size of capital flows: large and persistent capital flows are harder for central banks to mitigate than small and less persistent capital flows.

LOS 14.o: Describe warning signs of a currency crisis.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 544

History has shown that market participants have failed to predict crises and typically are surprised by them. When market sentiment changes significantly, crises may occur even for countries with sound economic fundamentals.

Based on an analysis of key macroeconomic variables, the IMF found the following to be warning signs of a coming currency crisis:

- Terms of trade deteriorate.
- Official foreign exchange reserves dramatically decline.
- Real exchange rate is substantially higher than the mean-reverting level.
- Inflation increases.
- Equity markets experience a boom-bust cycle.
- Money supply relative to bank reserves increases.
- Nominal private credit grows.

LOS 14.p: Describe the use of technical analysis in forecasting exchange rates.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 557

Foreign exchange traders and speculators use a number of technical analysis tools to forecast exchange rate changes.

Trend-Following Trading Rules

Trend-following trading rules, such as moving average crossover trading rules or filters, performed relatively well prior to the mid 1990s. More recently, such trend-following rules have not generated superior portfolio returns; possibly because more traders are following the same strategy. However, for emerging market currencies, profit opportunities may still be available as these currency markets tend to be less followed.

Trend-following rules can also be implemented in combination with FX carry trade strategies in order to reduce the downside risk of the carry trade strategy by avoiding extreme contrarian positions. That is traders can unwind their long (short) currency positions when that currency has appreciated (depreciated) significantly above (below) its value forecasted by trend-following trading rules.

FX Dealer Order Books

Unlike in equity markets which have disclosure requirements, in FX markets, volume and price data are not immediately available to all parties. For this reason, an FX dealer's

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

order book may have predictive value for exchange rates (at least on a short-term basis). A strong positive contemporaneous (not-lagged) correlation between order flow and currency value has been observed.

Tests of whether lagged (non-instantaneous) order flow data have a similar predictive value are not conclusive.

Currency Options Market

Implied volatility estimates from foreign exchange options can give insight into markets expectations of future increases or decreases in the value of the currency. For example, if the implied volatility in a call option is higher than the implied volatility in the corresponding put option, the market expects that the currency is more likely to appreciate than depreciate. Evidence shows that options market indicators merely confirm the trends (contemporaneous relationship) exhibited in the market and do not predict the future exchange rates.

KEY CONCEPTS

LOS 14.a

bid-ask spread (for base currency) = ask quote – bid quote

Dealer spreads depend on spreads in the interbank market, the transaction size, and the dealer-client relationship. Interbank spreads depend on the currencies involved, time of day, and volatility in the currency pair. Forward spreads increase with maturities.

LOS 14.b

To calculate the profits from triangular arbitrage, start in the home currency and go around the triangle by exchanging the home currency for the first foreign currency, then exchanging the first foreign currency for the second foreign currency, and then exchanging the second foreign currency back into the home currency. If we end up with more money than what we had when we started, we've earned an arbitrage profit. The bid-ask spread forces us to buy a currency at a higher rate going one way than we can sell it for going the other way.

LOS 14.c

A spot exchange rate is for immediate delivery, while a forward exchange rate is for future delivery.

premium (discount) for base currency = forward price – spot price

LOS 14.d

The mark-to-market value of a forward contract reflects the profit that would be realized by closing out the position at current market prices, which is equivalent to offsetting the contract with an equal and opposite forward position:

$$V_t = \frac{(FP_t - FP)(\text{contract size})}{\left[1 + R\left(\frac{\text{days}}{360}\right)\right]}$$

where:

V_t = value of the forward contract at time t (to the party buying the base currency), $(t < T)$ denominated in price currency

FP_t = forward price (to sell base currency) at time t in the market for a new contract maturing at time T

FP = forward price specified in the contract at inception (to buy the base currency)

days = number of days remaining to maturity of the forward contract $(T - t)$

R = interest rate of price currency

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

LOS 14.e

Covered interest arbitrage:

$$F = \frac{\left[1 + R_A\left(\frac{\text{days}}{360}\right)\right]}{\left[1 + R_B\left(\frac{\text{days}}{360}\right)\right]} S_0$$

Uncovered interest rate parity:

$$E(S_t) = \text{expected spot rate at time } t = \left(\frac{1 + R_A}{1 + R_B}\right)^t (S_0)$$

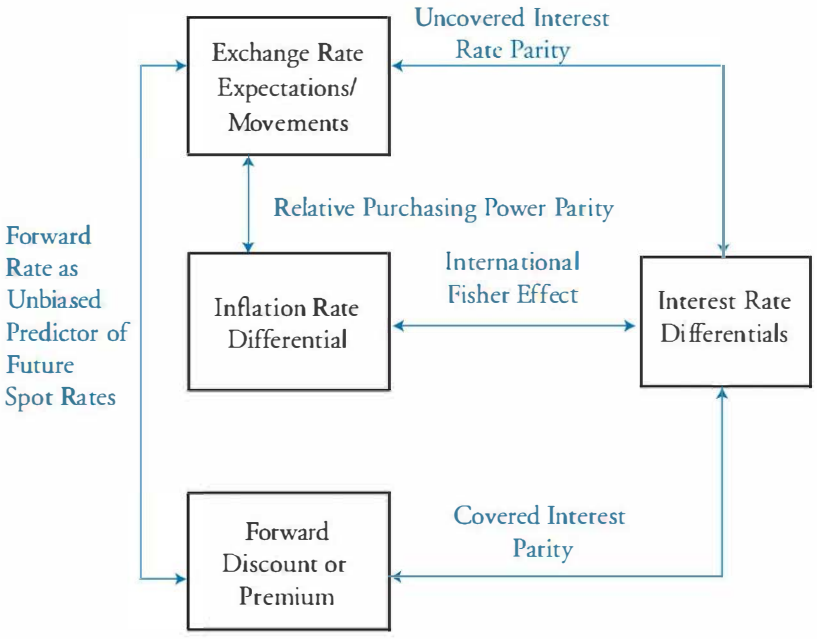
International Fisher relation:

$$\frac{(1 + R_{\text{nominal A}})}{(1 + R_{\text{nominal B}})} = \frac{[1 + E(\text{inflation}_A)]}{[1 + E(\text{inflation}_B)]}$$

Relative PPP:

$$S_t = S_0 \left[\frac{1 + \text{inflation}_A}{1 + \text{inflation}_B}\right]^t$$

LOS 14.f


Exchange Rate Expectations/ Movements
Uncovered Interest Rate Parity
Relative Purchasing Power Parity
Forward Rate as Unbiased Predictor of Future Spot Rates
Inflation Rate Differential
International Fisher Effect
Interest Rate Differentials
Forward Discount or Premium
Covered Interest Parity

LOS 14.g

Future spot rates can be forecasted using PPP or by uncovered interest rate parity. However, neither relationship is bound by arbitrage, nor do these relationships necessarily work in the short term. Forward exchange rates, on the other hand, can be estimated using covered interest parity, and this relationship is bound by arbitrage. If uncovered interest parity holds, then the forward rate will be equal to the future spot rate, and we say that the forward rate is an unbiased estimate of the future spot rate.

LOS 14.h

The long-run fair value of a currency is most commonly assessed using relative PPP. Another method is the macroeconomic balance approach, where we evaluate the sustainability of the country's current account balance. The external debt sustainability approach involves assessing the equilibrium exchange rate where the country's external debt (or assets) will stabilize at a viable level. Finally, the equilibrium level can be estimated using a reduced-form econometric model utilizing macroeconomic fundamentals.

LOS 14.i

The FX carry trade seeks to profit from the failure of uncovered interest rate parity to work in the short run. In an FX carry trade, the investor invests in a high-yield currency while borrowing in a low-yield currency. If the higher yield currency does not depreciate by the interest rate differential, the investor makes a profit. Carry trade has exposure to crash risk.

$$\text{profit on carry trade} = \text{interest differential} - \text{change in the spot rate of investment currency}$$

LOS 14.j

BOP influence on exchange rate can be analyzed based on current account influence and capital account influence. Current account influences include flow mechanism, portfolio composition mechanism, and debt sustainability mechanism. Capital account inflows (outflows) are one of the major causes of increases (decreases) in exchange rates.

LOS 14.k

The Mundell-Fleming model of exchange rate determination evaluates the impact of monetary and fiscal policies on interest rates and consequently on exchange rates.

Under monetary models, we assume that output is fixed and, hence, monetary policies primarily affect inflation, which in turn affects exchange rates.

The portfolio balance (asset market) model evaluates the long-term implications of sustained fiscal policy (deficit or surplus) on currency values.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

LOS 14.l

Monetary and Fiscal Policy and Exchange Rates

Monetary Policy/Fiscal Policy	*Capital Mobility*	
	High	*Low*
Expansionary/Expansionary	Uncertain	Depreciation
Expansionary/Restrictive	Depreciation	Uncertain
Restrictive/Expansionary	Appreciation	Uncertain
Restrictive/Restrictive	Uncertain	Appreciation

Under the pure monetary approach, PPP holds at any point in time.

Under the Dornbusch overshooting model, a restrictive (expansionary) monetary leads to an appreciation (depreciation) of domestic currency in the short term, and then slow depreciation (appreciation) towards the long-term PPP value.

Combining the Mundell-Fleming and portfolio balance approaches, we find that in the short term, an expansionary (restrictive) fiscal policy leads to domestic currency appreciation (depreciation). In the long term, the impact on currency values is opposite.

LOS 14.m

While models of exchange rate determination disagree on the impact of monetary policy, there is consensus on short-term implications of fiscal policy on currency values: expansionary fiscal policy leads to short-term appreciation of currency values.

LOS 14.n

Capital controls and central bank intervention aim to reduce excessive capital inflows, which could lead to speculative bubbles. The success of central bank intervention depends on the size of official FX reserves at the disposal of the central bank relative to the average trading volume in the country's currency. For developed markets, the central bank resources on a relative basis are too insignificant to be effective at managing exchange rates. However, some emerging market countries with large FX reserves relative to trading volume have been somewhat effective. More persistent and larger capital flows are harder for central banks to manage using capital controls.

LOS 14.o

Warning signs of currency crises include: deterioration in terms of trade, a dramatic decline in official foreign exchange reserves, a real exchange rate substantially higher than its mean-reverting level, increases in the inflation rate, a boom-bust cycle in equity markets, an increase in money supply relative to bank reserves, and growth of nominal private credit.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

LOS 14.p

Foreign exchange traders and speculators utilize a number of technical analysis tools to forecast exchange rates including trend following trading rules, FX dealer order books, and currency options market.

While pre-1995 studies suggested that trend-following trading rules were effective at generating trading profits, more recent evidence is less clear. However, technical trading rules may assist in risk management in FX carry trades.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

CONCEPT CHECKERS

1. All of the factors below would contribute to an increase in USD/EUR dealer spread except:
   A. increase in the volatility of EUR/USD spot rate.
   B. increase in the EUR/USD spread in the interbank market.
   C. smaller order size.

2. Suppose the spot exchange rate quote is 1.0120 Canadian dollars (C$) per U.S. dollar. The 1-year nominal interest rate in Canada is 3.0% and the 1-year nominal interest rate in the United States is 1.0%. The expected exchange rate at the end of the year using the uncovered interest rate parity is *closest* to:
   A. C$1.0320.
   B. C$0.9923.
   C. C$0.9918.

3. The five international parity relationships indicate that the expected return on risk-free securities should be the same in all countries and exchange rate risk is really just inflation risk. Which of the following is *least likely* to be considered a practical implication of this framework?
   A. Investors will earn the same real rate of return on investments once their own currency impact is accounted for.
   B. Interest rate differentials reflect currency expectations. As a result, covered interest arbitrage will provide a return in any foreign currency that is equal to the domestic return.
   C. There are significant rewards for bearing foreign exchange risk.

4. The bid-ask quotes for the USD, GBP, and EUR are:
   EUR/USD: 0.7000 – 0.7010
   USD/GBP: 1.7000 – 1.7010
   EUR/GBP: 1.2000 – 1.2010

   The potential arbitrage profit from a triangular arbitrage based on an initial position of 1 million USD is *closest* to:
   A. USD0.
   B. USD7,212.
   C. USD6,372.

5. For uncovered interest rate parity to hold, which condition is necessary?
   A. Covered interest rate parity holds and the forward rate is an unbiased predictor of future spot rates.
   B. Covered interest rate parity holds and PPP holds.
   C. Real interest rate parity and PPP holds.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

6. Vilasram Deshmukh is forecasting JPY/USD exchange rates based on balance of payments analysis. He notes that the United States is running large current account deficits relative to Japan. Based on this information, he concludes that the JPY/USD rate should decrease. His conclusion is *most likely* supported by the:
   A. flow mechanism of the current account influences.
   B. portfolio composition mechanism of the current account influences.
   C. capital account influences.

7. Stephen Hall is forecasting USD/GBP exchange rates. He consults forecasts of the money supply for the United States and U.K. made by his firm's chief economist, and he notes the following statement from a report published by the chief economist: "The U.S. money supply is expected to grow at a much faster pace than the U.K. or European money supplies."

   Hall makes the following statement: "Under the pure monetary approach model, an increase in the future growth rate of the money supply would lead to an immediate depreciation in the currency's value." Hall's statement is *most likely*:
   A. correct.
   B. incorrect, as the future growth rate in the money supply would not immediately affect currency values under the pure monetary approach model.
   C. incorrect, as the future growth rate in money supply would actually increase the currency value under the pure monetary approach.

8. Chintan Rajyaguru works for a currency dealer in London. He is evaluating the implications of changes in fiscal and monetary policies occurring in Zambola, an emerging market country with low capital mobility. He concludes that Zambola's central bank is pursuing a restrictive monetary policy to curb inflation. Additionally, the Zambolan government has been reducing budget deficits to comply with new IMF lending terms. According to the Mundell-Fleming model, the change in monetary and fiscal policy is *most likely* to cause the Zambolan currency to:
   A. appreciate.
   B. depreciate.
   C. remain unchanged.

Use the following information to answer Questions 9 through 14.

Sally Franklin, CFA, is a financial advisor to Jamie Curtess, a U.S. citizen interested in learning more about how her investments will be affected by exchange rates and differences in interest rates internationally. Franklin has gathered the following information based on Curtess's investment interests.

The current spot exchange rate: $1 = €0.74.

	Europe	United States
Nominal 1-year interest rate:	4%	?
Expected annual inflation:	2%	1%

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Franklin also gathers the following information:

	Switzerland	South Africa
Nominal 1-year interest rate:	5%	7%
Expected annual inflation:	3%	5%

9. According to the international Fisher relation, the 1-year nominal interest rate in the United States is *closest* to:
   A. 2.98%.
   B. 4.34%.
   C. 6.24%.

10. If the relative form of the PPP holds, the expected exchange rate in one year is *closest* to:
   A. $1.3381 per €.
   B. $0.7463 per €.
   C. $1.3647 per €.

11. If covered interest parity holds, the 1-year forward rate is *closest* to:
   A. $1.3647 per €.
   B. $0.7463 per €.
   C. $1.3381 per €.

12. Curtess wonders how spot rates are expected to change in the future and asks the following question: "What are the implications for the South African rand relative to the Swiss franc under uncovered interest rate parity, and the implications for the euro relative to the U.S. dollar under the relative form of purchasing power parity?" Franklin responds by making two statements:

   Statement 1: The South African rand is expected to depreciate relative to the Swiss franc.

   Statement 2: The euro is expected to depreciate relative to the U.S. dollar.

   Based upon the underlying parity relationships cited, are Franklin's statements accurate?
   A. No, both statements are inaccurate.
   B. Yes, both statements are accurate.
   C. One statement is accurate and one is inaccurate.

13. For this question only, assume that the nominal interest rate in the United States is 3%. Real interest rates, using the linear approximation of the international Fisher relation, are *most likely* to be:
   A. greater in the United States than in Europe.
   B. lower in Europe than in South Africa.
   C. equal among Europe, South Africa, Switzerland, and the United States.

14. A forecasted $/€ exchange rate in one year of $1.3381/€ assumes:
   A. absolute PPP holds.
   B. investors are risk neutral.
   C. real interest rate parity holds.

CHALLENGE PROBLEMS

Use the following information to answer Questions 15 through 20.

Agnetha Poulsen works as an analyst in the foreign exchange overlay strategies department for CFN, a large asset management firm serving institutional clients. She is concerned about the excessive unhedged currency exposure taken on by the overlay strategies department. She makes an appointment with Alvilda Kristensen, director of risk management, to discuss this matter. Prior to the meeting, Poulsen collects information on foreign currency quotes and on interest rates as shown in Exhibits 1 and 2.

Exhibit 1: Current Spot and Forward Exchange Rate Quotes

Quotes	*USD/CHF*	*USD/EUR*
Spot	0.9817/0.9821	1.2235/1.2238
30-day forward	–7.6/–6.9	–7.21/–6.80
60-day forward	–15.3/–13.3	–14.56/–13.76
90-day forward	–24.3/–23.05	–23.84/–22.77

Exhibit 2: Selected Interest Rates

Interest Rates	*USD*	*EUR*	*CHF*
30-day rate	0.20%	0.91%	1.13%
60-day rate	0.21%	0.93%	1.15%
90-day rate	0.26%	1.04%	1.25%

Poulsen also reviews the current open forward contracts. As an example, she reviews two contracts. Contract FX2001 is a 90-day forward contract initiated 60 days ago. The contract calls for purchase of CHF 200 million at an all-in rate of USD 0.9832. Contract FX2051 is a 90-day contract initiated 30 days ago to purchase 100 million EUR at an all-in rate of 1.2242.

During her meeting with Kristensen, Poulsen expresses concern about traders establishing FX carry trades in several emerging market currencies. Kristensen assures Poulsen that CFN has adequate monitoring mechanisms. She continues that these carry trades have been generating significant positive returns for the clients and Poulsen should not worry about it. Kristensen further mentions that the firm's monitoring mechanisms trigger the sale of funding currency whenever volatility levels, implied by options on the investment currency, increase beyond a predetermined threshold.

Poulsen reviews her notes and decides to prepare a report on currency crises. She compiles a list of indicators of an impending currency crisis based on empirical analysis.

Poulsen then turns her attention to the firm's investments in Zambola, an emerging market. She realizes that currently the currency overlay strategy department has no trades involving Zambolan currency (Zu). Poulsen is concerned about significant long exposure of the portfolio in Zu. Zambola is enjoying large capital inflows drawn by

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Zambola's attractive yields. Her analysis indicates that Zambola has been running large current account deficits. A trend analysis on Zu indicates a steep upward trend continuing above its PPP value.

15. Based on the information provided in Exhibit 1, the 30-day forward spread on USD/CHF is closest to:
A. 0.0005.
B. 0.0007.
C. 0.7000.

16. The current mark-to-market value of the forward contract FX2001 in USD is *closest* to:
A. –USD460,000.
B. –USD451,924.
C. –USD357,940.

17. The current mark-to-market value of the forward contract FX2051 in USD is *closest* to:
A. –USD215,900.
B. –USD107,900.
C. –USD216,000.

18. Based on Kristensen's description of risk management strategies in FX carry trade, the volatility filter employed is:
A. appropriate.
B. inappropriate because it triggers selling of the funding currency.
C. inappropriate because an increase in volatility is an inappropriate trigger.

19. Which of the following indicators of impending currency crises should Poulsen exclude from her report?
A. Terms of trade improve.
B. Increase in money supply relative to bank reserves.
C. Increase in inflation.

20. If Zambolan government wanted to bring its currency value closer to its long-run fair value, it should:
A. pursue policies consistent with currency depreciation.
B. pursue policies consistent with currency appreciation.
C. increase interest rates while keeping inflation constant.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

ANSWERS – CONCEPT CHECKERS

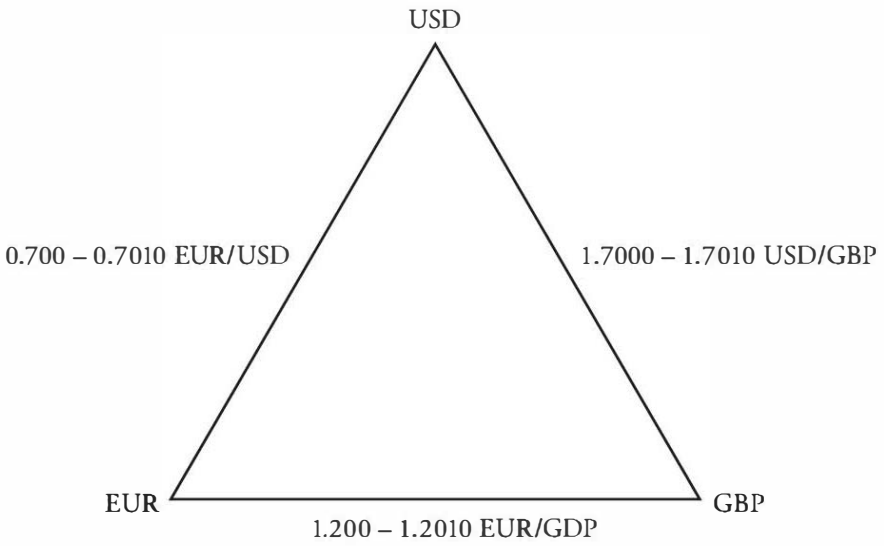
1. C Dealer spreads are lower for smaller orders as compared to larger orders. Dealer spreads are larger when spreads in the interbank market are higher. An increase in spot rate volatility will increase spreads in the interbank market.

2. A The higher interest rates in Canada suggest that the C$ will depreciate (the USD will appreciate). According to uncovered interest rate parity:

$$E(S_1) = C\$1.0120 \times (1.03)/(1.01) = C\$1.0320$$

3. C Combining all parity relationships indicates that the expected return on risk-free securities should be the same in all countries and exchange rate risk is really just inflation risk. There are four practical implications from this framework:
   1. The real, risk-free return will be the same in all countries.
   2. Investing in countries with high nominal interest rates will not generate excess returns because the high nominal interest rates will be accompanied by local currency depreciation.
   3. All investors will earn the same expected return in their own currency on any investment denominated in a foreign currency.
   4. Exchange rate risk is simply inflation risk, so investors interested in real returns will not face exchange rate risk.

4. C Here is what the triangle looks like with the bid-ask quotes filled in:



If we start with 1 million USD and move clockwise around the triangle (USD to GBP to EUR to USD), we first convert 1 million USD into GBP at the ask:

$$\frac{1 \text{ million USD}}{1.7010} = 587{,}889 \text{ GBP}$$

Then we sell the GBP for EUR at the bid:

$$587{,}889 \text{ GBP} \times \left(\frac{1.20 \text{ EUR}}{\text{GBP}}\right) = 705{,}467 \text{ EUR}$$

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Finally, we purchase USD at the ask in euros:

$$\frac{705{,}467 \text{ EUR}}{0.7010} = 1{,}006{,}372 \text{ USD}$$

Arbitrage profits are 1,006,372 USD – 1,000,000 USD = 6,372 USD.

5. A Covered interest parity is forced by arbitrage, which is not the case for uncovered interest rate parity. If the forward rate is equal to the expected future spot rate, we say that the forward rate is an unbiased predictor of the future spot rate: $F = E(S_1)$. In this special case, given that covered interest parity holds, uncovered interest parity would also hold (and vice versa). In other words, if uncovered interest rate parity (and covered interest parity) holds, the forward rate is unbiased predictor of future spot rate.

6. A The flow mechanism of current account influences supports the view that current account deficits lead to depreciation of currency. In this example, the reduction in the JPY/USD rate implies depreciation of the USD. Under capital account influences, current account deficits imply capital account inflows and, hence, would lead to an appreciation of USD. The portfolio composition mechanism of current account influences supports the flow mechanism if investors rebalance a portion of their portfolio out of USD assets due to gradual buildup of USD assets over time in their portfolios. The question does not provide information to support this reallocation.

7. B Under the pure monetary approach, growth in the money supply leads to depreciation in currency. However, the future growth rate in money supply affects the trajectory of FX rates but not the current exchange rate.

8. A Under the Mundell-Fleming framework, low capital mobility and restrictive monetary and fiscal policy leads to better trade balance and appreciation of the country's currency.

9. A According to the international Fisher relation:

$$(1 + r) = (1 + \text{real } r)[1 + E(I)]$$

From European data:

$$(1.04) = (1 + \text{real } r)(1.02)$$

$$\text{real } r = 1.96\%$$

For United States:

$$(1 + r) = (1.96)(1.01)$$

$$r = 2.98\%$$

10. A According to relative purchasing power parity, the expected spot rate in one year (in $ per €) is calculated as follows:

$$€0.74 \text{ per } \$ = \$\left(\frac{1}{0.74}\right) \text{per } €$$

$$E(S_1) = S_0 \times \left(\frac{1+i_\$}{1+i_€}\right) = \left(\frac{1}{0.74}\right) \times \left(\frac{1.01}{1.02}\right) = \$1.3381 \text{ per } €$$

Notice that you would get the same answer by using the uncovered interest rate parity relation and the U.S. interest rate of 2.98% calculated earlier:

$$€0.74 \text{ per } \$ = \$\left(\frac{1}{0.74}\right) \text{per } €$$

$$E(S_1) = S_0 \times \left(\frac{1+r_\$}{1+r_€}\right) = \left(\frac{1}{0.74}\right) \times \left(\frac{1.0298}{1.04}\right) = \$1.3381 \text{ per } €$$

11. C According to covered interest parity, the forward rate in one year (in $ per €) is calculated as follows:

$$€0.74 \text{ per } \$ = \$\left(\frac{1}{0.74}\right) \text{per } €$$

$$F = S_0 \times \left(\frac{1+r_\$}{1+r_€}\right) = \left(\frac{1}{0.74}\right) \times \left(\frac{1.0298}{1.04}\right) = \$1.3381 \text{ per } €$$

12. B Franklin is correct with respect to both of his statements: the rand should depreciate relative to the franc and the euro should depreciate relative to the dollar.

The relative form of purchasing power parity predicts that countries with higher expected inflation will experience a depreciation of their currencies. South Africa's expected inflation rate (5%) is higher than the expected inflation rate in Switzerland (3%). The expected inflation rate in Europe (2%) is higher than the expected inflation rate in the United States (1%). According to purchasing power parity, the rand should depreciate relative to the franc, and the euro should depreciate relative to the U.S. dollar.

Uncovered interest parity makes the same predictions with regard to relative interest rates: countries with higher nominal interest rates can be expected to experience currency depreciation. The South African interest rate (7%) is higher than the Swiss rate (5%), so uncovered interest rate parity predicts that the rand will depreciate with respect to the franc. The interest rate in Europe (4%) is higher than the interest rate in the United States (2.98%), so the euro should depreciate relative to the U.S. dollar.

13. C According to the linear approximation of the international Fisher relation, the real interest rate is equal to the nominal interest rate minus the expected inflation rate. The real interest rate in each of the four countries is 2%.

14. B The 1-year expected spot rate given can be derived assuming that either uncovered interest rate parity or relative (not absolute) PPP holds. One of the assumptions of uncovered interest rate parity is that investors are risk neutral. Real interest rate parity states that real interest rates are equal across countries.

ANSWERS – CHALLENGE PROBLEMS

15. A (0.9821 – 0.00069) – (0.9817 – 0.00076) = 0.00047

16. B The contract calls for purchase of 200 million CHF in 30 days. To compute the mark-to-market value, we would have to use the quote on 30-day forward contract to sell CHF. Given USD/CHF quote structure, we should use the bid price (going up the quote).

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

all-in bid price for 30-day USD/CHF forward contract =
0.9817 – 7.6 / 10,000 = 0.98094

$$V_t = \frac{(FP_t - FP)(\text{contract size})}{\left[1 + R\left(\frac{\text{days}}{360}\right)\right]}$$

FP_t = 0.98094 (computed above)

FP = 0.9832 (given)

R = 30-day USD interest rate (USD is the price currency)
= 0.20%

$$V_t = \frac{(0.98094 - 0.9832)(200{,}000{,}000)}{\left[1 + 0.002\left(\frac{30}{360}\right)\right]} = \frac{-452{,}000}{1.000166} = -451{,}924 \text{ USD}$$

17. A The contract calls for purchase of 100 million EUR in 60 days. To compute the mark-to-market value, we would have to use the quote on 60-day forward contract to sell EUR. Given USD/EUR quote structure, we should use the bid price (going up the quote).

all-in bid price for 60-day USD/EUR forward contract = 1.2235 – 14.56/10,000
= 1.22204

$$V_t = \frac{(FP_t - FP)(\text{contract size})}{\left[1 + R\left(\frac{\text{days}}{360}\right)\right]}$$

FP_t = 1.22204 (computed above)

FP = 1.2242 (given)

R = 60-day USD interest rate (USD is the price currency)
= 0.21%

$$V_t = \frac{(1.22204 - 1.2242)(100{,}000{,}000)}{\left[1 + 0.0021\left(\frac{60}{360}\right)\right]} = \frac{-216{,}000}{1.00035} = -215{,}924 \text{ USD}$$

18. B The accepted use of a volatility filter is to trigger closing (i.e., reversal) of FX carry trade positions when implied volatility increases. The reversal of a carry trade position entails selling the investment currency and buying (not selling) the funding currency.

19. A Deterioration (and not improvement) in terms of trade is an indicator of currency crisis.

20. A Zu is overvalued per PPP and Zambola is running a current account deficit. A depreciation of Zu would bring it closer to its long-run fair value. An increase in interest rates while keeping inflation constant would increase real rates. This would lead to appreciation of Zu.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

The following is a review of the Economics for Valuation principles designed to address the learning outcome statements set forth by CFA Institute. This topic is also covered in:

Economic Growth and the Investment Decision

Study Session 4

Exam Focus

Forecasts of economic growth rates have important implications for investment decisions. Understand the preconditions of growth, how the growth rate can be increased, and what drives economic growth. Be able to compare and contrast competing theories of growth. Finally, be able to use growth accounting equations to forecast the potential growth rate of an economy.

LOS 15.a: Describe and compare factors favoring and limiting economic growth in developed and developing economies.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 578

Economists measure the economic output of a country by gross domestic product (GDP). A country's standard of living, however, is best measured by GDP per capita. Of particular concern to investors is not just the level of economic output but the growth rate of output.

Historically, there have been large variations in both GDP growth rates and per capita GDP across countries. Research has identified several factors that influence both the growth of GDP and the level of GDP.

Preconditions for Growth

1. **Savings and investment** is positively correlated with economic development. For countries to grow, private and public sector investment must provide a sufficient level of capital per worker. If a country has insufficient domestic savings, it must attract foreign investment in order to grow.

2. **Financial markets and intermediaries** augment economic growth by efficiently allocating resources in several ways. First, financial markets determine which potential users of capital offer the best returns on a risk-adjusted basis. Second, financial instruments are created by intermediaries that provide investors with liquidity and opportunities for risk reduction. Finally, by pooling small amounts of savings from investors, intermediaries can finance projects on larger scales than would otherwise be possible.

   Some caution is in order, however. Financial sector intermediation may lead to declining credit standards and/or increases in leverage, increasing risk but not economic growth.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

3. The **political stability, rule of law, and property rights** environment of a country also influence economic growth. Countries that have not developed a system of property rights for both physical and intellectual property will have difficulty attracting capital. Similarly, economic uncertainty caused by wars, corruption, and other disruptions poses unacceptable risk to many investors, reducing potential economic growth.

4. **Investment in human capital**, the investment in skills and well-being of workers, is thought to be complementary to growth in physical capital. Consequently, countries that invest in education and health care systems tend to have higher growth rates. Developed countries benefit the most from post-secondary education spending, which has been shown to foster innovation. Less-developed countries benefit the most from spending on primary and secondary education, which enables the workforce to *apply* the technology developed elsewhere.

5. **Tax and regulatory systems** need to be favorable for economies to develop. All else equal, the lower the tax and regulatory burdens, the higher the rate of economic growth. Lower levels of regulation foster entrepreneurial activity (startups), which have been shown to be positively related to the overall level of productivity.

6. **Free trade and unrestricted capital flows** are also positively related to economic growth. Free trade promotes growth by providing competition for domestic firms, thus increasing overall efficiency and reducing costs. Additionally, free trade opens up new markets for domestic producers. Unrestricted capital flows mitigate the problem of insufficient domestic savings as foreign capital can increase a country's capital, allowing for greater growth. Foreign capital can be invested directly in assets such as property, physical plant, and equipment (foreign direct investment), or invested indirectly in financial assets such as stocks and bonds.

LOS 15.b: Describe the relation between the long-run rate of stock market appreciation and the sustainable growth rate of the economy.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 586

Equity prices are positively related to earnings growth. Economy-wide, aggregate corporate earnings can grow if GDP grows or if the share of corporate earnings in GDP grows. Therefore, the *potential GDP* of a country—the upper limit of *real* growth for an economy—is an important factor in predicting returns on aggregate equity markets.

To understand this, consider that the growth in aggregate stock market valuation is a function of GDP growth, growth in earnings relative to GDP, and growth in the price to earnings ratio:

$$\Delta P = \Delta GDP + \Delta(E/GDP) + \Delta(P/E)$$

Over the long-term, we have to recognize that *growth* in earnings relative to GDP is zero; labor will be unwilling to accept an ever decreasing share of GDP. Similarly, *growth* in the P/E ratio will also be zero over the long term; investors will not continue to pay an ever increasing price for the same level of earnings forever (i.e., the P/E ratio cannot

grow indefinitely). Hence over a sufficiently long time horizon, the potential GDP growth rate equals the growth rate of aggregate equity valuation.

LOS 15.c: Explain the importance of potential GDP and its growth rate in the investment decisions of equity and fixed income investors.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 588

As indicated previously, growth in potential GDP represents the main driver of aggregate equity valuation. More generally, potential GDP also has implications for real interest rates. Positive growth in potential GDP indicates that future income will rise relative to current income. When consumers expect their incomes to rise, they increase current consumption and save less for future consumption (i.e., they are less likely to worry about funding their future consumption). To encourage consumers to delay consumption (i.e., to encourage savings), investments would have to offer a higher real rate of return. Therefore, higher potential GDP growth implies higher real interest rates and higher real asset returns in general.

In the short term, the relationship between actual GDP and potential GDP may provide insight to both equity and fixed-income investors as to the state of the economy. For example, since actual GDP in excess of potential GDP results in rising prices, the gap between the two can be used as a forecast of inflationary pressures—useful to all investors but of particular concern to fixed-income investors. Furthermore, central banks are likely to adopt monetary policies consistent with the gap between potential output and actual output. When actual GDP growth rate is higher (lower) than potential GDP growth rate, concerns about inflation increase (decrease) and the central bank is more likely to follow a restrictive (expansionary) monetary policy.

In addition to predicting monetary policy, the relationship between actual and potential GDP can also be useful in analyzing fiscal policies. It is more likely for a government to run a fiscal deficit when actual GDP growth rate is lower than its potential growth rate.

Finally, because of the credit risk assumed by fixed-income investors, growth in GDP may be used to gauge credit risk of both corporate and government debt. A higher potential GDP growth rate reduces expected credit risk and generally increases the credit quality of all debt issues.

LOS 15.d: Distinguish between capital deepening investment and technological process and explain the impact of each on economic growth and labor productivity.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 593

Professor's Note: We think the LOS is referring to technological progress *instead of technological* process.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Factor Inputs and Economic Growth

Economies are complex systems of many economic inputs. To simplify analysis, we examine a 2-factor (labor and capital) aggregate production function in which output (Y) is a function of labor (L) and capital (K), given a level of technology (T).

To examine the effect of capital investment on economic growth and labor productivity, consider a **Cobb-Douglas production function,** which takes the form:

$$Y = TK^{\alpha}L^{(1-\alpha)}$$

where:

α and $(1 - \alpha)$ = the share of output allocated to capital (K) and labor (L), respectively [α and $(1 - \alpha)$ are also referred to as capital's and labor's share of **total factor cost,** where $\alpha < 1$]

T = a scale factor that represents the technological progress of the economy, often referred to as *total factor productivity* (TFP)

The Cobb-Douglas function essentially states that output (GDP) is a function of labor and capital inputs and their productivity. It exhibits **constant returns to scale**; increasing all inputs by a fixed percentage leads to the same percentage increase in output.

Dividing both sides by L in the Cobb-Douglas production function, we can obtain the output per worker (labor productivity).

$$\text{output per worker} = Y/L = T(K/L)^{\alpha}$$

Labor productivity is similar to GDP per capita, a standard of living measure. The previous equation has important implications about the effect of capital investment on the standard of living. Assuming the number of workers and α remain constant, increases in output can be gained by increasing capital per worker (**capital deepening**) or by improving technology (increasing TFP).

However, since α is less than one, additional capital has a diminishing effect on productivity. Lower the value of α, lower the benefit of capital deepening. Developed markets typically have a high capital to labor ratio and a lower α as compared to developing markets, and therefore developed markets stand to gain less in increased productivity from capital deepening.

Professor's Note: We need to distinguish between marginal product of capital and marginal productivity of capital. Marginal product of capital is the additional output for one additional unit of capital. Marginal productivity of capital is the increase in output per worker for one additional unit of capital per labor. The Cobb-Douglas function exhibits constant marginal product of capital but diminishing marginal productivity of capital.

In steady state (i.e., equilibrium), the marginal product of capital (MPK = $\alpha Y/K$) and marginal cost of capital (i.e., the *rental price of capital*, r) are equal; hence:

$$\alpha Y/K = r$$

or

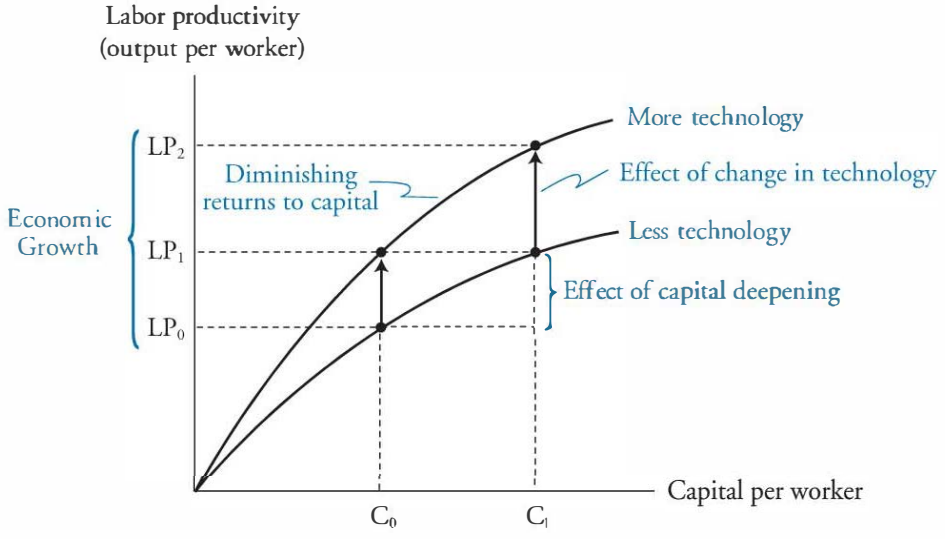
$$\alpha = rK/Y$$

Professor's Note: In the previous equation, r is rate of return and K is amount of capital. rK measures the amount of return to providers of capital. The ratio of rK to output (Y) measures the amount of output that is allocated to providers of capital. This is precisely our definition of α.

The productivity curves in Figure 1 show the effect of increasing capital per worker on output per worker. Capital deepening is a movement along the productivity curve. The curvature of the relationship derives from the diminishing marginal productivity of capital. Economies will increase investment in capital as long as MPK > r. At the level of K/L for which MPK = r, capital deepening stops and labor productivity becomes stagnant.

However, as technological progress occurs, both capital and labor can produce a higher level of output. An investment in capital leading to technological progress enhances the productivity of existing labor and capital. Technological progress, therefore, can lead to continued increases in output despite diminishing marginal productivity of capital. Technological progress shifts the productivity curve upward and will lead to increased productivity at all levels of capital per worker.

Figure 1: Productivity Curves



As stated earlier, for developed countries, the capital per worker ratio is relatively high (e.g., level C_1 in Figure 1), so those countries gain little from capital deepening and must rely on technological progress for growth in productivity. In contrast, developing nations

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

often have low capital per worker ratios (e.g., C_0 in Figure 1), so capital deepening can lead to at least a short-term increase in productivity.

LOS 15.e: Forecast potential GDP based on growth accounting relations.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 595

Growth Accounting Relations

Using the Cobb-Douglas production function, the growth in potential GDP can be expressed using the **growth accounting relation** as:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{growth rate in potential GDP} = {} & \text{long-term growth rate of technology} \\ & + \alpha\,(\text{long-term growth rate of capital}) \\ & + (1-\alpha)\,(\text{long-term growth rate of labor})\end{aligned}$$

In practice, levels of capital and labor are forecasted from their long-term trends, and the shares of capital and labor determined from national income accounts. The change in total factor productivity (technology) is not directly observable. Therefore, it must be estimated as a residual: the ex-post (realized) change in output minus the output implied by ex-post changes in labor and capital.

The growth accounting equation is also useful in determining the comparative effects of increasing different inputs. If labor growth accounts for the majority of economic growth, for example, analysts should be concerned with a country's ability to continue to increase its labor force. The relation can also be used to estimate potential output, as illustrated in the following example.

Example: Estimating potential GDP growth rate

Azikland is an emerging market economy where labor cost accounts for 60% of total factor cost. The long-term trend of labor growth of 1.5% is expected to continue. Capital investment has been growing at 3%. The country has benefited greatly from borrowing the technology of more developed countries; total factor productivity is expected to increase by 2% annually. Compute the potential GDP growth rate for Azikland.

Answer:

Using the growth accounting equation:

$$\text{growth rate in potential GDP} = 2\% + (0.4)(3\%) + (0.6)(1.5\%) = 4.1\%$$

Another approach to forecasting potential GDP growth is the *labor productivity growth accounting equation*, which focuses on changes in labor as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{growth rate in potential GDP} = {} & \text{long-term growth rate of labor force} \\ & + \text{long-term growth rate in labor productivity}\end{aligned}$$

The long-term growth rate in labor productivity reflects both capital deepening and technological progress.

LOS 15.f: Explain the impact of natural resources on economic growth and evaluate the argument that limited availability of natural resources constrains economic growth.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 597

Natural resources include both renewable resources, such as timber, and non-renewable resources, such as oil and gas. The role of natural resources in economic growth is complex. In some instances, countries with abundant natural resources (e.g., Brazil) have grown rapidly. Yet other countries (e.g., some of the resource-rich countries of Africa) have not. Conversely, some resource-poor countries have managed impressive growth.

One reason that limited natural resources do not necessarily constrain economic growth is that *access* to natural resources does not require *ownership* of resources. Resource-poor countries may be able to access resources via trade. Japan, for example, has managed impressive growth and high per capita GDP despite having limited ownership of natural resources.

Other theories contend that ownership of natural resources may actually inhibit growth, because the economic energy of a country rich in natural resources may be focused on recovering those resources rather than developing other industries. Furthermore, countries that own valuable resources can find their currency appreciating as the demand for those resources increases. The so-called "Dutch disease" refers to a situation where global demand for a country's natural resources drives up the country's currency values, making all exports more expensive and rendering other domestic industries uncompetitive in the global markets.

LOS 15.g: Explain the effects of demographics, immigration, and labor force participation on the rate and sustainability of economic growth.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 599

As stated previously, an increase in the quantity of labor will increase output, but not per capita output. Quantity of labor is defined as the size of the labor force multiplied by average hours worked. **Labor force** is defined as the number of working age (ages 16–64) people available to work, both employed and unemployed.

Labor Supply Factors

1. **Demographics.** A country's demographics strongly influence its potential economic growth. As a country's population ages and individuals live beyond working age, the labor force declines. Conversely, countries with younger populations have higher *potential* growth. Furthermore, fertility rates drive population growth and thereby affect potential future economic output. Countries with low or declining fertility rates will likely face growth challenges from labor force declines.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

2. **Labor force participation**. Labor force participation is defined as the proportion of working age population in the labor force.

$$\text{labor force participation} = \frac{\text{labor force}}{\text{working age population}}$$

Labor force participation can increase as more women enter the workforce.

3. **Immigration.** Immigration poses a potential solution to a declining labor force. Countries with low population growth or adverse demographic shifts (older population) may find their growth constrained. Since developed countries tend to have lower fertility rates than less developed countries, immigration represents a potential source of continued economic growth in developed countries.

4. **Average hours worked**. For most countries, the general trend in average hours worked is downward. Possible explanations include legislation limiting the number of hours worked, the "wealth effect" which induces individuals to take more leisure time, high tax rates on labor income, and an increase in part-time and temporary workers.

Example: Impact of demographics on economic growth

Data for Cangoria, a country in Asia, is shown below. Based upon this data, comment on the likely impact of Cangoria's demographic changes on its economic growth. Assume average world population growth rate is 1.2% per year.

	Population	*Labor Force Participation*	*Median Age of Population*
2000	23,400,400	60.4%	39.2
2010	28,040,300	70.3%	38.1

Answer:

Cangoria's population grew at an average annual compound growth rate of approximately 1.8% per year over the last ten years. Combined with the increase in labor force participation, labor supply growth should be above average in the future for Cangoria if those trends continue. The young median age of the population also indicates an expected increase in the labor pool in the future.

Changes in per capita GDP are difficult to predict. Output is expected to be higher due an increasing labor pool, but the larger population may mean there is no impact on per capita GDP.

LOS 15.h: Explain how investment in physical capital, human capital, and technological development affects economic growth.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 604

Human capital. Human capital is knowledge and skills individuals possess. Unlike quantitative labor metrics, such as hours worked, human capital is a qualitative measure of the labor force. Increasing human capital through education or work experience increases productivity and economic growth. Furthermore, human capital may have external spillover effects as knowledgeable workers innovate. Innovations are then used by society in general creating greater efficiencies economy wide.

Physical capital. Physical capital is generally separated into infrastructure, computers, and telecommunications capital (ICT) and non-ICT capital (i.e., machinery, transportation, and non-residential construction). Empirical research has found a strong positive correlation between investment in physical capital and GDP growth rates.

This result may seem inconsistent given our previous discussion about capital deepening and diminishing marginal returns to capital. Several explanations exist to explain why capital increases may still result in economic growth. First, many countries (e.g., developing economies) have relatively low capital to labor ratios, so increases in capital may still have significant impact on economic growth. Second, capital investment can take different forms. Some capital investment actually influences technological progress, thereby increasing TFP and economic growth. For example, acceleration of spending in the IT sector has created what are termed *network externalities*. Investment in IT networks may have multiplicative effects on productivity since IT network investment actually becomes more valuable as more people are connected to the network.

Technological development. Investment in technology includes investment in both physical and human capital. Technological innovation can manifest itself in processes, knowledge, information, machinery, and software, among other things. Researchers have examined proxies for investment in technology such as research and development (R&D) spending or number of patents issued. Developed countries tend to spend the most on R&D since they rely on technological progress for growth given their high existing capital stock and slower population growth. In contrast, less developed countries often copy the technological innovations of developed countries and thus invest less in R&D as a percentage of GDP.

Ultimately, technological development should lead to increases in productivity as measured by GDP per worker. Developed countries tend to have very high levels of productivity by this measure while less developed countries tend to have greater potential for growth in productivity.

Public infrastructure. Investments in public infrastructure such as the construction of public roads, bridges, and municipal facilities, provide additional benefits to *private* investment. For example, an investment in distribution facilities by a private company would do little good without an interstate highway grid. The highway system, therefore, enhances total productivity for the economy by complementing the private investment and increasing total factor productivity.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

LOS 15.i: Compare classical growth theory, neoclassical growth theory, and endogenous growth theory.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 616

Theories of economic growth are largely separated into three models with differing views on the steady state growth potential of an economy.

Classical Growth Theory

Based on Malthusian economics, classical growth theory posits that, in the long-term, population growth increases whenever there are increases in per capita income above subsistence level due to an increase in capital or technological progress. Subsistence level is the minimum income needed to maintain life. Classical growth theory contends that growth in real GDP per capita is not permanent, because when real GDP per capita rises above the subsistence level, a population explosion occurs. Population growth leads to diminishing marginal returns to labor, which reduces productivity and drives GDP per capita back to the subsistence level. This mechanism would prevent long-term growth in per capita income. Classical growth theory is not supported by empirical evidence.

Neoclassical Growth Theory

Neoclassical growth theory's primary focus is on estimating the economy's long-term **steady state growth rate** (sustainable growth rate or equilibrium growth rate). The economy is at equilibrium when the output-to-capital ratio is constant. When the output-to-capital ratio is constant, the labor-to-capital ratio and output per capita also grow at the equilibrium growth rate, g*.

Professor's Note: Steady state growth rate for the purpose of neoclassical growth theory does not assume a constant level of technology and hence differs from the definition of steady state discussed earlier.

Based on the Cobb-Douglas function discussed earlier, neoclassical growth theory states that:

- Sustainable growth of output per capita (or output per worker)(g^*) is equal to the growth rate in technology (θ) divided by labor's share of GDP ($1 - \alpha$).

$$g^* = \frac{\theta}{(1-\alpha)}$$

- Sustainable growth rate of output (G^*) is equal to the sustainable growth rate of output per capita, plus the growth of labor (ΔL).

$$G^* = \frac{\theta}{(1-\alpha)} + \Delta L$$

Professor's Note: In the equations for sustainable growth (per capita or total), growth rate is not affected by capital (K). Hence, we say that capital deepening is occurring but it does not affect growth rate once steady state is achieved.

Example: Estimating steady state growth rate

An analyst is forecasting steady state growth rates for Country X and Country Y and has collected the following estimates:

Country	*TFP growth rate*	*Labor force growth rate*	*Labor cost as a proportion of total factor cost*
X	2.0%	1.2%	0.60
Y	1.0%	2.6%	0.52

Calculate and comment on sustainable growth rates for the two countries.

Answer:

Sustainable growth rates:

Country X = (2.0% / 0.60) + 1.2% = 4.53%
Country Y = (1.0% / 0.52) + 2.6% = 4.52%

Sustainable growth rates for the two countries are comparable. Country X's sustainable growth rate is primarily driven by higher growth rate in TFP. Country Y's sustainable growth rate is mostly driven by a higher population growth rate.

Under Neoclassical theory:

- Capital deepening affects the *level* of output but not the *growth rate* in the long run. Capital deepening may temporarily increase the growth rate, but the growth rate will revert back to the sustainable level if there is no technological progress.
- An economy's growth rate will move towards its steady state regardless of the *initial* capital to labor ratio or level of technology.
- In the steady state, the growth rate in productivity (i.e., output per worker) is a function only of the growth rate of technology (θ) and labor's share of total output ($1 - \alpha$).
- In the steady state, marginal product of capital (MPK) = $\alpha Y/K$ is constant, but marginal productivity is diminishing.
- An increase in savings will only temporarily raise economic growth. However, countries with higher savings rates will enjoy higher capital to labor ratio and higher productivity.
- Developing countries (with a lower level of capital per worker) will be impacted less by diminishing marginal productivity of capital, and hence have higher growth rates as compared to developed countries; there will be eventual convergence of per capita incomes.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Endogenous Growth Theory

In contrast to the neoclassical model, **endogenous growth theory** contends that technological growth emerges as a *result* of investment in both physical and human capital (hence the name *endogenous* which means coming from within). Technological progress enhances productivity of both labor and capital. Unlike the neoclassical model, there is no steady state growth rate, so that increased investment can permanently increase the rate of growth.

The driving force behind the endogenous growth theory result is the assumption that certain investments increase TFP (i.e., lead to technological progress) from a societal standpoint. Increasing R&D investments, for example, results in benefits that are also external to the firm making the R&D investments. Those benefits raise the level of growth for the entire economy.

The endogenous growth model theorizes that returns to *capital* are constant. The key implication of constant returns to capital is the effect of an increase in savings: unlike the neoclassical model, the endogenous growth model implies that an increase in savings will permanently increase the growth rate.

The difference between neoclassical and endogenous growth theory relates to total factor productivity. Neoclassical theory assumes that capital investment will expand as technology improves (i.e., growth comes from increases in TFP not related to the investment in capital within the model). Endogenous growth theory, on the other hand, assumes that capital investment (R&D expenditures) may actually improve total factor productivity.

LOS 15.j: Explain and evaluate convergence hypotheses.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 631

Empirical evidence indicates that there are large differences between productivity (output per capita) of different countries, with less developed countries experiencing much lower output per capita than their developed counterparts. The economic question is whether productivity, and hence, living standards tend to converge over time. Will less developed countries experience productivity growth to match the productivity of developed nations?

The **absolute convergence** hypothesis states that less developed countries will achieve equal living standards over time. The **conditional convergence** hypothesis states that convergence in living standards will only occur for countries with the same savings rates, population growth rates, and production functions. Under the conditional convergence hypothesis, the growth rate will be higher for less developed countries until they catch up. Once the standard of living converges with that of developed countries, the growth rate will then stabilize to the same steady state growth rate as that of developed countries.

An additional hypothesis is **club convergence**. Under this hypothesis, countries may be part of a 'club' (i.e., countries with similar institutional features such as savings rates,

financial markets, property rights, health and educational services, etc.). Under club convergence, poorer countries that are part of the club will grow rapidly to catch up with their richer peers. Countries can 'join' the club by making appropriate institutional changes. Those countries that are not part of the club may never achieve the higher standard of living.

Empirical evidence shows that developing economies often (but not always) reach the standard of living of more developed ones. Over the past half century, about two-thirds of economies with a lower standard of living than the United States grew at a faster pace than the United States. Though they have not converged to standard of living of the United States, their more rapid growth provides at least some support for the convergence hypothesis. The club convergence theory may explain why some countries that have not implemented appropriate economic or political reforms still lag behind.

LOS 15.k: Explain the economic rationale for governments to provide incentives to private investment in technology and knowledge.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 633

Firms accept projects when they provide an expected return greater than their risk-adjusted cost of capital. Under endogenous growth theory, private sector investments in R&D and knowledge capital benefit the society overall. For example, a new technology may initially benefit the firm that developed it but may also boost the country's overall productivity. The effects of 'social returns' or externalities are captured in the endogenous growth theory model, which concludes that economies may not reach a steady state growth but may permanently increase growth by expenditures that provide both benefits to the company (private benefits) and benefits to society (externalities).

When the external benefits to the economy (the social returns) of investing in R&D are not considered, many possible R&D projects do not have expected returns (private benefits) high enough to compensate firms for the inherent riskiness of R&D investments. From an aggregate, economy-wide viewpoint, the resultant level of R&D investment will be sub-optimal or too low. Government incentives that effectively subsidize R&D investments can theoretically increase private spending on R&D investments to its optimal level.

LOS 15.l: Describe the expected impact of removing trade barriers on capital investment and profits, employment and wages, and growth in the economies involved.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 635

None of the growth theories that we have discussed account for potential trade and capital flows between countries. Removing trade barriers and allowing for free flow of capital is likely to have the following benefits for countries:

- Increased investment from foreign savings.
- Allows focus on industries where the country has a comparative advantage.
- Increased markets for domestic products, resulting in economies of scale.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

- Increased sharing of technology and higher total factor productivity growth.
- Increased competition leading to failure of inefficient firms and reallocation of their assets to more efficient uses.

The neoclassical model's predictions in an open economy (i.e., an economy without any barriers to trade or capital flow) focus on the convergence. Since developing economies have not reached the point of significant diminishing returns on capital, they can attract capital through foreign investment and experience productivity growth as a result. Eventually, these economies will develop; their growth will slow and will converge to the steady state growth rate of developed economies.

The endogenous growth model also predicts greater growth with free trade and high mobility of capital since open markets foster increased innovation. As foreign competition increases, more efficient and innovative firms will survive. Those firms permanently increase the growth rate of the international economy by providing benefits beyond those simply captured by the firm. Economies of scale also increase output as firms serve larger markets and become more efficient.

In terms of convergence, removing barriers on capital and trade flows may speed the convergence of standard of living of less developed countries to that of developed countries. Research has shown that as long as countries follow outward-oriented policies of integrating their industries with the world economy and increasing exports, their standard of living tends to converge to that of more developed countries. Countries following inward-oriented policies and protecting domestic industries, can expect slower GDP growth and convergence may not occur.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

KEY CONCEPTS

LOS 15.a

Significant differences in growth rates exist between economies. The following factors are positively related to growth rate:

- Sufficient level of savings and investment.
- Development of financial markets and financial intermediaries.
- Political stability, sound laws, and property rights.
- Investment in education and health care systems.
- Lower taxes and regulatory burdens.
- Free trade and unrestricted capital flows.

LOS 15.b

In the long-run, the rate of aggregate stock market appreciation is limited to the sustainable growth rate of the economy.

LOS 15.c

Potential GDP represents the maximum output of an economy without putting upward pressure on prices. Higher potential GDP growth increases the potential for stock returns but also increases the credit quality of all fixed-income investments, all else equal.

In the short term, the difference between potential GDP and actual GDP may be useful for predicting fiscal and monetary policy. If actual GDP is less than potential GDP, inflation is unlikely and the government may follow an expansionary monetary/fiscal policy.

LOS 15.d

Capital deepening is an increase in the capital stock and the capital to labor ratio. Due to diminishing marginal productivity of capital, capital deepening will lead to only limited increases in output and labor productivity if the capital to labor ratio is already high.

Technological progress enhances the productivity of both labor and capital. The long-term growth rate can be increased by technological progress (also called total factor productivity) since output and labor efficiency are increased at all levels of capital to labor ratios.

LOS 15.e

$$\begin{aligned}\text{growth rate in potential GDP} = {} & \text{long-term growth rate of technology} \\ & + \alpha\,(\text{long-term growth rate in capital}) \\ & + (1-\alpha)\,(\text{long-term growth rate in labor})\end{aligned}$$

or

$$\begin{aligned}\text{growth rate in potential GDP} = {} & \text{long-term growth rate of labor force} \\ & + \text{long-term growth rate in labor productivity}\end{aligned}$$

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

LOS 15.f

Natural resources are essential to economic growth. Empirical evidence has shown, however, that *ownership* of natural resources is not necessary for growth. As long as nations can acquire natural resources through trade, they can experience substantial growth. In some cases, ownership of natural resources may even inhibit growth since countries with abundant natural resources may not develop other industries.

LOS 15.g

Quantity of labor is a function of population growth, workforce participation, immigration, and average hours worked. All else equal, countries with higher population growth, higher workforce participation, younger working-age populations, higher average hours worked, and higher net immigration can grow faster due to higher labor input.

LOS 15.h

Economic growth rate for a country is positively correlated with investments in both physical and human capital. Furthermore, technological development (as evidenced by spending on R&D) is critical for economic growth. This is especially true for developed countries that already have large capital stock and a slower population growth rate.

LOS 15.i

Classical growth theory states that growth in real GDP per capita is temporary—when the GDP per capita rises above the subsistence level, a population explosion occurs, and GDP per capita is driven back to the subsistence level.

Neoclassical growth theory states that the sustainable growth rate of an economy is a function of population growth, labor's share of income, and the rate of technological advancement. Growth gains from other means such as increased savings are only temporary.

Endogenous growth theory includes the impact of technological progress within the model. Under endogenous growth theory, investment in capital can have constant returns, unlike neoclassical theory that assumes diminishing returns to capital. This assumption allows for a permanent increase in growth rate attributable to an increase in savings rate. Research and development expenditures are often cited as examples of capital investment that increase technological progress.

LOS 15.j

Absolute convergence states that the standard of living of less developed countries will converge to the standard of living of developed countries. The conditional convergence hypothesis assumes that convergence in living standards will only occur for countries with the same savings rate, population growth, and production functions.

The club convergence hypothesis contends that living standards in some less developed countries may converge to living standards of developed standards if they are in the same "club". A club comprises countries with similar institutional structures (such as property rights and political stability). Countries outside of the club (without the appropriate institutional structures) will not see their living standards converge.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

LOS 15.k

Under the endogenous growth theory, investments in R&D, though risky, often enhance the productivity of the entire economy. Since the private investor only reaps part of the benefit of those investments, it is likely that private sector investments in R&D will be less than what would be optimal for the economy. Government subsidies can make these investments more attractive to private businesses.

LOS 15.l

Economies grow faster in an environment of no trade barriers and free capital flows. Higher growth rates are possible because foreign investment can provide capital to less developed countries (neoclassical theory). The larger markets and greater opportunity to take advantage of innovation will also increase the growth rate in open economies (endogenous growth theory).

Finally, convergence of living standards is likely to be quicker in an open economy.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

CONCEPT CHECKERS

Use the following information to answer questions 1 through 6.

Jay Smith, an analyst for Mako Capital, is evaluating investment prospects in Minikaz, an emerging market economy. Minikaz has experienced moderate growth in the past four years, after decades of stagnation. Smith is evaluating changes in government policies that would foster a higher level of growth. Exhibit A shows the summary of his findings.

Exhibit A: Proposed changes in Minikaz government policies

1. Consumer protection will be at the forefront of government's agenda.

2. The government will lower the entry barriers for foreign financial institutions to operate as intermediaries in Minikaz capital markets.

3. The government will expand public domain legislation to acquire private property for public works projects.

Smith reviews a report published by the Minikaz commerce department. The report indicates that the long-term real growth rate of Minikaz GDP is 2.5%, corporate profits as a percentage of GDP increased by 2% last year, and the P/E ratio increased from 17 to 19 over the last two years. Separately, Smith also reviews World Bank reports indicating that Minikaz's potential GDP growth is 4% and that it has been experiencing actual GDP growth of approximately 2.5%. Finally, Smith reviews Minikaz's national income accounts and finds that Minikaz is experiencing both technological progress and making increased capital expenditures.

Separately, Smith evaluates the performance of Kinimaz, a neighboring republic. Kinimaz has had labor growth of 2% over the last several years and capital growth of 3%. Labor's share of total output is estimated to be 60%. Over the same period, Kinimaz's real GDP has grown by 3.7%. Comparing the two countries, Smith notes that Kinimaz has substantially higher amounts of natural resource endowments. He concludes that Minikaz's relatively lower GDP growth is due to lack of natural resources.

1. Which of the following actions by Minikaz's government would *most likely* increase their economic growth rate?
   A. Increasing regulation for consumer protection.
   B. Lowering entry barriers for foreign financial institutions.
   C. Expanding public domain legislation.

2. Based on the commerce department report, what would be the *most likely* forecast for the long-term aggregate stock market appreciation?
   A. 2.5%.
   B. 4.5%.
   C. 11.5%.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

3. Based on World Bank report, which of the following conclusions is *most likely* regarding Minikaz?
   A. Inflation is 1.5%.
   B. Minikaz's government is likely to follow a restrictive fiscal policy.
   C. Minikaz's central bank is not likely to be worried about inflation.

4. Using the Cobb-Douglas production function and the concepts of capital deepening and total factor productivity, which of the following outcomes is *most likely*?
   A. Minikaz will experience an increase in sustainable growth of per capita output due to the increased capital expenditures.
   B. There will be no short-term increase in per capita output.
   C. There will be both short-term and long-term increases in Minikaz's GDP growth rate.

5. Using the Cobb-Douglas relation, total factor productivity growth for Kinimaz is *closest* to:
   A. 0.5%.
   B. 1.3%.
   C. 1.7%.

6. Smith's conclusion about Minikaz's relatively lower GDP growth is *most likely*:
   A. correct.
   B. correct because in some cases, natural resources may inhibit economic growth.
   C. incorrect because access to natural resources is more important than ownership.

7. Data for the labor market of countries X and Y over the past year appears below:

Country	*Unemployment Rate*	*% Population < Age 15*	*Avg. Hours Worked/Week*	*Immigration Growth*
X	16%	16%	37	3.5%
Y	3%	10%	36.5	3.0%

   Both countries are expected to have moderate economic expansions over the next several years. Which of the following statements is *most accurate* regarding labor input of the countries in the next several years?
   A. Country X will have greater opportunities to increase labor input.
   B. Country Y will have greater opportunities to increase labor input.
   C. Neither Country X nor Country Y will be able to increase labor input.

8. Which of the following would *least likely* have externality effects on output growth for an economy?
   A. Human capital investment.
   B. ICT investment.
   C. Non-ICT investment.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

9. Country X has output elasticity of capital of 0.6 and population growth of 2%. If total factor productivity growth is 1%, what is the sustainable growth rate in output according to neoclassical theory?
   A. 2.0%.
   B. 2.7%.
   C. 4.5%.

10. Which of the following is the *most accurate* description of club convergence?
   A. Less developed countries will converge to living standards of other less developed countries.
   B. More developed countries may see their standard of living drop due to competition from less developed countries.
   C. Some less developed countries may converge to developed country living standards while others may not.

11. A chief economist argues that government policy should include an additional tax break for research and development expenses. The economist *most likely* agrees with:
   A. endogenous growth theory.
   B. neoclassical theory.
   C. classical theory.

Use the following information to answer questions 12 through 13.

Jignesh Sangani, an economist with a large asset management firm, makes the following statements about removal of barriers to trade and capital flows:

Statement 1: Removal of barriers is likely to lead to permanently higher global economic growth under the neoclassical theory.

Statement 2: Removal of barriers is likely to lead to permanently higher economic growth for developing countries only under the endogenous growth theory.

12. Sangani's statement 1 is *most likely*:
   A. correct.
   B. incorrect due to economic growth being permanent.
   C. incorrect due to economic growth being global.

13. Sangani's statement 2 is *most likely*:
   A. correct.
   B. incorrect due to economic growth being permanent.
   C. incorrect due to economic growth being limited to developing countries only.

14. Which of the following is *least likely* to be associated with the law of diminishing returns?
   A. Investment in labor.
   B. Investment in knowledge capital.
   C. Investment in physical capital.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

ANSWERS – CONCEPT CHECKERS

1. B Financial intermediary development helps foster economic growth by allowing more efficient allocation of capital and risk.

2. A Long-term growth in the stock market is a function of GDP growth. The other factors—profits as a percentage of GDP and P/E ratios—will have a long-term growth rate of approximately zero and will not impact a forecast of long-term growth in the stock market.

3. C Potential GDP can be interpreted as the highest growth that can be obtained without pressure on prices. Since actual GDP is lower than potential, there is little risk of inflation.

4. C Since Minikaz is a developing country, it is likely to have a low capital base. With a low capital base, increased capital expenditures will still have an impact on output per worker. Technological progress always has a positive impact on output per worker.

5. B Use the growth accounting relations and solving for growth in TFP.

   $3.7\% = \Delta TFP + 0.4(3\%) + 0.6(2\%)$

   $\Delta TFP = 1.3\%$

6. C Empirical evidence has shown that for economic growth, access to natural resources is more important than ownership. Natural resources may inhibit growth if countries that own them do not develop other industries. However, that is not the conclusion Smith reaches.

7. A Country X will have the greater opportunity due to the younger workforce, potential labor input from unemployed workers, and immigration.

8. C Both human capital and ICT investment tend to have societal benefits. This spillover effect enhances overall growth rate.

9. C Using the equation from neoclassical theory, $1\% / (1 - 0.6) + 2\% = 4.5\%$.

10. C The notion of the club is that some nations are not in the club and will not converge.

11. A Endogenous growth theory includes the concept that R&D may have external benefits, and, therefore, should be subsidized by the government.

12. B Under the neoclassical growth theory, the benefit of open markets is temporary.

13. C Under the endogenous growth theory, open markets lead to higher rate of growth permanently for all markets.

14. B Knowledge capital is a special type of public good that is not subject to the law of diminishing returns. Investment in labor and physical capital do exhibit diminishing returns, which are reflected in the shape of the productivity curve.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

The following is a review of the Economics for Valuation principles designed to address the learning outcome statements set forth by CFA Institute. This topic is also covered in:

Economics of Regulation

Study Session 4

Exam Focus

Regulations have important implications for economic growth and for valuation of companies. Understand the implications of regulations on financial markets, the cost-benefit analysis of regulation, regulatory interdependence and implications for valuation. There is a lot of new terminology introduced in this topic review that needs to be memorized.

LOS 16.a: Describe classifications of regulations and regulators.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 658

Regulations have important implications on businesses and the overall economy. Regulations can be classified as *statutes* (laws made by legislative bodies), *administrative regulations* (rules issued by government agencies or other bodies authorized by the government), or *judicial law* (findings of the court).

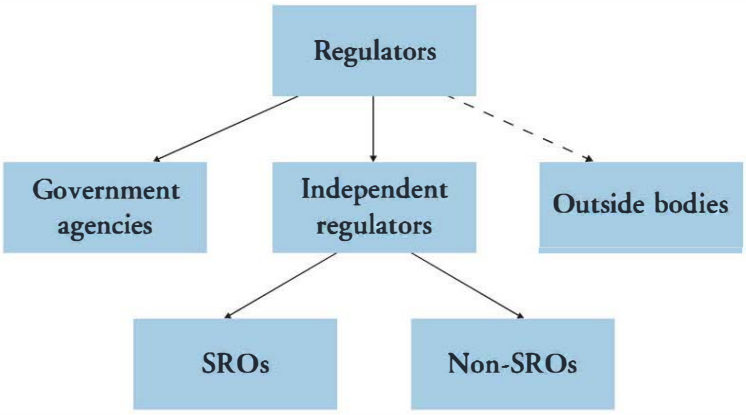
Regulators

Regulators can be government agencies or independent regulators. Figure 1 shows the different types of regulators. Independent regulators are given recognition by government agencies and have power to make rules and enforce them. However, independent regulators are usually not funded by the government and hence are politically independent. Some independent regulators are self-regulating organizations (SROs) that regulate as well as represent their members. Not all SROs are independent regulators (i.e., have government recognition). Also, not all independent regulators are SROs. Some independent regulators such as the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (PCAOB) are not SROs.

It should be noted that SROs may have inherent conflicts of interest. These conflicts of interest may deter the recognition of SROs especially in the presence of a more formal and effective regulatory structure. SROs nonetheless are attractive in that they increase the overall level of regulatory resources, utilize the industry professionals with the requisite expertise, and allow regulators to devote resources to other priorities.

Outside bodies are not regulators themselves but their product is referenced by regulators. Examples of outside bodies include FASB and IASB.

Figure 1: Types of Regulators



LOS 16.b: Describe uses of self-regulation in financial markets.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 659

SROs without government recognition are not considered regulators. Even if SROs are given recognition and regulatory powers, they may be subject to political pressure from their members. Independent SROs when properly supervised by regulatory agencies have been effective in carrying out the objectives of the regulation.

FINRA is an SRO recognized by the SEC in the United States. FINRA's primary objective is to protect investors by maintaining the fairness of the U.S. capital markets. FINRA has the authority to enforce security laws and regulations. Similar SROs can be found globally.

However, the use of independent SROs in civil-law countries is not common; in such countries, formal government agencies fulfill the role of SROs. In these civil-law countries, non-independent SROs may support the regulatory framework via guidelines, codes of conduct, and continuing education.

In common-law countries such as the U.K. and the United States, independent SROs have historically enjoyed recognition.

LOS 16.c: Describe the economic rationale for regulatory intervention.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 661

Economic Rationale for Regulation

Regulations are often required when markets cannot provide efficient solutions for all problems. Regulations are needed in the presence of:

- Informational frictions.
- Externalities.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Informational frictions occur when information is not equally available or distributed. A situation where some market participants have access to information unavailable to others is called *information asymmetry*. Regulations are put in place in an attempt to ensure that no participant is treated unfairly or is at a disadvantage.

Externalities deal with the consumption of **public goods**. A public good is a resource, like parks or national defense, which can be enjoyed by a person without making it unavailable to others. Since people share in the consumption of public goods but don't necessarily bear a cost that is proportionate to consumption, regulations are necessary to ensure an optimal level of production of such public goods.

LOS 16.d: Describe regulatory interdependencies and their effects.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 661

Regulatory Interdependencies

Regulation does not always conflict with the interests of the regulated. The *regulatory capture theory* is based upon the assumption that, regardless of the original purpose behind its establishment, a regulatory body will, at some point in time, be influenced or even possibly controlled by the industry that is being regulated. The rationale behind the theory is that regulators often have experience in the industry, and this affects the regulators' ability to render impartial decisions. Regulatory capture is often cited as a concern with the commercialization of financial exchanges.

Regulatory differences between jurisdictions can lead to *regulatory competition*, in which regulators compete to provide the most business-friendly regulatory environment. *Regulatory arbitrage* occurs when businesses shop for a country that allows a specific behavior rather than changing the behavior. Regulatory arbitrage also entails exploiting the difference between the economic substance and interpretation of a regulation.

To avoid regulatory arbitrage, cooperation at a global level to achieve a cohesive regulatory framework is necessary. For example, regulations limiting greenhouse gas emissions should be consistent globally; otherwise polluters would simply relocate to less restrictive jurisdictions and the objectives of the regulations will not be achieved. Similarly, efforts to reduce the risk of a global financial crisis have been hampered by the lack of a cohesive global regulatory framework.

Even within a country, there may be a conflict between the objectives of different regulatory bodies, leading to an inconsistent overall regulatory framework. For example, regulations seeking higher fuel efficiency standards for automobiles may conflict with regulations from another agency seeking to make the automobiles safer.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

LOS 16.e: Describe tools of regulatory intervention in markets.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 664

Tools of Regulatory Intervention

Three **regulatory tools** are available to regulators:

1. **Price mechanisms.** Price mechanisms such as taxes and subsidies can be used to further specific regulatory objectives; for example, sin taxes are often used to deter consumption of alcohol. Conversely, subsidies such as those on green energy can encourage specific economic behavior.

2. **Restricting/requiring certain activities.** Regulators may ban certain activities (e.g., use of specific chemicals) or require that certain activities be performed (e.g., filing of 10-k reports by publicly listed companies) to further their objectives.

3. **Provision of public goods or financing of private projects.** Regulators may provide public goods (e.g., national defense) or fund private projects (e.g., small business loans) depending on their political priorities and objectives.

It should be noted that often more than one regulatory approach may be possible and desirable. For example, in deterring consumption of junk foods, regulators may both tax the product category and require nutritional labeling for food.

The effectiveness of regulatory tools depends on the enforcement abilities (e.g., sanctioning violators) of the regulators. Furthermore, the enforcement should have the desired effect of compliance with the regulations. For example, regulations seeking to protect investors in a public company may specify sanctions for violations. If the sanctions are borne by the company (and ultimately the shareholders) and not the individuals perpetrating the violations (i.e., management), then the sanctions end up hurting those that the regulation was intending to protect in the first place.

LOS 16.f: Explain purposes in regulating commerce and financial markets.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 668

1. **Regulating commerce.** Government regulations provide an essential framework to facilitate business decision making. Examples of regulations covering commerce include company laws, tax laws, contract laws, competition laws, banking laws, bankruptcy laws, and dispute resolution systems.

   Regulations may facilitate or hinder commerce. For example, protections of intellectual property facilitate long-term investments in research. Similarly, trade agreements promote commerce internationally.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

2. **Regulating financial markets.** Financial market regulations include regulation of securities markets and regulation of financial institutions. Regulation of financial markets is critical to prevent failures of the financial system. The objectives of securities regulations include three interrelated goals: protecting investors, creating confidence in the markets, and enhancing capital formation.

Regulation of Security Markets

Ensuring the fairness and integrity of capital markets and thereby protecting investors is a key role of financial markets regulators. Several observations can be made about security markets regulations:

- Disclosure requirements are a key element of security markets regulations. Disclosures provide transparency in financial markets and hence promote investor confidence.
- Many securities regulations are directed towards mitigating agency problem. In the financial markets, investors often work through intermediaries (agents) whose interests often diverge from the interests of investors. Regulations imposing fiduciary duties seek to mitigate such agency problems.
- Regulations have historically focused on protecting small (retail) investors, hence the relatively lax regulatory coverage of hedge funds and private equity funds that are marketed only to qualified investors.

Regulation of Financial Institutions

Prudential Supervision

Prudential supervision refers to the monitoring and regulation of financial institutions to reduce system-wide risks and to protect investors. Prudential supervision is important because the failure of one financial institution can have a far-reaching impact and may result in a loss of confidence. Due to high mobility of capital across the developed world, shocks in one part of the system can affect the whole system, leading to global contagion.

The cost-benefit analysis of financial market regulations should also include hidden costs. For example, FDIC insurance for banks may provide excessive risk-taking incentives for banks (a moral hazard problem).

LOS 16.g: Describe anticompetitive behaviors targeted by antitrust laws globally and evaluate the antitrust risk associated with a given business strategy.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 671

Antitrust Regulation

In a global context, regulatory frameworks often conflict. While regulations often hinder foreign competition (to protect domestic businesses), they seek to promote competition

among domestic businesses. Antitrust laws work to promote domestic competition by monitoring and restricting activities that reduce or distort competition.

Regulators often block a merger that leads to excessive concentration of market share. Anticompetitive behavior such as discriminatory pricing, bundling, and exclusive dealing is often also prohibited. Internationally, companies need to evaluate their product and marketing strategies in the context of multiple (and varying) regulatory regimes. For example a multinational company may be subject to U.S. antitrust laws as well as to EU antitrust laws.

When evaluating an announced merger or acquisition, an analyst should consider the anticipated response by regulators as part of the analysis.

LOS 16.h: Describe benefits and costs of regulation.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 673

Cost Benefit Analysis of Regulation

A regulatory framework needs to be assessed in terms of the cost of the framework relative to the benefit it provides. U.S. federal regulatory agencies are required to conduct a cost-benefit analysis prior to issuing a regulation.

The costs and benefits of regulations may be easy to view but difficult to quantify. The cost of regulation is not limited to the implementation cost (i.e., the cost of operating a government agency to provide monitoring and supervision); an analyst should also consider the cost of the regulation to the private sector.

Regulatory burden (also known as government burden) refers to the cost of compliance for the regulated entity. Regulatory burden minus the private benefits of regulation is known as the *net regulatory burden*.

Regulators should be aware of unintended consequences of regulations. For example, regulations mandating an increase in automobile fuel efficiency standards may encourage consumers to drive more, reducing the effectiveness of the regulation. Regulatory burden is generally difficult to measure as it includes the indirect costs related to changes in economic behavior.

Regulatory costs are difficult to assess before a regulation is put in place. For this reason, many regulatory provisions include a '*sunset clause*' that requires regulators to revisit the cost-benefit analysis based on actual outcomes before renewing the regulation.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

LOS 16.i: Evaluate effects on an industry, company, or security of a specific regulation.

CFA® Program Curriculum, Volume 1, page 677

Regulations can help or hinder a company or industry. Regulations may shrink the size of one industry (e.g., if it is heavily taxed) while increasing the size of another (e.g., an industry receiving subsidies). Analysts should review the impact of current and proposed regulations on an industry or company, as regulation can have a large impact on valuation.

Regulations are not necessarily always costly for those that end up being regulated. If the regulator is deemed to be captive, regulations may end up benefiting the regulated entities.

Regulations may introduce inefficiencies in the market. For example, past government bailout of financial institutions has conveyed a message of future implicit guarantees. For this reason, the credit spreads on bonds issued by the financial sector may not fully reflect their risk.

Some regulations may be specifically applicable to certain sectors while others may have broad implications affecting a number of sectors. Certain industries have more exposure to certain types of regulations. For example, environmental laws have higher implications for mining, oil, and gas sectors. Similarly, labor laws are more relevant for labor intensive industries.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

KEY CONCEPTS

LOS 16.a
Regulations can be classified as statutes, administrative regulations, or judicial law.

Regulators can be government agencies or independent regulators. Independent regulators can be SROs or non-SROs. Outside bodies are not regulators themselves but their product may be referenced by regulators.

LOS 16.b
Independent SROs, when properly supervised by regulatory agencies, have been effective in carrying out the objectives of regulation. Use of independent SROs is more prevalent in common-law countries than in civil-law countries.

LOS 16.c
Regulations are needed in the presence of informational frictions and externalities. Informational frictions arise in the presence of information asymmetry. Externalities deal with the provision of public goods.

LOS 16.d
The regulatory capture theory is based upon the assumption that a regulatory body will be influenced or even controlled by the industry that is being regulated. Regulatory differences between jurisdictions can lead to regulatory competition wherein regulators compete to provide the most business-friendly regulatory environment. Firms may use regulatory arbitrage to exploit the difference between the substance and interpretation of a regulation.

LOS 16.e
Regulatory tools include price mechanisms, restrictions on or requirement of certain activities, and provision of public goods or financing of private projects.

LOS 16.f
Examples of regulations covering commerce include company law, tax law, contract law, competition law, banking law, bankruptcy law, and dispute resolution system. Governments may facilitate or hinder commerce.

Financial market regulations seek to protect investors and to ensure stability of financial system. Securities market regulations include disclosure requirements, regulations to mitigate agency conflicts, and regulations to protect small investors.

Prudential supervision is the regulation and monitoring of financial institutions to reduce system-wide risks and to protect investors.

LOS 16.g
Regulators often block a merger that would lead to excessive concentration of market share. Additionally, anticompetitive behavior such as discriminatory pricing, bundling, and exclusive dealing is often prohibited.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

LOS 16.h

Regulatory burden refers to the cost of compliance for the regulated entity. Regulatory burden minus the private benefits of regulation is known as the net regulatory burden. Indirect costs of regulations need to be included in the cost-benefit analysis of regulation but are difficult to measure ex-ante. Sunset clauses require a cost-benefit analysis to be revisited before the regulation is renewed.

LOS 16.i

Regulations can have material impacts on industries and companies. Certain industries have more exposure to certain types of regulations. Analysts should review the impact of current and proposed regulations as regulations can have a large impact on valuations for a particular company or industry.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Concept Checkers

Use the following information to answer Questions 1 through 7.

Gyaneshwar Dharampal, CFA, is one of the newer analysts at Paramus Funds and has been assigned to cover the global financial services industry. Dharampal is currently reviewing the Zambolan financial services industry. Zambola is a rapidly growing emerging market country. The Zambolan currency is known as the Zu.

The governance of commercial banks in Zambola is covered by the Zambola Financial Institutions Act as amended (2008) (the act). The act provides the regulatory framework for security markets, commercial banks, and other financial intermediaries.

The Zambolan Finance Commission (ZFC) has enforcement and supervisory powers over commercial banks. In its regulatory role, ZFC specifies minimum capital requirements and underwriting standards for loans and investments for commercial banks in Zambola. Currently, the minimum credit rating for bonds eligible for investment by commercial banks is stipulated to be 'B' as rated by JBL Services, an independent rating agency.

The act also provides that the operation of the Zambolan stock exchange be supervised by the Exchange Association (an independent SRO). To promote independence of the Exchange Association, the act exempts it from supervisory review by ZFC.

To curb predatory lending, the act imposes a ceiling on interest rates that banks can charge on consumer loans. However, a recent decision by a Zambolan high court overturned that provision of the act. In response, in the new revenue bill, the Zambolan government included punitive taxes on earnings of commercial banks that are attributable to interest rates higher than the previously-specified ceiling.

Dharampal notes that a new regulation would impose additional taxes on Zambolan manufacturers and require them to make certain workplace safety related modifications. He estimates that the tax revenue from the new regulations would be 100 million Zu. The tax revenue will be used to cover the salaries of newly-hired personnel at the government agency in charge of enforcement of the regulation. The aggregate cost to the manufacturing sector of compliance with the new regulation is estimated to be 300 million Zu. It is also estimated that the aggregate benefit to private sector builders as a result of the new regulations would be 30 million Zu.

Finally, Dharampal notes that Zambola is in the process of introducing a national health care system wherein taxes on tobacco and alcohol will fund government-subsidized health care.

1. The removal of the interest rate ceiling on consumer loans is *most likely* an example of a(n):
   A. judicial law.
   B. statute.
   C. administrative regulation.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

2. JBL services is *best* described as a(n):
   A. SRO.
   B. independent regulator.
   C. outside body.

3. Which of the following is **NOT** a good reason to delegate supervisory authority to the Exchange Association?
   A. Increase in overall regulatory resources.
   B. Exemption from supervisory review by ZFC.
   C. Additional knowledge and expertise of industry professionals.

4. Which of the following is *most likely* to be a concern related to the regulatory authority of the Exchange Association?
   A. Regulatory arbitrage.
   B. Regulatory capture.
   C. Regulatory competition.

5. Zambolan government's action of charging punitive taxes on interest earnings of commercial banks is *best* described as a:
   A. price mechanism.
   B. restriction on certain activities.
   C. provision of a public good.

6. The net regulatory burden of new workplace safety regulation is *closest* to:
   A. 170 million Zu.
   B. 270 million Zu.
   C. 430 million Zu.

7. Based on the information provided, which sector of the Zambolan economy is *most likely* to grow?
   A. Commercial banks.
   B. Health care.
   C. Alcoholic beverage producers.

8. Which of the following would *least accurately* be described as regulation of commerce?
   A. Antitrust regulations.
   B. Dispute resolution regulations.
   C. Prudential supervision regulations.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

ANSWERS – CONCEPT CHECKERS

1. A Judicial law is findings of the court and is applicable in this case. Statutes are laws made by legislative bodies while administrative regulations are rules issued by government agencies or other bodies authorized by the government.

2. C JBL Services is neither a regulator nor an SRO and is best described as an outside body. The work of such outside bodies is sometimes referenced by regulatory authorities in their regulations.

3. B The Exchange Association is an SRO and hence increases overall regulatory resources. Its members also bring knowledge and expertise of industry professionals. However, due to inherent conflict of interest in an association regulating its own members, adequate regulatory oversight would be necessary.

4. B The Exchange Association is exposed to conflict of interest in regulating its members. Hence regulatory capture (where a regulatory body is influenced or controlled by the industry that is being regulated) is a concern. Regulatory differences between jurisdictions can lead to regulatory competition; regulators compete to provide a business-friendly regulatory environment. Firms may also resort to regulatory arbitrage to exploit the difference between the substance and interpretation of a regulation. Neither regulatory competition nor regulatory arbitrage is applicable in this case.

5. A Taxes and subsidies as regulatory tools are examples of price mechanisms.

6. B Net regulatory burden is the cost of compliance for the regulated entity minus the private benefits of regulation.

   net regulatory burden = 300 – 30 = 270 million Zu

7. B Everything else held constant, sectors being taxed (i.e., commercial banks, alcohol and tobacco) would be expected to shrink while sectors that are subsidized (i.e., health care) would be expected to grow.

8. C Prudential supervision deals with regulating financial markets rather than regulating commerce. Antitrust regulations and dispute resolution regulations are elements of regulation of commerce.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

SELF-TEST: ECONOMICS FOR VALUATION

Professor's Note: Remember that the Level II exam consists entirely of item set format questions; that is, a vignette presenting the relevant information followed by six multiple-choice questions. For an accurate gauge of your preparedness, allow 18 minutes for this self-test.

Use the following information to answer Questions 1 through 6.

Teresa Young, CFA, is the head of research for a large financial services firm based in New York City. The company's clients include pension funds, endowments, and large foundations. Members of the research department include economists that perform short- and long-range forecasting, as well as analysts that follow industry trends and the various individual companies within the industry.

Many of the firm's clients have globally diversified portfolios, and one of Young's group's responsibilities is to provide appropriate support to the firm's portfolio managers. One of the European equities managers approaches Young for assistance with a longtime client based in Dallas, Texas. The client's existing portfolio is well-diversified, with approximately 60% in domestic securities and 40% in global investments (primarily in Europe and Asia). The client is unhappy with the portfolio's recent performance and is convinced that there is too much exchange rate exposure because of the large foreign allocation. The portfolio manager would like to provide evidence to the contrary to the client and believes the client is lacking a fundamental understanding of foreign exchange parity relations.

Young compiles some basic information regarding the theoretical relationships among exchange rates, interest rates, and inflation rates. She also obtains information on some of the client's key non-U.S. holdings. Young observes that the client currently has a large position in Banyo, a Japanese manufacturer and distributor of consumer electronics with a strong global market share. The client also has a substantial investment in Seine Industries, a French producer of paper products whose primary market is Western Europe.

Current spot rates:

- 1.3200 USD ($) per EUR (€).
- 95 JPY (¥) per USD ($).

Expected inflation rates:

- United States: 4.00%.
- Euro: 6.50%.
- Japan: 8.00%.

Young is concerned about changes in Japanese monetary and fiscal policies. Japan has been well integrated in global capital markets, and she expects that the policymakers in Japan will tighten monetary policy while adopting an expansionary fiscal policy for the coming three to five years. She is also concerned about changes in the regulatory environment in Japan: Young's analysis of Japanese budgets leads her to conclude that

Japan is increasing funding to primary education, while the United States is increasing funding for post-secondary education.

Young then directs her attention to the French economy. She collects several macroeconomic variables for the past 20 years. The information is provided in Exhibit 1.

Exhibit 1: The French Economy: Historical Data

GDP growth rate	1.8%
Growth in labor productivity	0.3%
Labor cost / total factor cost	0.36
Growth rate of labor	1.2%
Growth rate of capital	1.67%

Young then collects projections for France as follows:

- The rate of technological change is expected to be lower by 0.1% going forward.
- The growth rate of labor and labor productivity will be similar to historical values.
- The growth rate of capital will increase by 0.1% going forward.

1. Utilizing the spot exchange rate and the inflation rate information provided, which of the following is the calculated JPY/USD exchange rate predicted six months from today by relative purchasing power parity (relative PPP)?
   A. JPY/USD 90.28.
   B. JPY/USD 96.81.
   C. JPY/USD 98.65.

2. When Young discusses the International Fisher Relation with her client, she should explain that it is based on real interest rate parity, which implies that:
   A. forward rates already reflect any difference in expected real interest rates between countries.
   B. any expected inflation differential between countries will be brought back to equilibrium by consumers' demands for the least expensive goods and services.
   C. any difference in real interest rates between countries will result in capital flows that cause real interest rates in those countries to converge to the same level.

3. Under the Mundell-Fleming model, the planned changes in Japanese monetary/fiscal policy are least likely to result in a(n):
   A. depreciation of the Japanese yen.
   B. appreciation of the Japanese yen.
   C. capital account surplus.

4. Regulations are least likely to be needed in the presence of:
   A. externalities.
   B. informational frictions.
   C. symmetrical information.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

5. Compared with the impact of the incremental spending on primary education in Japan, the planned incremental spending on post-secondary education in the United States is most likely to result in:
   A. a higher growth in GDP.
   B. a lower growth in GDP.
   C. a similar growth in GDP.

6. France's growth rate of potential GDP is *closest* to:
   A. 1.76%.
   B. 1.80%.
   C. 1.92%.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

SELF-TEST ANSWERS: ECONOMICS FOR VALUATION

1. B Relative PPP hypothesizes that changes in nominal exchange rates over time are equal to national inflation rate differentials.

   The equation for relative PPP is:

   $$E(S_t) = S_0 \times [(1 + E(I_{JPY})) / (1 + E(I_{USD}))]^t$$

   where I is the expected annual inflation rate, S_t is the spot rate at time t in JPY per USD, and t is measured in years.

   Since the ¥ has the higher inflation rate, the ¥ should depreciate.

   Therefore, $E(S_1) = ¥95 \times [(1 + 0.08) / (1 + 0.04)]^{0.5} = ¥95 \times 1.0385 = ¥96.8097$.

2. C The real interest rate parity condition is the theory that real interest rates will converge to the same level across different markets. If real interest rate parity holds, then the level of real interest rates in one country will be identical to the level of real interest rates in a second country.

3. A Under the Mundell-Fleming model, a restrictive monetary/expansionary fiscal policy in the presence of high capital mobility would lead to a capital account surplus (due to inflow of capital) and domestic currency appreciation.

4. C Regulations are needed in the presence of externalities and informational frictions. One example of a friction is asymmetrical information, which allows one market participant to have an advantage over another.

5. A Allocation of education spending among primary, secondary, and post-secondary education can be an important determinant of growth. In developed countries like the United States and Japan, incremental spending on post-secondary education will encourage innovation and growth to a greater degree than will spending on primary and secondary education.

6. A Growth rate of output = (rate of technological change) + α(growth rate of capital) + (1 – α)(growth rate of labor)

   $(1 - \alpha)$ = labor cost / total factor cost = 0.36 (given)

   $\alpha = 1 - 0.36 = 0.64$

   Plugging the data given and solving for rate of technological change gives:

   1.8% = (rate of technological change) + (0.64)(1.67%) + (0.36)(1.2%)

   rate of technological change = 0.3%

   Going forward, E(rate of technological change) = 0.3% – 0.1% = 0.2%.

   E(growth in capital) = 1.67% + 0.1% = 1.77%

   Growth in labor is expected to be unchanged at 1.2%.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Growth in potential GDP = E(GDP growth rate)

= E(technology growth) + α[E(growth in capital)] + (1 − α)[E(growth in labor)]

= 0.2% + (0.64)(1.77%) + (0.36)(1.2%)

= 1.76%

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Formulas

Study Session 3: Quantitative Methods

Covariance and Correlation

sample covariance: $\text{cov}_{XY} = \dfrac{\sum_{i=1}^{n}(X_i - \overline{X})(Y_i - \overline{Y})}{n-1}$

sample correlation coefficient: $r_{XY} = \dfrac{\text{cov}_{XY}}{(s_X)(s_Y)}$

***t*-test for correlation coefficient:** $t = \dfrac{r\sqrt{n-2}}{\sqrt{1-r^2}}$ with $n - 2$ df

Simple Linear Regression

slope coefficient: $\hat{b}_1 = \dfrac{\text{cov}_{XY}}{\sigma_X^2}$

intercept term: $\hat{b}_0 = \overline{Y} - \hat{b}_1\overline{X}$

confidence interval for coefficient:

$$\hat{b}_1 \pm \left(t_c \times s_{\hat{b}_1}\right), \text{or} \left[\hat{b}_1 - \left(t_c \times s_{\hat{b}_1}\right) < b_1 < \hat{b}_1 + \left(t_c \times s_{\hat{b}_1}\right)\right]$$

coefficient *t*-test: $t_{b_1} = \dfrac{\hat{b}_1 - b_1}{s_{\hat{b}_1}}$ with $n - 2$ df

predicted value of the dependent variable: $\hat{Y} = \hat{b}_0 + \hat{b}_1 X_p$

confidence interval for a predicted value (simple linear regression only):

$$\hat{Y} \pm (t_c \times s_f) \Rightarrow \left[\hat{Y} - (t_c \times s_f) < Y < \hat{Y} + (t_c \times s_f)\right]$$

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

ANOVA Table Information (Simple Linear Regression)

total sum of squares (SST): $SST = \sum_{i=1}^{n}(Y_i - \overline{Y})^2$

regression sum of squares (RSS): $RSS = \sum_{i=1}^{n}(\hat{Y}_i - \overline{Y})^2$

sum of squared errors (SSE): $SSE = \sum_{i=1}^{n}(Y_i - \hat{Y}_i)^2$

coefficient of determination: $R^2 = \frac{\text{total variation} - \text{unexplained variation}}{\text{total variation}} = \frac{SST - SSE}{SST}$

standard error of estimate (SEE): $\sqrt{\frac{SSE}{n-2}} = \sqrt{MSE}$

***F*-statistic:** $F = \frac{MSR}{MSE} = \frac{RSS/k}{SSE/n-k-1}$ with n – 2 df

Multiple Regression

predicted *y*-value: $\hat{Y}_i = \hat{b}_0 + \hat{b}_1 X_{1i} + \hat{b}_2 X_{2i} + \ldots + \hat{b}_k X_{ki}$

***t*-test for regression coefficient:** $t = \frac{\hat{b}_j - b_j}{s_{\hat{b}_j}}$ with n – k – 1 df

confidence interval for regression coefficient:

$$\hat{b}_1 \pm \left(t_c \times s_{\hat{b}_1}\right), \text{ or } \left[\hat{b}_1 - \left(t_c \times s_{\hat{b}_1}\right) < b_1 < \hat{b}_1 + \left(t_c \times s_{\hat{b}_1}\right)\right]$$

ANOVA: total variation (SST) = explained variation (RSS) + unexplained variation (SSE)

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

mean squared error: $MSE = \frac{SSE}{n-k-1}$

mean regression sum of squares: $MSR = \frac{RSS}{k}$

***F*-test for multiple regression:** $F = \frac{MSR}{MSE} = \frac{RSS/k}{SSE/[n-k-1]}$, with k and n – k – 1 df

adjusted R^2: $R_a^2 = 1 - \left[\left(\frac{n-1}{n-k-1}\right) \times (1 - R^2)\right]$

Breusch-Pagan Chi-square test for heteroskedasticity:

$BP = n \times R^2_{resid}$ with k degrees of freedom

Durbin-Watson test for serial correlation: $DW = \frac{\sum_{t=2}^{T} (\hat{\varepsilon}_t - \hat{\varepsilon}_{t-1})^2}{\sum_{t=1}^{T} \hat{\varepsilon}_t^2} \approx 2(1-r)$

Time-Series Analysis

AR model of order *p*, AR(*p*): $x_t = b_0 + b_1 x_{t-1} + b_2 x_{t-2} + \ ... \ + b_p x_{t-p} + \varepsilon_t$

Mean reverting level of AR(1): $x_t = \frac{b_0}{(1-b_1)}$

ARCH(1) model: $\hat{\varepsilon}_t^2 = a_0 + a_1 \hat{\varepsilon}_{t-1}^2 + \mu_t$

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Study Session 4: Economics for Valuation

Where applicable, ALL notation assumes A/B currency quote convention.

bid-ask spread (for base currency) = ask quote – bid quote

cross rates with bid-ask spreads:

$$\left(\frac{A}{C}\right)_{bid} = \left(\frac{A}{B}\right)_{bid} \times \left(\frac{B}{C}\right)_{bid} \qquad \left(\frac{A}{C}\right)_{offer} = \left(\frac{A}{B}\right)_{offer} \times \left(\frac{B}{C}\right)_{offer}$$

forward premium = (forward price) – (spot price) = $F - S_0$

value of a forward currency contract prior to expiration:

$$V_t = \frac{(FP_t - FP)(\text{contract size})}{\left[1 + R\left(\frac{\text{days}}{360}\right)\right]}$$

covered interest rate parity:

$$F = \frac{\left[1 + R_A\left(\frac{\text{days}}{360}\right)\right]}{\left[1 + R_B\left(\frac{\text{days}}{360}\right)\right]} S_0$$

uncovered interest rate parity:

$$E(S_t) = \text{expected spot rate at time } t = \left(\frac{1 + R_A}{1 + R_B}\right)^t (S_0)$$

Fisher relation:

$$(1 + R_{nominal}) = (1 + R_{real})[1 + E(\text{inflation})] \quad \text{or} \quad R_{nominal} \cong R_{real} + E(\text{inflation})$$

international Fisher relation:

$$\frac{(1 + R_{\text{nominal A}})}{(1 + R_{\text{nominal B}})} = \frac{[1 + E(\text{inflation}_A)]}{[1 + E(\text{inflation}_B)]}$$

$$R_{\text{nominal A}} - R_{\text{nominal B}} \cong E(\text{inflation}_A) - E(\text{inflation}_B)$$

relative purchasing power parity:

$$S_t = S_0\left[\frac{1 + \text{inflation}_A}{1 + \text{inflation}_B}\right]^t$$

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

$$\text{real exchange rate} = S_t \left[\frac{CPI_B}{CPI_A} \right]$$

labor productivity:

output per worker $Y/L = T(K/L)^{\alpha}$

growth accounting relation:

growth rate in potential GDP = long-term growth rate of technology
+ α (long-term growth rate of capital)
+ $(1 - \alpha)$ (long-term growth rate of labor)

or

growth rate in potential GDP = long-term growth rate of labor force
+ long-term growth rate in labor productivity

neoclassical growth theory:

sustainable growth of output per capita (g^*) equals growth rate in technology (θ) divided by labor's share of GDP $(1 - \alpha)$

$$g^* = \frac{\theta}{(1-\alpha)}$$

sustainable growth rate of output (G^*) equals sustainable growth rate of output per capita plus growth of labor (ΔL)

$$G^* = \frac{\theta}{(1-\alpha)} + \Delta L$$

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Appendix A: Areas Under the Normal Curve

Most of the examples in this book have used the Student's *t*-distribution (which is found in Appendix B) to check for statistical significance. CFA Level II candidates should also know how to use the *z*-table to find the area under the normal curve. Here we present some examples of how to use the cumulative *z*-table.

Probability Example

Assume that the annual earnings per share (EPS) for a large sample of firms is normally distributed with a mean of $5.00 and a standard deviation of $1.50. What is the approximate probability of an observed EPS value falling between $3.00 and $7.25?

If $EPS = x = \$7.25$, then $z = (x - \mu)/\sigma = (\$7.25 - \$5.00)/\$1.50 = +1.50$

If $EPS = x = \$3.00$, then $z = (x - \mu)/\sigma = (\$3.00 - \$5.00)/\$1.50 = -1.33$

Solving Using The Cumulative *Z*-Table

For z-value of 1.50: Use the row headed 1.5 and the column headed 0 to find the value 0.9332. This represents the area under the curve to the left of the critical value 1.50.

For z-value of –1.33: Use the row headed 1.3 and the column headed 3 to find the value 0.9082. This represents the area under the curve to the left of the critical value +1.33. The area to the left of –1.33 is 1 – 0.9082 = 0.0918.

The area between these critical values is 0.9332 – 0.0918 = 0.8414, or 84.14%.

Hypothesis Testing – One-Tailed Test Example

A sample of a stock's returns on 36 non-consecutive days results in a mean return of 2.0%. Assume the population standard deviation is 20.0%. Can we say with 95% confidence that the mean return is greater than 0%?

$H_0: \mu \leq 0.0\%$, $H_A: \mu > 0.0\%$. The test statistic = *z*-statistic = $\frac{\bar{x} - \mu_0}{\sigma / \sqrt{n}}$ = (2.0 – 0.0) / (20.0 / 6) = 0.60.

The significance level = 1.0 – 0.95 = 0.05, or 5%. Since we are interested in a return greater than 0.0%, this is a one-tailed test.

Using The Cumulative *Z*-Table

Since this is a one-tailed test with an alpha of 0.05, we need to find the value 0.95 in the cumulative *z*-table. The closest value is 0.9505, with a corresponding critical *z*-value of 1.65. Since the test statistic is less than the critical value, we fail to reject H_0.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Hypothesis Testing – Two-Tailed Test Example

Using the same assumptions as before, suppose that the analyst now wants to determine if he can say with 99% confidence that the stock's return is not equal to 0.0%.

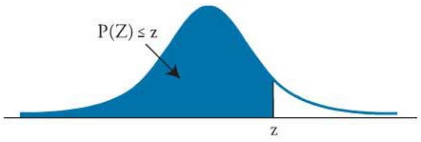
H_0: $\mu = 0.0\%$, H_A: $\mu \neq 0.0\%$. The test statistic (z-value) = (2.0 – 0.0) / (20.0 / 6) = 0.60. The significance level = 1.0 – 0.99 = 0.01, or 1%. Since we are interested in whether or not the stock return is nonzero, this is a two-tailed test.

Using The Cumulative Z-Table

Since this is a two-tailed test with an alpha of 0.01, there is a 0.005 rejection region in both tails. Thus, we need to find the value 0.995 (1.0 – 0.005) in the table. The closest value is 0.9951, which corresponds to a critical z-value of 2.58. Since the test statistic is less than the critical value, we fail to reject H_0 and conclude that the stock's return equals 0.0%.

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Cumulative Z-Table



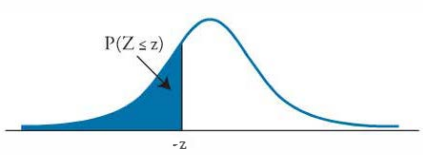
Standard Normal Distribution

$P(Z \leq z) = N(z)$ for $z \geq 0$

z	0.00	0.01	0.02	0.03	0.04	0.05	0.06	0.07	0.08	0.09
0.0	0.5000	0.5040	0.5080	0.5120	0.5160	0.5199	0.5239	0.5279	0.5319	0.5359
0.1	0.5398	0.5438	0.5478	0.5517	0.5557	0.5596	0.5636	0.5675	0.5714	0.5753
0.2	0.5793	0.5832	0.5871	0.5910	0.5948	0.5987	0.6026	0.6064	0.6103	0.6141
0.3	0.6179	0.6217	0.6255	0.6293	0.6331	0.6368	0.6406	0.6443	0.6480	0.6517
0.4	0.6554	0.6591	0.6628	0.6664	0.6700	0.6736	0.6772	0.6808	0.6844	0.6879
0.5	0.6915	0.6950	0.6985	0.7019	0.7054	0.7088	0.7123	0.7157	0.7190	0.7224
0.6	0.7257	0.7291	0.7324	0.7357	0.7389	0.7422	0.7454	0.7486	0.7517	0.7549
0.7	0.7580	0.7611	0.7642	0.7673	0.7704	0.7734	0.7764	0.7794	0.7823	0.7852
0.8	0.7881	0.7910	0.7939	0.7967	0.7995	0.8023	0.8051	0.8078	0.8106	0.8133
0.9	0.8159	0.8186	0.8212	0.8238	0.8264	0.8289	0.8315	0.8340	0.8365	0.8389
1.0	0.8413	0.8438	0.8461	0.8485	0.8508	0.8531	0.8554	0.8577	0.8599	0.8621
1.1	0.8643	0.8665	0.8686	0.8708	0.8729	0.8749	0.8770	0.8790	0.8810	0.8830
1.2	0.8849	0.8869	0.8888	0.8907	0.8925	0.8944	0.8962	0.8980	0.8997	0.9015
1.3	0.9032	0.9049	0.9066	0.9082	0.9099	0.9115	0.9131	0.9147	0.9162	0.9177
1.4	0.9192	0.9207	0.9222	0.9236	0.9251	0.9265	0.9279	0.9292	0.9306	0.9319
1.5	0.9332	0.9345	0.9357	0.9370	0.9382	0.9394	0.9406	0.9418	0.9429	0.9441
1.6	0.9452	0.9463	0.9474	0.9484	0.9495	0.9505	0.9515	0.9525	0.9535	0.9545
1.7	0.9554	0.9564	0.9573	0.9582	0.9591	0.9599	0.9608	0.9616	0.9625	0.9633
1.8	0.9641	0.9649	0.9656	0.9664	0.9671	0.9678	0.9686	0.9693	0.9699	0.9706
1.9	0.9713	0.9719	0.9726	0.9732	0.9738	0.9744	0.9750	0.9756	0.9761	0.9767
2.0	0.9772	0.9778	0.9783	0.9788	0.9793	0.9798	0.9803	0.9808	0.9812	0.9817
2.1	0.9821	0.9826	0.9830	0.9834	0.9838	0.9842	0.9846	0.9850	0.9854	0.9857
2.2	0.9861	0.9864	0.9868	0.9871	0.9875	0.9878	0.9881	0.9884	0.9887	0.9890
2.3	0.9893	0.9896	0.9898	0.9901	0.9904	0.9906	0.9909	0.9911	0.9913	0.9916
2.4	0.9918	0.9920	0.9922	0.9925	0.9927	0.9929	0.9931	0.9932	0.9934	0.9936
2.5	0.9938	0.9940	0.9941	0.9943	0.9945	0.9946	0.9948	0.9949	0.9951	0.9952
2.6	0.9953	0.9955	0.9956	0.9957	0.9959	0.9960	0.9961	0.9962	0.9963	0.9964
2.7	0.9965	0.9966	0.9967	0.9968	0.9969	0.9970	0.9971	0.9972	0.9973	0.9974
2.8	0.9974	0.9975	0.9976	0.9977	0.9977	0.9978	0.9979	0.9979	0.9980	0.9981
2.9	0.9981	0.9982	0.9982	0.9983	0.9984	0.9984	0.9985	0.9985	0.9986	0.9986
3.0	0.9987	0.9987	0.9987	0.9988	0.9988	0.9989	0.9989	0.9989	0.9990	0.9990

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Cumulative Z-Table (cont.)



Standard Normal Distribution

$P(Z \leq z) = N(z)$ for $z \leq 0$

z	0.00	0.01	0.02	0.03	0.04	0.05	0.06	0.07	0.08	0.09
0.0	0.5000	0.4960	0.4920	0.4880	0.4840	0.4801	0.4761	0.4721	0.4681	0.4641
-0.1	0.4602	0.4562	0.4522	0.4483	0.4443	0.4404	0.4364	0.4325	0.4286	0.4247
-0.2	0.4207	0.4168	0.4129	0.4090	0.4052	0.4013	0.3974	0.3936	0.3897	0.3859
-0.3	0.3821	0.3783	0.3745	0.3707	0.3669	0.3632	0.3594	0.3557	0.3520	0.3483
-0.4	0.3446	0.3409	0.3372	0.3336	0.3300	0.3264	0.3228	0.3192	0.3156	0.3121
-0.5	0.3085	0.3050	0.3015	0.2981	0.2946	0.2912	0.2877	0.2843	0.2810	0.2776
-0.6	0.2743	0.2709	0.2676	0.2643	0.2611	0.2578	0.2546	0.2514	0.2483	0.2451
-0.7	0.2420	0.2389	0.2358	0.2327	0.2297	0.2266	0.2236	0.2207	0.2177	0.2148
-0.8	0.2119	0.2090	0.2061	0.2033	0.2005	0.1977	0.1949	0.1922	0.1894	0.1867
-0.9	0.1841	0.1814	0.1788	0.1762	0.1736	0.1711	0.1685	0.1660	0.1635	0.1611
-1.0	0.1587	0.1562	0.1539	0.1515	0.1492	0.1469	0.1446	0.1423	0.1401	0.1379
-1.1	0.1357	0.1335	0.1314	0.1292	0.1271	0.1251	0.1230	0.1210	0.1190	0.1170
-1.2	0.1151	0.1131	0.1112	0.1093	0.1075	0.1057	0.1038	0.1020	0.1003	0.0985
-1.3	0.0968	0.0951	0.0934	0.0918	0.0901	0.0885	0.0869	0.0853	0.0838	0.0823
-1.4	0.0808	0.0793	0.0778	0.0764	0.0749	0.0735	0.0721	0.0708	0.0694	0.0681
-1.5	0.0668	0.0655	0.0643	0.0630	0.0618	0.0606	0.0594	0.0582	0.0571	0.0559
-1.6	0.0548	0.0537	0.0526	0.0516	0.0505	0.0495	0.0485	0.0475	0.0465	0.0455
-1.7	0.0446	0.0436	0.0427	0.0418	0.0409	0.0401	0.0392	0.0384	0.0375	0.0367
-1.8	0.0359	0.0351	0.0344	0.0336	0.0329	0.0322	0.0314	0.0307	0.0301	0.0294
-1.9	0.0287	0.0281	0.0274	0.0268	0.0262	0.0256	0.0250	0.0244	0.0239	0.0233
-2.0	0.0228	0.0222	0.0217	0.0212	0.0207	0.0202	0.0197	0.0192	0.0188	0.0183
-2.1	0.0179	0.0174	0.0170	0.0166	0.0162	0.0158	0.0154	0.0150	0.0146	0.0143
-2.2	0.0139	0.0136	0.0132	0.0129	0.0125	0.0122	0.0119	0.0116	0.0113	0.0110
-2.3	0.0107	0.0104	0.0102	0.0099	0.0096	0.0094	0.0091	0.0089	0.0087	0.0084
-2.4	0.0082	0.0080	0.0078	0.0076	0.0073	0.0071	0.0069	0.0068	0.0066	0.0064
-2.5	0.0062	0.0060	0.0059	0.0057	0.0055	0.0054	0.0052	0.0051	0.0049	0.0048
-2.6	0.0047	0.0045	0.0044	0.0043	0.0041	0.0040	0.0039	0.0038	0.0037	0.0036
-2.7	0.0035	0.0034	0.0033	0.0032	0.0031	0.0030	0.0029	0.0028	0.0027	0.0026
-2.8	0.0026	0.0025	0.0024	0.0023	0.0023	0.0022	0.0021	0.0021	0.0020	0.0019
-2.9	0.0019	0.0018	0.0018	0.0017	0.0016	0.0016	0.0015	0.0015	0.0014	0.0014
-3.0	0.0014	0.0013	0.0013	0.0012	0.0012	0.0011	0.0011	0.0011	0.0010	0.0010

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Appendix B: Student's T-Distribution

Student's T-Distribution

Level of Significance for One-Tailed Test						
df	0.100	0.050	0.025	0.01	0.005	0.0005

Level of Significance for Two-Tailed Test						
df	0.20	0.10	0.05	0.02	0.01	0.001
1	3.078	6.314	12.706	31.821	63.657	636.619
2	1.886	2.920	4.303	6.965	9.925	31.599
3	1.638	2.353	3.182	4.541	5.841	12.294
4	1.533	2.132	2.776	3.747	4.604	8.610
5	1.476	2.015	2.571	3.365	4.032	6.869
6	1.440	1.943	2.447	3.143	3.707	5.959
7	1.415	1.895	2.365	2.998	3.499	5.408
8	1.397	1.860	2.306	2.896	3.355	5.041
9	1.383	1.833	2.262	2.821	3.250	4.781
10	1.372	1.812	2.228	2.764	3.169	4.587
11	1.363	1.796	2.201	2.718	3.106	4.437
12	1.356	1.782	2.179	2.681	3.055	4.318
13	1.350	1.771	2.160	2.650	3.012	4.221
14	1.345	1.761	2.145	2.624	2.977	4.140
15	1.341	1.753	2.131	2.602	2.947	4.073
16	1.337	1.746	2.120	2.583	2.921	4.015
17	1.333	1.740	2.110	2.567	2.898	3.965
18	1.330	1.734	2.101	2.552	2.878	3.922
19	1.328	1.729	2.093	2.539	2.861	3.883
20	1.325	1.725	2.086	2.528	2.845	3.850
21	1.323	1.721	2.080	2.518	2.831	3.819
22	1.321	1.717	2.074	2.508	2.819	3.792
23	1.319	1.714	2.069	2.500	2.807	3.768
24	1.318	1.711	2.064	2.492	2.797	3.745
25	1.316	1.708	2.060	2.485	2.787	3.725
26	1.315	1.706	2.056	2.479	2.779	3.707
27	1.314	1.703	2.052	2.473	2.771	3.690
28	1.313	1.701	2.048	2.467	2.763	3.674
29	1.311	1.699	2.045	2.462	2.756	3.659
30	1.310	1.697	2.042	2.457	2.750	3.646
40	1.303	1.684	2.021	2.423	2.704	3.551
60	1.296	1.671	2.000	2.390	2.660	3.460
120	1.289	1.658	1.980	2.358	2.617	3.373
∞	1.282	1.645	1.960	2.326	2.576	3.291

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Appendix C: F-Table at 5 Percent (Upper Tail)

F-Table, Critical Values, 5 Percent in Upper Tail

Degrees of freedom for the numerator along top row
Degrees of freedom for the denominator along side row

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	12	15	20	24	30	40
1	161	200	216	225	230	234	237	239	241	242	244	246	248	249	250	251
2	18.5	19.0	19.2	19.2	19.3	19.3	19.4	19.4	19.4	19.4	19.4	19.4	19.4	19.5	19.5	19.5
3	10.1	9.55	9.28	9.12	9.01	8.94	8.89	8.85	8.81	8.79	8.74	8.70	8.66	8.64	8.62	8.59
4	7.71	6.94	6.59	6.39	6.26	6.16	6.09	6.04	6.00	5.96	5.91	5.86	5.80	5.77	5.75	5.72
5	6.61	5.79	5.41	5.19	5.05	4.95	4.88	4.82	4.77	4.74	4.68	4.62	4.56	4.53	4.50	4.46
6	5.99	5.14	4.76	4.53	4.39	4.28	4.21	4.15	4.10	4.06	4.00	3.94	3.87	3.84	3.81	3.77
7	5.59	4.74	4.35	4.12	3.97	3.87	3.79	3.73	3.68	3.64	3.57	3.51	3.44	3.41	3.38	3.34
8	5.32	4.46	4.07	3.84	3.69	3.58	3.50	3.44	3.39	3.35	3.28	3.22	3.15	3.12	3.08	3.04
9	5.12	4.26	3.86	3.63	3.48	3.37	3.29	3.23	3.18	3.14	3.07	6.01	2.94	2.90	2.86	2.83
10	4.96	4.10	3.71	3.48	3.33	3.22	3.14	3.07	3.02	2.98	2.91	2.85	2.77	2.74	2.70	2.66
11	4.84	3.98	3.59	3.36	3.20	3.09	3.01	2.95	2.90	2.85	2.79	2.72	2.65	2.61	2.57	2.53
12	4.75	3.89	3.49	3.26	3.11	3.00	2.91	2.85	2.80	2.75	2.69	2.62	2.54	2.51	2.47	2.43
13	4.67	3.81	3.41	3.18	3.03	2.92	2.83	2.77	2.71	2.67	2.60	2.53	2.46	2.42	2.38	2.34
14	4.60	3.74	3.34	3.11	2.96	2.85	2.76	2.70	2.65	2.60	2.53	2.46	2.39	2.35	2.31	2.27
15	4.54	3.68	3.29	3.06	2.90	2.79	2.71	2.64	2.59	2.54	2.48	2.40	2.33	2.29	2.25	2.20
16	4.49	3.63	3.24	3.01	2.85	2.74	2.66	2.59	2.54	2.49	2.42	2.35	2.28	2.24	2.19	2.15
17	4.45	3.59	3.20	2.96	2.81	2.70	2.61	2.55	2.49	2.45	2.38	2.31	2.23	2.19	2.15	2.10
18	4.41	3.55	3.16	2.93	2.77	2.66	2.58	2.51	2.46	2.41	2.34	2.27	2.19	2.15	2.11	2.06
19	4.38	3.52	3.13	2.90	2.74	2.63	2.54	2.48	2.42	2.38	2.31	2.23	2.16	2.11	2.07	2.03
20	4.35	3.49	3.10	2.87	2.71	2.60	2.51	2.45	2.39	2.35	2.28	2.20	2.12	2.08	2.04	1.99
21	4.32	3.47	3.07	2.84	2.68	2.57	2.49	2.42	2.37	2.32	2.25	2.18	2.10	2.05	2.01	1.96
22	4.30	3.44	3.05	2.82	2.66	2.55	2.46	2.40	2.34	2.30	2.23	2.15	2.07	2.03	1.98	1.94
23	4.28	3.42	3.03	2.80	2.64	2.53	2.44	2.37	2.32	2.27	2.20	2.13	2.05	2.01	1.96	1.91
24	4.26	3.40	3.01	2.78	2.62	2.51	2.42	2.36	2.30	2.25	2.18	2.11	2.03	1.98	1.94	1.89
25	4.24	3.39	2.99	2.76	2.60	2.49	2.40	2.34	2.28	2.24	2.16	2.09	2.01	1.96	1.92	1.87
30	4.17	3.32	2.92	2.69	2.53	2.42	2.33	2.27	2.21	2.16	2.09	2.01	1.93	1.89	1.84	1.79
40	4.08	3.23	2.84	2.61	2.45	2.34	2.25	2.18	2.12	2.08	2.00	1.92	1.84	1.79	1.74	1.69
60	4.00	3.15	2.76	2.53	2.37	2.25	2.17	2.10	2.04	1.99	1.92	1.84	1.75	1.70	1.65	1.59
120	3.92	3.07	2.68	2.45	2.29	2.18	2.09	2.02	1.96	1.91	1.83	1.75	1.66	1.61	1.55	1.50
∞	3.84	3.00	2.60	2.37	2.21	2.10	2.01	1.94	1.88	1.83	1.75	1.67	1.57	1.52	1.46	1.39

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Appendix D: F-Table at 2.5 Percent (Upper Tail)

F-Table, Critical Values, 2.5 Percent in Upper Tails

Degrees of freedom for the numerator along top row
Degrees of freedom for the denominator along side row

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	12	15	20	24	30	40
1	648	799	864	900	922	937	948	957	963	969	977	985	993	997	1001	1006
2	38.51	39.00	39.17	39.25	39.30	39.33	39.36	39.37	39.39	39.40	39.41	39.43	39.45	39.46	39.46	39.47
3	17.44	16.04	15.44	15.10	14.88	14.73	14.62	14.54	14.47	14.42	14.34	14.25	14.17	14.12	14.08	14.04
4	12.22	10.65	9.98	9.60	9.36	9.20	9.07	8.98	8.90	8.84	8.75	8.66	8.56	8.51	8.46	8.41
5	10.01	8.43	7.76	7.39	7.15	6.98	6.85	6.76	6.68	6.62	6.52	6.43	6.33	6.28	6.23	6.18
6	8.81	7.26	6.60	6.23	5.99	5.82	5.70	5.60	5.52	5.46	5.37	5.27	5.17	5.12	5.07	5.01
7	8.07	6.54	5.89	5.52	5.29	5.12	4.99	4.90	4.82	4.76	4.67	4.57	4.47	4.41	4.36	4.31
8	7.57	6.06	5.42	5.05	4.82	4.65	4.53	4.43	4.36	4.30	4.20	4.10	4.00	3.95	3.89	3.84
9	7.21	5.71	5.08	4.72	4.48	4.32	4.20	4.10	4.03	3.96	3.87	3.77	3.67	3.61	3.56	3.51
10	6.94	5.46	4.83	4.47	4.24	4.07	3.95	3.85	3.78	3.72	3.62	3.52	3.42	3.37	3.31	3.26
11	6.72	5.26	4.63	4.28	4.04	3.88	3.76	3.66	3.59	3.53	3.43	3.33	3.23	3.17	3.12	3.06
12	6.55	5.10	4.47	4.12	3.89	3.73	3.61	3.51	3.44	3.37	3.28	3.18	3.07	3.02	2.96	2.91
13	6.41	4.97	4.35	4.00	3.77	3.60	3.48	3.39	3.31	3.25	3.15	3.05	2.95	2.89	2.84	2.78
14	6.30	4.86	4.24	3.89	3.66	3.50	3.38	3.29	3.21	3.15	3.05	2.95	2.84	2.79	2.73	2.67
15	6.20	4.77	4.15	3.80	3.58	3.41	3.29	3.20	3.12	3.06	2.96	2.86	2.76	2.70	2.64	2.59
16	6.12	4.69	4.08	3.73	3.50	3.34	3.22	3.12	3.05	2.99	2.89	2.79	2.68	2.63	2.57	2.51
17	6.04	4.62	4.01	3.66	3.44	3.28	3.16	3.06	2.98	2.92	2.82	2.72	2.62	2.56	2.50	2.44
18	5.98	4.56	3.95	3.61	3.38	3.22	3.10	3.01	2.93	2.87	2.77	2.67	2.56	2.50	2.44	2.38
19	5.92	4.51	3.90	3.56	3.33	3.17	3.05	2.96	2.88	2.82	2.72	2.62	2.51	2.45	2.39	2.33
20	5.87	4.46	3.86	3.51	3.29	3.13	3.01	2.91	2.84	2.77	2.68	2.57	2.46	2.41	2.35	2.29
21	5.83	4.42	3.82	3.48	3.25	3.09	2.97	2.87	2.80	2.73	2.64	2.53	2.42	2.37	2.31	2.25
22	5.79	4.38	3.78	3.44	3.22	3.05	2.93	2.84	2.76	2.70	2.60	2.50	2.39	2.33	2.27	2.21
23	5.75	4.35	3.75	3.41	3.18	3.02	2.90	2.81	2.73	2.67	2.57	2.47	2.36	2.30	2.24	2.18
24	5.72	4.32	3.72	3.38	3.15	2.99	2.87	2.78	2.70	2.64	2.54	2.44	2.33	2.27	2.21	2.15
25	5.69	4.29	3.69	3.35	3.13	2.97	2.85	2.75	2.68	2.61	2.51	2.41	2.30	2.24	2.18	2.12
30	5.57	4.18	3.59	3.25	3.03	2.87	2.75	2.65	2.57	2.51	2.41	2.31	2.20	2.14	2.07	2.01
40	5.42	4.05	3.46	3.13	2.90	2.74	2.62	2.53	2.45	2.39	2.29	2.18	2.07	2.01	1.94	1.88
60	5.29	3.93	3.34	3.01	2.79	2.63	2.51	2.41	2.33	2.27	2.17	2.06	1.94	1.88	1.82	1.74
120	5.15	3.80	3.23	2.89	2.67	2.52	2.39	2.30	2.22	2.16	2.05	1.94	1.82	1.76	1.69	1.61
∞	5.02	3.69	3.12	2.79	2.57	2.41	2.29	2.19	2.11	2.05	1.94	1.83	1.71	1.64	1.57	1.48

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Appendix E: Chi-Squared Table

Values of χ^2 (Degrees of Freedom, Level of Significance)
Probability in Right Tail

Degrees of Freedom	0.99	0.975	0.95	0.9	0.1	0.05	0.025	0.01	0.005
1	0.000157	0.000982	0.003932	0.0158	2.706	3.841	5.024	6.635	7.879
2	0.020100	0.050636	0.102586	0.2107	4.605	5.991	7.378	9.210	10.597
3	0.1148	0.2158	0.3518	0.5844	6.251	7.815	9.348	11.345	12.838
4	0.297	0.484	0.711	1.064	7.779	9.488	11.143	13.277	14.860
5	0.554	0.831	1.145	1.610	9.236	11.070	12.832	15.086	16.750
6	0.872	1.237	1.635	2.204	10.645	12.592	14.449	16.812	18.548
7	1.239	1.690	2.167	2.833	12.017	14.067	16.013	18.475	20.278
8	1.647	2.180	2.733	3.490	13.362	15.507	17.535	20.090	21.955
9	2.088	2.700	3.325	4.168	14.684	16.919	19.023	21.666	23.589
10	2.558	3.247	3.940	4.865	15.987	18.307	20.483	23.209	25.188
11	3.053	3.816	4.575	5.578	17.275	19.675	21.920	24.725	26.757
12	3.571	4.404	5.226	6.304	18.549	21.026	23.337	26.217	28.300
13	4.107	5.009	5.892	7.041	19.812	22.362	24.736	27.688	29.819
14	4.660	5.629	6.571	7.790	21.064	23.685	26.119	29.141	31.319
15	5.229	6.262	7.261	8.547	22.307	24.996	27.488	30.578	32.801
16	5.812	6.908	7.962	9.312	23.542	26.296	28.845	32.000	34.267
17	6.408	7.564	8.672	10.085	24.769	27.587	30.191	33.409	35.718
18	7.015	8.231	9.390	10.865	25.989	28.869	31.526	34.805	37.156
19	7.633	8.907	10.117	11.651	27.204	30.144	32.852	36.191	38.582
20	8.260	9.591	10.851	12.443	28.412	31.410	34.170	37.566	39.997
21	8.897	10.283	11.591	13.240	29.615	32.671	35.479	38.932	41.401
22	9.542	10.982	12.338	14.041	30.813	33.924	36.781	40.289	42.796
23	10.196	11.689	13.091	14.848	32.007	35.172	38.076	41.638	44.181
24	10.856	12.401	13.848	15.659	33.196	36.415	39.364	42.980	45.558
25	11.524	13.120	14.611	16.473	34.382	37.652	40.646	44.314	46.928
26	12.198	13.844	15.379	17.292	35.563	38.885	41.923	45.642	48.290
27	12.878	14.573	16.151	18.114	36.741	40.113	43.195	46.963	49.645
28	13.565	15.308	16.928	18.939	37.916	41.337	44.461	48.278	50.994
29	14.256	16.047	17.708	19.768	39.087	42.557	45.722	49.588	52.335
30	14.953	16.791	18.493	20.599	40.256	43.773	46.979	50.892	53.672
50	29.707	32.357	34.764	37.689	63.167	67.505	71.420	76.154	79.490
60	37.485	40.482	43.188	46.459	74.397	79.082	83.298	88.379	91.952
80	53.540	57.153	60.391	64.278	96.578	101.879	106.629	112.329	116.321
100	70.065	74.222	77.929	82.358	118.498	124.342	129.561	135.807	140.170

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Appendix F: Critical Values for the Durbin-Watson Statistic

Critical Values for the Durbin-Watson Statistic ($\alpha = 0.05$)

	K = 1		K= 2		K = 3		K = 4		K = 5	
n	D_l	Du	D_l	D_u	D_l	D_u	D_l	D_u	D_l	D_u
15	1.08	1.36	0.95	1.54	0.82	1.75	0.69	1.97	0.56	2.21
16	1.10	1.37	0.98	1.54	0.86	1.73	0.74	1.93	0.62	2.15
17	1.13	1.38	1.02	1.54	0.90	1.71	0.78	1.90	0.67	2.10
18	1.16	1.39	1.05	1.53	0.93	1.69	0.82	1.87	0.71	2.06
19	1.18	1.40	1.08	1.53	0.97	1.68	0.86	1.85	0.75	2.02
20	1.20	1.41	1.10	1.54	1.00	1.68	0.90	1.83	0.79	1.99
21	1.22	1.42	1.13	1.54	1.03	1.67	0.93	1.81	0.83	1.96
22	1.24	1.43	1.15	1.54	1.05	1.66	0.96	1.80	0.86	1.94
23	1.26	1.44	1.17	1.54	1.08	1.66	0.99	1.79	0.90	1.92
24	1.27	1.45	1.19	1.55	1.10	1.66	1.01	1.78	0.93	1.90
25	1.29	1.45	1.21	1.55	1.12	1.66	1.04	1.77	0.95	1.89
26	1.30	1.46	1.22	1.55	1.14	1.65	1.06	1.76	0.98	1.88
27	1.32	1.47	1.24	1.56	1.16	1.65	1.08	1.76	1.01	1.86
28	1.33	1.48	1.26	1.56	1.18	1.65	1.10	1.75	1.03	1.85
29	1.34	1.48	1.27	1.56	1.20	1.65	1.12	1.74	1.05	1.84
30	1.35	1.49	1.28	1.57	1.21	1.65	1.14	1.74	1.07	1.83
31	1.36	1.50	1.30	1.57	1.23	1.65	1.16	1.74	1.09	1.83
32	1.37	1.50	1.31	1.57	1.24	1.65	1.18	1.73	1.11	1.82
33	1.38	1.51	1.32	1.58	1.26	1.65	1.19	1.73	1.13	1.81
34	1.39	1.51	1.33	1.58	1.27	1.65	1.21	1.73	1.15	1.81
35	1.40	1.52	1.34	1.58	1.28	1.65	1.22	1.73	1.16	1.80
36	1.41	1.52	1.35	1.59	1.29	1.65	1.24	1.73	1.18	1.80
37	1.42	1.53	1.36	1.59	1.31	1.66	1.25	1.72	1.19	1.80
38	1.43	1.54	1.37	1.59	1.32	1.66	1.26	1.72	1.21	1.79
39	1.43	1.54	1.38	1.60	1.33	1.66	1.27	1.72	1.22	1.79
40	1.44	1.54	1.39	1.60	1.34	1.66	1.29	1.72	1.23	1.79
45	1.48	1.57	1.43	1.62	1.38	1.67	1.34	1.72	1.29	1.78
50	1.50	1.59	1.46	1.63	1.42	1.67	1.38	1.72	1.34	1.77
55	1.53	1.60	1.49	1.64	1.45	1.68	1.41	1.72	1.38	1.77
60	1.55	1.62	1.51	1.65	1.48	1.69	1.44	1.73	1.41	1.77
65	1.57	1.63	1.54	1.66	1.50	1.70	1.47	1.73	1.44	1.77
70	1.58	1.64	1.55	1.67	1.52	1.70	1.49	1.74	1.46	1.77
75	1.60	1.65	1.57	1.68	1.54	1.71	1.51	1.74	1.49	1.77
80	1.61	1.66	1.59	1.69	1.56	1.72	1.53	1.74	1.51	1.77
85	1.62	1.67	1.60	1.70	1.57	1.72	1.55	1.75	1.52	1.77
90	1.63	1.68	1.61	1.70	1.59	1.73	1.57	1.75	1.54	1.78
95	1.64	1.69	1.62	1.71	1.60	1.73	1.58	1.75	1.56	1.78
100	1.65	1.69	1.63	1.72	1.61	1.74	1.59	1.76	1.57	1.78

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

Index

A

absolute convergence 317
absolute purchasing power parity 278
additional compensation arrangements 49
ad hoc trade allocation 118
adjusted R2 184, 346
administrative regulations 327
agency trade 91, 93
alternative hypothesis 152
analysis of variance (ANOVA) 150, 154, 185, 345
autocorrelation 159, 197
autoregressive conditional heteroskedasticity (ARCH) 241, 245, 346
autoregressive model 227
autoregressive models (AR) 227, 245, 346
average hours worked 313

B

balance-of-payments 281
best execution 92
Bloomberg 95
Breusch-Pagan test 195, 196, 346
brokerage 91

C

capital account 281
capital deepening 309
CAPM 207
capture hypothesis 329, 334
chain rule of forecasting 227
changing investment objectives 120
chi-square test 195, 346
classical growth theory 315
client brokerage 91
client-directed brokerage 91, 93
client relationships 118
club convergence 317
Cobb-Douglas production function 309
Code and Standards 100
Code of Ethics 13
coefficient of determination 150, 162, 183, 345
coefficient t-test 344
cointegration 243
communication with clients 56
compensation arrangements 118
compliance and enforcement 105
conditional convergence 317
conditional heteroskedasticity 194
conduct as members and candidates 68
confidence interval 153
  for a predicted value (simple linear regression only) 344
  for coefficient 344
  regression coefficient 150, 179, 345
constant returns to scale 309
correcting serial correlation 200
correlation analysis 142
correlation coefficient 139
  sample 139
  test of significance 144
covariance 138, 147
covariance stationary 226, 243
covered employee 101, 102
covered interest rate parity 272
cross rate 264
cumulative Z-Table 349
current account 281

D

debt sustainability mechanism 282
degrees of freedom 143, 156, 162, 175, 179, 186, 196, 199, 228
delegation of duty 123
demographics 312
dependent variable 144
  lagged 205
  predicting 180
  qualitative 206
Depression 121
dfdenominator 182
DF–EG test 243
dfnumerator 182
Dickey and Fuller 234
Dickey Fuller (DF) 243
diligence and reasonable basis 52, 116
disclosure 94, 105
disclosure of conflicts 60, 111, 116
discriminant models 207
disturbance term 146
diversification 122
Dornbusch overshooting model 288
dummy variables 206
Durbin-Watson 198, 200, 346
duties to clients 113, 117
duties to employers 111, 114, 116

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

E

endogenous growth theory 317
endogenous variable 144
Engle and Granger (EG) 243
equilibrium real exchange rate 281
error term 146
evaluation of research 93
exchange rate 262
exogenous variable 144
externalities 329
external sustainability approach 284

F

fair dealing 36
fiduciaries 91
financial account 281
first differencing 234
fiscal policy 287
flow mechanism 282
forecasting 231
forecasting the past 206
forward discount 268
forward exchange rate 262
forward premium 268
free float (FF), independent variable 206
front running 104
F-statistic 157, 181, 345
F-statistic, interpreting 159, 183
F-test for multiple regression 346

G

growth accounting relation 311

H

Hansen method 200
heteroskedastic 159
heteroskedasticity 194
human capital 314
hypothesis testing 152
  regression coefficients 175

I

immediate family 101
immigration 313
inadequate disclosure 120
independence and objectivity 20, 111
independent regulators 327
independent variable 144
informational frictions 329
information asymmetry 329
in-sample forecasts 231
instability 231
intercept term 146, 174, 344
interpretation of p-values 176
investment banking 103
investment manager 101
IPOs 103, 104, 105, 118

J

judicial law 327

K

knowledge of the law 17

L

labor force 312
labor force participation 313
linear regression, assumptions 146
linear trend 219
logit model 207
log-linear trend model 223, 245
loyalty, prudence, and care 34
loyalty (to employer) 45

M

macroeconomic balance approach 284
market manipulation 32
material nonpublic information 29
mean regression sum of squares (MSR) 156, 182, 346
mean reversion 229
mean reverting level 346
mean squared error (MSE) 156, 182, 346
misconduct 28
misrepresentation 25
mixed use 95
mixed use research 91
model fit 228
model misspecification 200, 202
monetary policy 287
multicollinearity 200
multiple regression 172
  analysis 172
  assumptions 181
  assumption violations 193
  dummy variable 193
  formulation 173
  interpretation 174
Mundell-Fleming model 286

N

negative correlation 140
negative serial correlation 197
neoclassical growth theory 315
net regulatory burden 332

nonlinear relationships 143
nonstationarity 231
null hypothesis 152

O

official reserve 282
one-tailed test 158, 178, 349
ordinary least squares (OLS) 147, 220
outliers 142
our-of-sample forecasts 231

P

parameter instability 159
partial slope coefficients 174
performance presentation 41
permissible research 95
personal investments and trading 104
physical capital 314
pooling data 205
portfolio balance model 288
portfolio composition mechanism 282
portfolio context 123
positive correlation 140
positive serial correlation 197
potential GDP 307
predicted value 147
  confidence interval 153
  dependent variable 153, 344
preservation of confidentiality 43
price mechanisms 330
principal trade 91
priority of transactions 64, 117
probit model 207
proprietary research 91
provision of public goods or financing of private projects 330
proxy variable 206
prudence in perspective 121
Prudent Investor Rule 121
Prudent Man Rule 121
public appearance 101, 102
public goods 329
public infrastructure 314
pure monetary model 288
p-value 176

Q

qualitative dependent variable 206
quiet periods 103

R

R^2 156, 183
  adjusted 184
  coefficient of determination 183
random walk process 232
random walk with a drift 232
rating system 106
real exchange rate 281
real interest rate parity 276
reasonable and adequate basis 102
record keeping 94
record retention 59
reduced-form econometric model approach 284
reference to CFA Institute, the CFA designation, and the CFA Program 71
referral fees 66
regression analysis 193
  hereroskedasticity 195
  limitations 159
  model misspecification 202
  multicollinearity 201
  serial correlation 198
regression coefficient 149
  confidence interval 150, 179
  hypothesis testing 175
  tail tests 178
  t-test 152
regression model specification 202
regression sum of squares (RSS) 155, 182, 345
regulating commerce 330
regulatory arbitrage 329
regulatory burden 332
regulatory capture theory 329
regulatory competition 329
regulatory tools 330
relationships with subject companies 103
relative purchasing power parity 278
research 91
research analyst 101
research analyst compensation 103
research objectivity policy 101
Research Objectivity Standards 100
residual 146
residual plot 195
responsibilities of supervisors 50
restricting/requiring certain activities 330
rho 143
risk management 123
robust standard errors 196
root mean squared error (RMSE) 231, 245

©2012 Kaplan, Inc.

S

sample correlation coefficient 344
sample covariance 138, 344
scatter plot 140
seasonality 245
selection of brokers 93
self-regulating organizations (SROs) 327
serial correlation 197, 245
simple linear regression 144
slope coefficient 146, 147, 344
soft dollars 91
S&P 500 180
spot exchange rate 262
spurious correlation 142
standard error of estimate (SEE) 150, 156, 345
standard error of the forecast 153
standard error of the regression 150
standard error of the residual 150
standard errors 200
standard errors, White-corrected 197
Standards of Professional Conduct 14
statistical inferences 226
statistical significance 175
statistical software packages 151
statutes 327
steady state growth rate 315
structural change 244
structural shift 245
subject company 101
suitability 39
sum of squared errors (SSE) 147, 155, 182, 345
sunset clause 332

T

technological development 314
third-party research 91
timeliness 105
time series 219
total factor cost 309
total factor productivity (TFP) 309
total sum of squares (SST) 155, 345
total variation 155
trade allocation 118
triangular arbitrage 265
t-test 152
t-test for correlation coefficient 344
t-test for regression coefficient 345
two-tailed test example 350
two-tail test 143, 178
Type I errors 198
Type II errors 201

U

unbiased predictor 275
unconditional heteroskedasticity 194
uncovered interest rate parity 274

V

variable omission 204
variable transformation 205

W

White-corrected standard errors 200

Notes

Notes

Notes

Notes

Notes

Notes

Notes